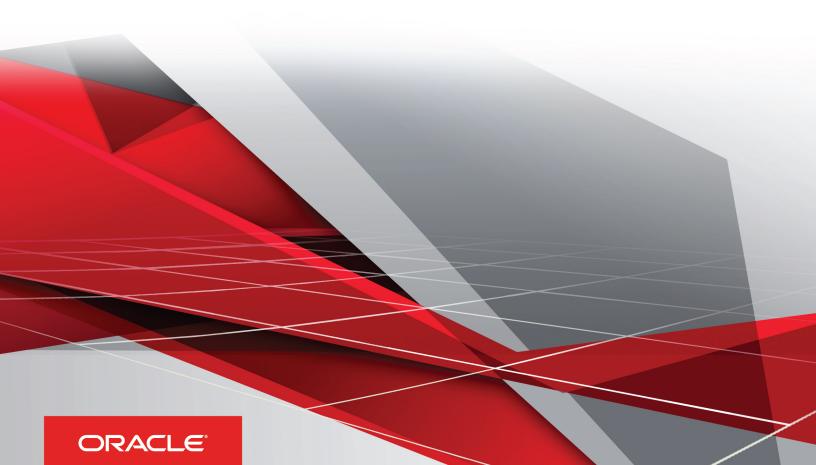
Oracle

SCM Cloud

Implementing Common Features for Oracle SCM Cloud

Release 12

This guide also applies to on-premises implementations



Oracle® SCM Cloud Implementing Common Features for Oracle SCM Cloud

Part Number E74111-05

Copyright © 2011-2017, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Authors: Cynthia Stevens Sanchez, Nuzhath Shereen

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, then the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Oracle programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/ or documentation, delivered to U.S. Government end users are "commercial computer software" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation of the programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, shall be subject to license terms and license restrictions applicable to the programs. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Opteron, the AMD logo, and the AMD Opteron logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information about content, products and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services unless otherwise set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services, except as set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle.

The business names used in this documentation are fictitious, and are not intended to identify any real companies currently or previously in existence.

For information about Oracle's commitment to accessibility, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program website at http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=docacc.

Oracle customers that have purchased support have access to electronic support through My Oracle Support. For information, visit http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=info or visit http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=trs if you are hearing impaired.

Contents

Preface		
1 Overviev	w	1
Oracle SCM	Cloud Common Configuration: Overview	1
Understandir	ng Implementation Structures	1
Managing ar	n Implementation	3
2 Define S	Synchronization of Users and Roles from LDAP	9
Define Imple	ementation Users: Overview	ę
User and Ro	ole Synchronization: Explained	9
3 Define Ir	mplementation Users	11
Define Imple	ementation Users: Overview	11
4 Define C	Currencies and Currency Rates	13
Manage Cur	rrencies	13
Manage Cor	nversion Rate Types	14
Manage Dail	ly Rates	17



5 D	efine Enterprise Structures	21
Er	nterprise Structures: Overview	21
Er	nterprise Structures Business Process Model: Explained	23
GI	lobal Enterprise Configuration: Points to Consider	25
M	odeling Your Enterprise Management Structure in Oracle Fusion: Example	26
Es	ssbase Character and Word Limitations	30
De	efine Initial Configuration with the Enterprise Structures Configurator	33
De	efine Reference Data Sharing	60
De	efine Enterprise: Manage Enterprise HCM Information	68
De	efine Enterprise: Manage Locations	68
De	efine Geographies	70
De	efine Legal Jurisdictions and Authorities	98
De	efine Legal Entities: Manage Legal Entity	102
De	efine Legal Entities: Define Legal Reporting Units	106
De	efine Chart of Accounts for Enterprise Structures: Manage Chart of Accounts Structures and Structure Instances	106
De	efine Chart of Accounts for Enterprise Structures: Manage Chart of Accounts Value Sets and Value Set Values	131
De	efine Chart of Accounts for Enterprise Structures: Manage Accounting Calendars	134
De	efine Accounting Configurations of Enterprise Structures: Manage Primary or Secondary Ledgers	138
De	efine Accounting Configurations of Enterprise Structures: Specify Ledger Options	146
De	efine Accounting Configurations of Enterprise Structures: Manage Reporting Currencies	149
De	efine Business Units: Manage Business Units	152
De	efine Business Units: Assign Business Unit Business Function	153
De	efine Customers: Define Source Systems	155
FA	AQs for Define Customers: Define Source Systems	156
De	efine Customers: Import Person and Organization	156
De	efine Suppliers	157
De	efine Workforce Structures: Manage Locations	161
De	efine Facilities: Manage Facility Shifts, Workday Patterns, and Schedules	163
De	efine Facilities: Manage Inventory Organizations	166
De	efine Facilities: Manage Item Organizations	172
D	Define Security	175
De	efine Security: Overview	175
Se	ecuring Oracle SCM Cloud: Highlights	176
D	efine Transactional Business Intelligence Configuration	179
De	efine Transactional Business Intelligence Configuration: Overview	179



8	Define Approval Management	181
	Approval Management: Highlights	181
	Other Workflow Setup	182
9	Define Help Configuration	185
	Setting Up Help: Overview	185
	Set Help Options	186
	FAQs for Assign Help Text Administration Duty	188
	Manage Help Security Groups	188
10	Define Application Toolkit Configuration	191
	Define Application Toolkit Configuration: Overview	191
	Map Reports to Work Areas	191
	Set Watchlist Options	193
	Manage Application Toolkit Administrator Profile Values	195
11	Maintain Common Reference Objects	197
	Maintain Common Reference Objects: Overview	197
	Why can't I edit setup data?	197
	Define Application Taxonomy	197
	Define Reference Data Sharing	199
	Define ISO Reference Data	203
	Manage Audit Policies	206
	Manage Oracle Social Network Objects	209
	Manage Applications Core Common Reference Objects	212
	Define Global Search	215
12	Define WebLogic Communication Services Configuration	227
	Oracle Sales Cloud CTI: Highlights	227
	Configuring PSTN Gateway Address Using Topology Manager: Worked Example	228
13	Define Custom Enterprise Scheduler Jobs	231
	Home Page Setup	231
	How can I see which applications a Manage Custom Enterprise Scheduler Jobs task includes?	231
	Managing Job Definitions: Highlights	231
	Managing List of Values Sources: Highlights	232
	Managing Job Sets: Highlights	232



14 Define Applications Core Configuration	235
Define Applications Core Configuration: Overview	235
Define Lookups	235
Define Document Sequences	242
Define Profile Options	245
Define Flexfields	249
Define Attachments	330
15 Define Collaboration Messaging	335
Using Collaboration Messaging: Overview	335
Reprocessing Undelivered Messages: Procedure	336
Process Inbound Collaboration Messages	336
Process Outbound Collaboration Messages	337
Manage Collaboration Messages	338
Configuring Collaboration Messaging for a Customer: Procedure	340
FAQs for Define Collaboration Messaging	340
16 Define Carriers	343
Shipping Methods: Explained	343
Inbound Tracking Rules: Explained	343
Creating Tracking Rules: Points to Consider	343
17 Define Transit Times	345
Transit Time: Explained	345
Origin Type and Destination Type: Points to Consider	345



18	Define Items	347
	Define Items: Overview	347
	Item Statuses: Explained	348
	Cross-Reference Types: Explained	349
	Product Value Sets: Explained	349
	Product Child Value Sets: Explained	350
	Default Item Class: Explained	350
	Item Profile Options: Explained	350
	Import Items: Explained	351
	Lifecycle Phases: Explained	352
	Item Classes: Explained	352
	Attachment Categories: Explained	353
	Related Item Subtypes: Explained	353
	Operational Attributes Groups: Explained	354 355
	Item Attribute Groups and Attributes: Explained	
	Deploy Item Extensible Flexfields: Explained	355
19	Define Units of Measure	357
	Units of Measure, Unit of Measure Classes, and Base Units of Measure: How They Fit Together	357
	Assigning Base Units of Measure to Unit of Measure Classes: Examples	358
	Defining Unit of Measure Standard Conversions: Examples	359
	FAQs for Units of Measure	359
20	Define Catalogs	361
	Catalogs: Overview	361
	Catalog Descriptive Flexfields: Explained	361
	Category Descriptive Flexfields: Explained	361
	Create Catalog: Explained	362
	Manage Catalogs: Explained	363
	Functional Area Catalogs: Explained	364
	Automatic Assignment Catalogs: Explained	364
	Catalog Publishing: Explained	365
21	Other Common Setup and Maintenance Tasks	367
	Define Custom Enterprise Scheduler Jobs	367
	Setting Up for General Troubleshooting: Points to Consider	369



22	External Integration	371
	Web Services	371
	Files for Import and Export	377
	External Data Integration Services for Oracle Cloud	379
23	Importing and Exporting Setup Data	391
	Configuration Packages: Explained	391
	Implementation Project Based Export and Import: Explained	391
	Moving Common Reference Objects	392



Preface

This preface introduces information sources that can help you use the application.

Oracle Applications Help

Use the help icon (?) to access Oracle Applications Help in the application. If you don't see any help icons on your page, click the Show Help icon (?) in the global header. Not all pages have help icons. You can also access Oracle Applications Help at https://fusionhelp.oracle.com.

Using Applications Help

Watch: This video tutorial shows you how to find help and use help features.

Additional Resources

- Community: Use Oracle Applications Customer Connect to get information from experts at Oracle, the
 partner community, and other users.
- Guides and Videos: Go to the Oracle Help Center to find guides and videos.
- Training: Take courses on Oracle Cloud from Oracle University.

Documentation Accessibility

For information about Oracle's commitment to accessibility, see the Oracle Accessibility Program .

Comments and Suggestions

Please give us feedback about Oracle Applications Help and guides! You can send e-mail to: oracle_fusion_applications_help_ww_grp@oracle.com.





1 Overview

Oracle SCM Cloud Common Configuration: Overview

This guide contains information to help you perform implementation tasks that are common to multiple Oracle SCM Cloud offerings. The information appears in the order in which the associated tasks appear in most of the offerings.

Determining Which Tasks to Perform

To determine which tasks to perform and the sequence in which to perform them, consult your offering. Your offering contains task lists and tasks in the order in which you must perform them. Download the task list for your offering, and then consult this guide for the information you need to perform the tasks.

Other Guides to Use

You will also need the implementation guide for your offering to complete the implementation tasks that are specific to the offering. Some topics in this guide and your offering-specific guide may refer you to other guides.

Understanding Implementation Structures

Setup and Maintenance: Overview

Oracle Functional Setup Manager enables rapid and efficient planning, configuration, implementation, deployment, and ongoing maintenance of Oracle Applications through self-service administration.

All Oracle Functional Setup Manager functionality is available from the Setup and Maintenance work area, which offers you the following benefits:

Self-Service Administration:

Manage all aspects of functional setup of Oracle Fusion applications at the business user level with an integrated, guided process for planning, configuration, implementation, deployment, and maintenance.

Configurable and Extensible:

Configure and Extend prepackaged list of tasks for setting up Oracle Fusion applications to better fit your business requirements.

Complete Transparency:

Get full visibility of Oracle Fusion applications end-to-end setup requirements with auto-generated, sequential task lists that include prerequisites and address dependencies.

Prepackaged Lists of Implementation Tasks:



Task lists can be easily configured and extended to better fit with business requirements. Autogenerated, sequential task lists include prerequisites and address dependencies to give full visibility to end-to-end setup requirements of Oracle Applications.

Rapid Start:

Specific implementations can become templates to facilitate reuse and rapid-start for comparable Oracle Applications across many instances.

Comprehensive Reporting:

A set of built-in reports helps to analyze, validate and audit configurations, implementations, and setup data of Oracle Applications.

With Oracle Functional Setup Manager you can:

- Learn about and analyze implementation requirements.
- Configure Oracle Applications to match your business needs.
- Achieve complete visibility to set up requirements through guided, sequential task lists downloadable into Excel for project planning.
- Enter setup data through easy-to-use user interfaces available directly from the task lists.
- Export and import data from one instance to another for rapid setup.
- Validate setup by reviewing setup data reports.
- Implement all Oracle Applications through a standard and consistent process.

Offerings: Explained

Offerings are application solution sets representing one or more business processes and activities that you typically provision and implement as a unit. They are, therefore, the primary drivers of functional setup of Oracle Fusion applications. Some of the examples of offerings are Financials, Procurement, Sales, Marketing, Order Orchestration, and Workforce Deployment. An offering is the highest level grouping of Oracle Fusion Applications functionality. They include functional areas, and alternative business rules known as features.

Functional Areas: Explained

A functional area is a grouping of functionality within an offering. It may be an optional piece of functionality that you may want to implement as part of an offering. Optional functional areas can be included or excluded from their parent offering. Functional areas may be hierarchical, and therefore may be subordinate to another functional area. An offering has at least one base or core functional area and may have one or more optional functional areas. Additionally, one or more or features may be associated to an offering. Base functional areas indicate the core functionality that you need to implement for the offering to be operational. Optional functional areas indicate optional functionality that you may or may not implement for an offering.

Common Functional Areas

Some core functionality essential to an offering such as setting the Initial Users or the Legal Structures may be shared across offerings. These are known as common functional areas and appear across offerings. Although most of the tasks associated to a common functional area are the same regardless of the offering you implement, there may be some offering-specific tasks.



In general once you implement a common functional area for a given offering, you won't need to repeat its implementation for the remaining offerings, however, it's recommended you check if there is any offering specific tasks that may still require your attention

Base and Optional Functional Areas

Functional areas that support core functionality for an offering are known as base functional areas and must be implemented in order for the offering to be operational. Other functional areas known as optional functional areas support processes or functionality that can be implemented at your discretion depending on the business requirements. These can be implemented later during the implementation process.

Features: Explained

Offerings include optional or alternative business rules or methods called feature choices, used to fine-tune business processes and activities supported by an offering or a functional area. You make feature selections according to your business requirements to get the best fit with the offering. If the selected offerings and functional areas have dependent features then those features are applicable when you implement the corresponding offering or functional area.

Feature choices can be one of three different types:

Yes or No

If a feature can either be applicable or not be applicable to an implementation, a single check box is presented for selection. Check or deselect to specify yes or no respectively.

Single Select

If a feature has multiple choices but only one can be applicable to an implementation, multiple choices are presented as radio buttons. You can turn on only one of those choices.

Multi-Select

If the feature has multiple choices but one or more can be applicable to an implementation then all choices are presented with a check box. Select all that apply by checking the appropriate choices.

Implementation Task Lists: Explained

The configuration of the offerings determine how the list of setup tasks is generated during the implementation phase. Only the setup tasks needed to implement the selected offerings, functional areas and features are included in the task list. This gives you the targeted task list necessary to meet your implementation requirements.

Managing an Implementation



Getting Started with an Implementation: Overview

To start an implementation, set up one or more initial users. In an Oracle Fusion Applications environment, use the super user created during installation and provisioning. For an Oracle Cloud implementation, use the initial administrator provided by Oracle. Because applications is secure as delivered by Oracle, the process of enabling the necessary setup access for initial users requires the following steps:

- 1. As you start an implementation, sign in as the user with initial access: either the Oracle Fusion Applications installation super user or the initial Oracle Cloud administrator user.
- 2. Select an offering to implement and then enable the offering and the associated functional areas. Once the offering is enabled, you generate the setup tasks needed to implement the offering.
- 3. Perform the following security tasks:
 - **a.** Synchronize users and roles in the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) store with HCM user management. Use the Run User and Roles Synchronization Process task.
 - b. Create an IT security manager user by using the Create Implementation Users task.
- **4.** As the newly created IT security manager user, sign in to Oracle Fusion Applications and set up at least one implementation user for setting up enterprise structures.
 - a. Create an implementation user by using the Create Implementation Users task.
 - **b.** Provision the implementation user with the Application Implementation Manager job role or the Application Implementation Consultant job role by using the Security Console Users tab. The Application Implementation Consultant job role inherits from all product-specific application administrators and entitles the necessary View All access to all secured objects.
 - c. Optionally, create a data role for an implementation user who needs only the limited access of a product-specific Application Administrator. Use the Create Data Role for Implementation Users task. Then assign the resulting data role to the implementation user by using the Create Implementation Users task.

Related Topics

- Initial Security Administration: Critical Choices
- User and Role Synchronization: Explained
- Enterprise Structures: Overview
- Creating Data Roles for Implementation Users: Procedure

Enabling Offerings: Explained

When planning your implementation, you decide what business processes your organization or company performs or supports. These decisions determine the offerings and functional areas you want to implement. You then configure the offerings and functional areas that support the activities your organization or company performs. During the configuration process, you specifically enable offerings and functional areas for use before you implement them.

Enabling Offerings and Functional Areas

Use the Setup and Maintenance work area to help decide which offerings to enable for implementation. Once you decide to use an offering, you can select the Configure button to choose the configuration details and enable the offering, associated functional areas, and features. All the base functional areas of an offering are automatically enabled for implementation when you enable the parent offering. You choose which optional functional areas to enable. The functional areas appear in an expandable and collapsible hierarchy to facilitate progressive decision making for implementation.



Enabling Features

Features are optional or alternative business rules or methods used to fine-tune business processes and activities supported by an offering or a functional area. If features are available for the offering or functional areas, you can enable them to help meet your business requirements, if desired. In general, the features are set with a default configuration based on their typical usage in most implementations. You should always review the available features for the offering and functional areas and select them as appropriate. Dependent features appear visible when the feature choice they depend on is selected for implementation.

Enabling Offerings: Procedure

You enable offerings to customize the functionality that matches the services you plan on implementing.

Enabling Offerings

To enable offerings, follow these steps.

- 1. Open the Setup and Maintenance work area (Navigator > Setup and Maintenance).
- 2. In the Setup and Maintenance Offerings page, select the offering you're using, then click Configure.
- 3. In the Configure page, select the **Enable** check box for the offering. Also select the **Enable** check box for each of the functional areas you want to use.
- **4.** Click the Features icon for the offering or functional area you have enabled, then enable any features you require. Select **Done** when complete.
- 5. Select **Done** to return to the Offerings page then repeat the same steps for each of the offerings you are using.

Implementing Offerings: Explained

Once you have configured the offering you want to implement, you can start performing the appropriate task to setting your applications up to support your business processes. Functional Setup Manager provides two methods to set up the offerings and therefore applications depending on your business needs.

Offering based implementation

Following a predefined list of tasks required for the features you selected to implement. This method enables you to implement the functionality on an adopt-as-you-go based approach. It provides you direct access to the setup tasks saving you time as by default gives you visibility to the minimum requirements for your implementation. This is always the recommended method to implement your applications unless you require custom implementation task lists.

Project based implementation

Enables you to customize your implementation defining an implementation project with a tailored list of tasks, task assignment and implementation progress monitoring. Use of this method is recommended when you require a custom task list.

Offering Based Implementation: Explained

You can use the Setup and Maintenance work area to directly implement an entire offering or functional areas within an offering. You do not need to create an implementation project, and instead use a modular approach to your implementation.



You can complete setup of specific business areas quickly to start transactions, and then gradually adopt more and more application functionality as needed.

An offering or functional area-based approach means you set up various parts of an offering at different times. You can start with set up of the functional areas that you immediately need to adopt. Over time, you can continue to set up other functional areas as you start to adopt additional applications functionality. Offerings must be enabled for implementation in order for their functional areas to display. Offering or functional area-based implementation provides the following advantages:

- When you select an offering the relevant functional areas appear for selection. The common functional areas are
 those shared across offerings and are listed first. The functional areas that are only associated with the selected
 offering, are at the bottom of the list.
- A functional area usually has several setup tasks, but only a few of them require input before the application function
 is ready for transactions. The rest of the setup tasks are usually optional or have predefined default values based on
 common use cases. When you select a functional area for implementation, you can view just the required tasks, or
 you can view the full list of setup tasks for the functional area.

Executing Setup Tasks

You select the functional area you want to implement and the list of tasks that you need to perform appears. The tasks are organized with prerequisites and dependencies in mind. Select the task for which you want to enter data and then click Go to Task to render the page where you perform the task. If the setup data entered through a task can be segmented by a specific attribute, and therefore could be performed iteratively for each qualifying value, then the task may benefit from scope. Typical examples include tasks relevant to legal entities, business units, ledgers, tax regimes, and legislative data roles. For such tasks, you are prompted to pick a scope value before entering data. You can pick a scope value that was previously selected, select a new scope value, or create a new scope value and then select it. The selected value is a qualifying attribute of the setup data entered by way of the task, and therefore, different setup data can be entered for different scope values. Enter data as appropriate and once you finish, close the page and you return to the functional area list of tasks.

Note: You cannot perform a task if you do not have the proper security entitlement.

Project Based Implementation: Explained

You can create implementation projects to manage the implementation of an offering and functional areas as a unit throughout the implementation life cycle, or maintain the setup of specific business processes and activities customizing the list of tasks to complete their implementation.

An implementation project is the list of setup tasks you need to complete to implement selected offerings and functional areas. You create a project either by:

- selecting an offering and its functional areas you want to implement together, then customize the list of tasks for such offering and functional areas as applicable.
- selecting specific setup task lists and tasks you require for a specific configuration.

You can also assign these tasks to users and track their completion using the included project management tools.

Selecting Offerings

When creating an implementation project you see the list of offerings and functional areas that are configured for implementation. Implementation managers specify which of those offerings and functional areas to include in an implementation project. It is strongly recommended that you limit your selection to one offering per implementation project, even though the application does not prevent you from including more than one. The implementation manager should decide based on how they plan to manage their implementations. For example, if you implement and deploy different offerings at



different times, then having separate implementation projects help to manage the implementation life cycles. Furthermore, the more offerings you included in an implementation project, the bigger the generated task list is. This is because the implementation task list includes all setup tasks needed to implement all included offerings. Alternatively, segmenting into multiple implementation projects makes the process easier to manage and ensures that import and export sequence of the project data is straightforward in the correct sequence.





2 Define Synchronization of Users and Roles from LDAP

Define Implementation Users: Overview

Implementation users perform the setup tasks in Oracle Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) Cloud and Oracle Supply Chain Management (SCM) Cloud implementation projects. This topic introduces the tasks in the Define Implementation Users task list. You can find more information about implementation users and tasks they perform in the product specific implementation and security guides for your offering.

Create Implementation Users

You must have at least one implementation user. To ensure segregation of critical duties, multiple implementation users are recommended. For example, one implementation user typically performs functional setup tasks and another performs security setup tasks. When you create implementation users, you also assign predefined job roles to them directly. The job roles vary with the tasks that the implementation users perform.

The cloud service administrator creates implementation users.

Related Topics

Implementation Users: Explained

User and Role Synchronization: Explained

User accounts for users of Oracle Fusion Applications are maintained in your Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) directory. The LDAP directory also holds information about roles provisioned to users.

During implementation, any existing information about users and their roles must be copied from the LDAP directory to the Oracle Fusion Applications tables. To copy this information, you use the task Run User and Roles Synchronization Process. This task calls the Retrieve Latest LDAP Changes process. You can perform the task Run User and Roles Synchronization Process from either an implementation project or the Setup and Maintenance work area.

Once the Oracle Fusion Applications tables are initialized with this information, it's maintained automatically.





3 Define Implementation Users

Define Implementation Users: Overview

Implementation users perform the setup tasks in Oracle Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) Cloud and Oracle Supply Chain Management (SCM) Cloud implementation projects. This topic introduces the tasks in the Define Implementation Users task list. You can find more information about implementation users and tasks they perform in the product specific implementation and security guides for your offering.

Create Implementation Users

You must have at least one implementation user. To ensure segregation of critical duties, multiple implementation users are recommended. For example, one implementation user typically performs functional setup tasks and another performs security setup tasks. When you create implementation users, you also assign predefined job roles to them directly. The job roles vary with the tasks that the implementation users perform.

The cloud service administrator creates implementation users.

Related Topics

• Implementation Users: Explained





Define Currencies and Currency Rates

Manage Currencies

Defining Currencies: Points to Consider

When creating or editing currencies, consider these points relevant to entering the currency code, date range, or symbol for the currency.

Currency Codes

You can't change a currency code after you enable the currency, even if you later disable that currency.

Date Ranges

You can enter transactions denominated in the currency only for the dates within the specified range. If you don't enter a start date, then the currency is valid immediately. If you don't enter an end date, then the currency is valid indefinitely.

Symbols

Some applications support displaying currency symbols. You may enter the symbol associated with a currency so that it appears along with the amount.

Euro Currency Derivation: Explained

Use the Derivation Type, Derivation Factor, and Derivation Effective Date fields to define the relationship between the official currency (Euro) of the European Monetary Union (EMU) and the national currencies of EMU member states. For each EMU currency, you define its Euro-to-EMU fixed conversion rate and the effective starting date. If you have to use a different currency for Euro, you can disable the predefined currency and create a new one.

Derivation Type

The **Euro currency** derivation type is used only for the Euro, and the **Euro derived** derivation type identifies national currencies of EMU member states. All other currencies don't have derivation types.

Derivation Factor

The derivation factor is the fixed conversion rate by which you multiply one Euro to derive the equivalent EMU currency amount. The Euro currency itself must not have a derivation factor.

Derivation Effective Date

The derivation effective date is the date on which the relationship between the EMU currency and the Euro begins.



FAQs for Manage Currencies

When do I create or enable currencies?

Create or enable any currency for displaying monetary amounts, assigning currency to ledgers, entering transactions, recording balances, or for any reporting purpose. All currencies listed in the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) 4217 standard are supported.

The default currency is set to United States Dollar (USD).

What's the difference between precision, extended precision, and minimum accountable unit for a currency?

Precision refers to the number of digits placed to the right of the decimal point used in regular currency transactions. For example, USD would have 2 as the precision value for transactional amounts, such as \$1.00.

Extended precision is the number of digits placed to the right of the decimal point and must be greater than or equal to the precision value. For calculations requiring greater precision, you can enter an extended precision value such as 3 or 4. That would result in the currency appearing as \$1.279 or \$1.2793.

Minimum accountable unit is the smallest denomination for the currency. For example, for USD that would be .01 for a cent.

In Setup and Maintenance work area, search for the Manage Currencies task to set these values for a currency.

What's a statistical unit currency type?

The statistical unit currency type denotes the Statistical (STAT) currency used to record financial statistics in the financial reports, allocation formulas, and other calculations.

Manage Conversion Rate Types

Creating Conversion Rate Types: Critical Choices

Maintain different conversion rates between currencies for the same period with the Oracle Fusion General Ledger conversion rate types functionality. Four predefined daily conversion rate types are seeded:

- Spot
- Corporate
- User
- Fixed

You can use different rate types for different business needs. During journal entry, the conversion rate is provided automatically by the General Ledger based on the selected conversion rate type and currency, unless the rate type is user. For user rate types, you must enter the conversion rate. Define additional rate types as needed. Set your most frequently used rate type as the default. Conversion rate types cannot be deleted.

Assign conversion rate types to automatically populate the associated rate for your period average and period end rates for the ledger. For example, you can assign the predefined rate type **Spot** to populate your period average rates and



the predefined rate type **Corporate** to populate your period end rates. Period average and period end rates are used in translation of account balances.

Conversion rate types are used to automatically assign a rate when you perform the following accounting functions:

- Convert foreign currency journal amounts to ledger currency equivalents.
- Convert journal amounts from source ledgers to reporting currencies or secondary ledgers.
- Run Revaluation or Translation processes.

In creating new conversion rates, decide whether to do the following:

- Enforce inverse relationships
- Select pivot currencies
- Select contra currencies
- Enable cross rates and allow cross rate overrides
- Maintain cross rate rules

Enforce Inverse Relationships

Select the **Enforce Inverse Relationship** option to specify whether or not to enforce the automatic calculation of inverse conversion rates when defining daily rates.

Action	Results
Selected	When you enter a daily rate to convert currency A to currency B, General Ledger automatically calculates the inverse rate, currency B to A, and enters it in the adjacent column. If either rate is changed, the application automatically recalculates the other rate.
	You can update the application calculated inverse rate, but once you do, the related rate is updated. The check box enforces that the inverse relationship is maintained but does not prevent you from updating the rates.
Not Selected	General Ledger calculates the inverse rate but you can change the rate and update the daily rates table without the corresponding rate being updated.

Select Pivot Currencies

Select a pivot currency that is commonly used in your currency conversions. A pivot currency is the central currency that interacts with contra currencies. For example, you set up a daily rate between the US dollar (USD) and the Euro currency (EUR) and another between the USD and the Canadian dollar (CAD). USD is the pivot currency in creating a rate between EUR and CAD. EUR and CAD are the contra currencies. Select the pivot currency from the list of values which contains those currencies that are enabled, effective, and not a statistical (STAT) currency. The description of the pivot currency is populated automatically based on the currency definition.

If you want the application to create cross rates against a base currency, define the base currency as the pivot currency. Selected pivot currencies can be changed in the Rate Types page.

Select Contra Currencies

Select currencies available on the list of values as contra currencies. The available currencies are those currencies which are enabled, effective, not STAT currency, and not the pivot currency selected earlier. The description of the contra currency is populated automatically based on the currency definition. Add or delete contra currencies in the Contra Currencies region of the Rate Types page.



Enable Cross Rates and Allow Cross Rate Overrides

Check the **Enable Cross Rates** check box to calculate conversion rates based on defined currency rate relationships. General Ledger calculates cross rates based on your defined cross rate rules. Associate your cross rate rules with a conversion rate type, pivot currency, and contra currencies. Cross rates facilitate the creation of daily rates by automatically creating the rates between contra currencies based on their relationship to a pivot currency. If the **Enable Cross Rates** check box is changed to unchecked after entering contra currencies, the application stops calculating cross rates going forward for that particular rate type. All the earlier calculated cross rates for that rate type remain in the database unless you manually delete them.

For example, if you have daily rates defined for the pivot currency, USD to the contra currency, EUR, and USD to another contra currency, CAD, the application will automatically create the rates between EUR to CAD and CAD to EUR. This prevents the need to manually define the EUR to CAD and CAD to EUR rates.

Check the **Allow Cross Rates Override** check box to permit your users to override application generated cross rates. If you accept the default of unchecked, the application generated cross rates cannot be overridden

Maintain Cross Rate Rules

Define or update your cross rate rules at any time by adding or removing contra currency assignments. Add a contra currency to a cross rate rule and run the Daily Rates Import and Calculation process to generate the new rates. If your remove a cross rate rule or a contra currency from a rule, any cross rates generated previously for that contra currency remain unless you manually delete them. Changes to the rule are not retroactive and will not affect previously stored cross rates. The Cross Rate process generates as many rates as possible and skips currencies where one component of the set is missing.

Note: With a defined web service that extracts daily currency conversion rates from external services, for example Reuters, currency conversion rates are automatically updated for the daily rates and all cross currency relationships.

Related Topics

What's the difference between calendar and fiscal period naming?

Using Rate Types: Examples

The four predefined conversion rate types in Oracle Fusion Applications are:

- Spot
- Corporate
- User
- Fixed

Scenario

You are the general ledger accountant for Vision US Inc. You are entering a journal entry to capture three transactions that were transacted in three different foreign currencies:

- Canadian dollar (CAD): A stable currency
- Mexican Peso (MXP): A fluctuating currency
- Hong Kong dollar (HKD): An infrequently used currency



You enter two lines with accounts and amounts for each foreign currency transaction. Based on your company procedures, you select the rate type to populate the rate for Corporate and Spot rate types from your daily rates table. You manually enter the current rate for the **User** rate type.

Currency Selected	Rate Type Selected	Reason
CAD	Corporate	Entered a periodic type of transaction. Your company has established a daily rate to use for the entire month across divisions for all transactions in CAD. CAD is a stable currency that only fluctuations slightly over the month.
MXP	Spot	Entered a periodic type of transaction. Your company enters daily rates each day for MXP because this currency is unstable and fluctuates.
HKD	User	Entered a one time transaction. Your company does not maintain daily rates in HKD.

Your company does not currently use the **Fixed** rate type. From January 1, 1999, the conversion rate of the French franc (FRF) against the Euro (EUR) was a fixed rate of 1 EUR to 6.55957 FRF. Your French operations were started in 2007, so you maintain all your French business records in the EUR.

FAQs for Manage Conversion Rate Types

What's the difference between spot, corporate, user, and fixed rate types?

Spot, corporate, user, and fixed conversion rate types differ based on fluctuations of your entered foreign currency and your company procedures for maintaining daily rates.

Rate Type	Usage
Spot	For currencies with fluctuating conversion rates or when exact currency conversion is needed.
Corporate	For setting a standard rate across your organization for a stable currency.
User	For infrequent entries where your daily rates for the entered foreign currency are not set up.
Fixed	For rates where the conversion is constant between two currencies.

If you have infrequent foreign currency transactions, the user rate type can simplify your currency maintenance. The user rate can also provide an accurate conversion rate on the date of the transaction.



Manage Daily Rates

Entering Daily Rates Manually: Worked Example

You are required to enter the daily rates for currency conversion from Great Britain pounds sterling (GBP) to United States dollars (USD) for 5 days for your company InFusion America Inc.

In order to load rates using the Daily Rates Spreadsheet, you need to install Oracle ADF Desktop Integration client software. Oracle ADF Desktop Integration is an Excel add-in that enables desktop integration with Microsoft Excel workbooks. Users can download the installation files from **Navigator > Tools > Download Desktop Integrator Installer.**

Entering Daily Rates

1. Navigator > Period Close.

Use the **Period Close** work area to link to close processes and currency process.

2. Click the Manage Currency Rates link.

Use the **Currency Rates Manager** page to create, edit, and review currency rate types, daily rates, and historical rates.

3. Click the **Daily Rates** tab.

Use the **Daily Rates** tab to review and enter currency rates.

4. Click the Create in Spreadsheet button.

Use the Create Daily Rates spreadsheet to enter daily rates in a template that you can save and reuse.

- 5. Click in the **From Currency** field. Select the GBP Pound Sterling list item.
- 6. Click in the **To Currency** field. Select the USD US Dollar list item.
- 7. Click in the **Conversion Rate** field. Select the Spot list item
- 8. Click in the **From Conversion** field. Enter a valid value: 10/1/2014.
- 9. Click in the **To Conversion Date** field. Enter a valid value: 10/5/2014.
- **10.** Click in the **Conversion Rate** field. Enter a valid value: 1.6.
- **11.** Click the **Submit** > **OK** twice.
- 12. Review the **Record Status** column to verify that all rows were loaded successfully.
- 13. Save template to use to enter daily rates frequently. You can save the spreadsheet to either a local drive or a shared network drive.
- **14.** Optionally, edit the rates from the Daily Rates user interface or resubmit the spreadsheet.

Related Topics

Using Desktop Integrated Excel Workbooks: Points to Consider

Updating Currency Rates: Worked Example

You are required to change today's daily rates that were already entered. The rates you are changing are for currency conversion from Great Britain pounds sterling (GBP) to United States dollars (USD) for your company InFusion America.

Currency conversion rates were entered by an automatic load to the Daily Rates table. They can also be entered through a spreadsheet.



Updating Currency Rates

1. Navigate to the Period Close work area.

Use the Period Close work area to link to close processes and currency process.

2. Click the Manage Currency Rates link.

Use the Currency Rates Manager page to create, edit, and review currency rate types, daily rates, and historical rates.

3. Click the Daily Rates tab.

Use the Daily Rates tab to review and enter currency rates.

- 4. Click the From Currency list. Select the GBP Pound Sterling list item.
- 5. Click the To Currency list. Select the USD US Dollar list item.
- 6. Enter the dates for the daily rates that you are changing. Enter today's date.
- 7. Click the Rate Type list. Select the Spot list item.
- 8. Click the Search button.
- 9. Click in the Rate field. Enter the new rate of 1.7 in the Rate field.
- 10. Click in the Inverse Rate field. Enter the new inverse rate of 0.58822 in the Inverse Rate field.
- 11. Click the Save button.

Related Topics

• Using Desktop Integrated Excel Workbooks: Points to Consider





5 Define Enterprise Structures

Enterprise Structures: Overview

Oracle Fusion Applications have been designed to ensure your enterprise can be modeled to meet legal and management objectives. The decisions about your implementation of Oracle Fusion Applications are affected by your:

- Industry
- Business unit requirements for autonomy
- Business and accounting policies
- Business functions performed by business units and optionally, centralized in shared service centers
- · Locations of facilities

Every enterprise has three fundamental structures, that describe its operations and provide a basis for reporting.

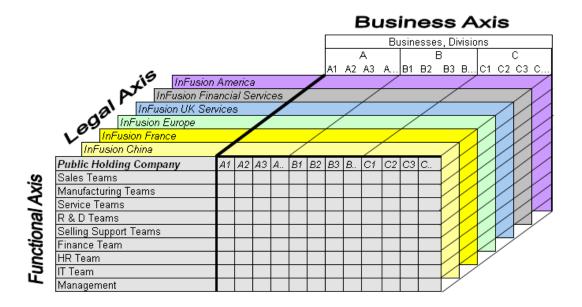
- Legal
- Managerial
- Functional

In Oracle Fusion, these structures are implemented using the chart of accounts and organization hierarchies. Many alternative hierarchies can be implemented and used for reporting. You are likely to have one primary structure that organizes your business into:

- Divisions
- Business Units
- Departments



Aligned these structures with your strategic objectives.



Legal Structure

The figure above shows a typical group of legal entities, operating various business and functional organizations. Your ability to buy and sell, own, and employ comes from your charter in the legal system. A corporation is:

- A distinct legal entity from its owners and managers.
- Owned by its shareholders, who may be individuals or other corporations.

Many other kinds of legal entities exist, such as sole proprietorships, partnerships, and government agencies.

A legally recognized entity can own and trade assets and employ people in the jurisdiction in which the entity is registered. When granted these privileges, legal entities are also assigned responsibilities to:

- Account for themselves to the public through statutory and external reporting.
- Comply with legislation and regulations.
- Pay income and transaction taxes.
- Process value added tax (VAT) collection on behalf of the taxing authority.

Many large enterprises isolate risk and optimize taxes by incorporating subsidiaries. They create legal entities to facilitate legal compliance, segregate operations, optimize taxes, complete contractual relationships, and isolate risk. Enterprises use legal entities to establish their enterprise's identity under the laws of each country in which their enterprise operates.

In the figure above:

- A separate card represents a series of registered companies.
- Each company, including the public holding company, InFusion America, must be registered in the countries where they do business.



• Each company contributes to various divisions created for purposes of management reporting. These are shown as vertical columns on each card.

For example, a group might have a separate company for each business in the United States (US), but have its United Kingdom (UK) legal entity represent all businesses in that country.

The divisions are linked across the cards so that a business can appear on some or all of the cards. For example, the air quality monitoring systems business might be operated by the US, UK, and France companies. The list of business divisions is on the Business Axis.

Each company's card is also horizontally striped by functional groups, such as the sales team and the finance team. This functional list is called the Functional Axis. The overall image suggests that information might, at a minimum, be tracked by company, business, division, and function in a group environment. In Oracle Fusion Applications, the legal structure is implemented using legal entities.

Management Structure

Successfully managing multiple businesses requires that you segregate them by their strategic objectives, and measure their results. Although related to your legal structure, the business organizational hierarchies do not have to be reflected directly in the legal structure of the enterprise. The management structure can include divisions, subdivisions, lines of business, strategic business units, profit, and cost centers. In the figure above, the management structure is shown on the Business Axis. In Oracle Fusion Applications, the management structure is implemented using divisions and business units as well as being reflected in the chart of accounts.

Functional Structure

Straddling the legal and business organizations is a functional organization structured around people and their competencies. For example, sales, manufacturing, and service teams are functional organizations. This functional structure is represented by the Functional Axis in the figure above. You reflect the efforts and expenses of your functional organizations directly on the income statement. Organizations must manage and report revenues, cost of sales, and functional expenses such as research and development and selling, general, and administrative expenses. In Oracle Fusion Applications, the functional structure is implemented using departments and organizations, including sales, marketing, project, cost, and inventory organizations.

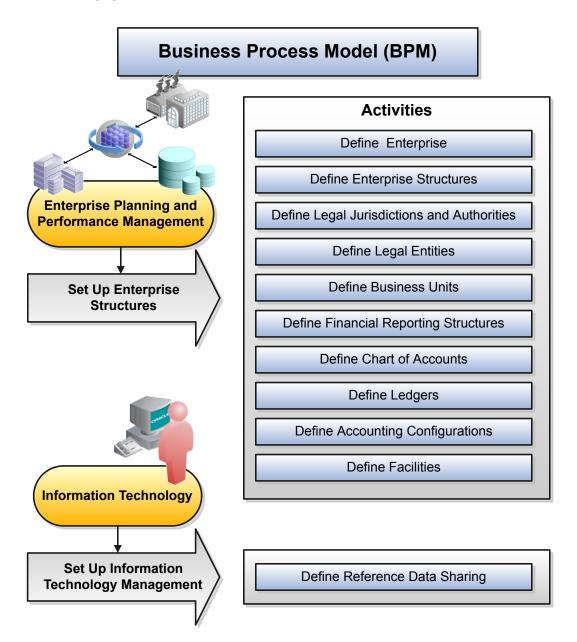
Enterprise Structures Business Process Model: Explained

In Oracle Fusion Applications, the Enterprise Performance and Planning Business Process Model illustrates the major implementation tasks that you perform to create your enterprise structures. This process includes:

- Set Up Enterprise Structures business process, which consists of implementation activities that span many product families.
- Information Technology, a second Business Process Model which contains the Set Up Information Technology Management business process.
- Define Reference Data Sharing, which is one of the activities in this business process and is important in the
 implementation of the enterprise structures. This activity creates the mechanism to share reference data sets across
 multiple ledgers, business units, and warehouses, reducing the administrative burden and decreasing the time to
 implement.



The following figure and chart describes the Business Process Model structures and activities.



BPM Activities	Description
Define Enterprise	Define the enterprise to get the name of the deploying enterprise and the location of the headquarters.
Define Enterprise Structures	Define enterprise structures to represent an organization with one or more legal entities under common control. Define organizations to represent each area of business within the enterprise.



BPM Activities	Description
Define Legal Jurisdictions and Authorities	Define information for governing bodies that operate within a jurisdiction.
Define Legal Entities	Define legal entities and legal reporting units for business activities handled by the Oracle Fusion Applications.
Define Business Units	Define business units of an enterprise to perform one or many business functions that can be rolled up in a management hierarchy. A business unit can process transactions on behalf of many legal entities. Normally, it has a manager, strategic objectives, a level of autonomy, and responsibility for its profit and loss.
Define Financial Reporting Structures	Define financial reporting structures, including organization structures, charts of accounts, organizational hierarchies, calendars, currencies and rates, ledgers, and document sequences which are used in organizing the financial data of a company.
Define Chart of Accounts	Define chart of accounts including hierarchies and values to enable tracking of financial transactions and reporting at legal entity, cost center, account, and other segment levels.
Define Ledgers	Define the primary accounting ledger and any secondary ledgers that provide an alternative accounting representation of the financial data.
Define Accounting Configurations	Define the accounting configuration that serves as a framework for how financial records are maintained for an organization.
Define Facilities	Define your manufacturing and storage facilities as Inventory Organizations if Oracle Fusion tracks inventory balances there and Item Organizations if Oracle Fusion only tracks the items used in the facility but not the balances.
Define Reference Data Sharing	Define how reference data in the applications is partitioned and shared.

Note: Some product-specific implementation activities are not listed here and depend on the applications you are implementing. For example, you can implement Define Enterprise Structures for Human Capital Management, Project Management, and Sales Management.

Global Enterprise Configuration: Points to Consider

Start your global enterprise structure configuration by discussing what your organization's reporting needs are and how to represent those needs in the Oracle Fusion Applications. The following are some questions and points to consider as you design your global enterprise structure in Oracle Fusion.

- Enterprise Configuration
- Business Unit Management
- Security Structure
- Compliance Requirements



Enterprise Configuration

- What is the level of configuration needed to achieve the reporting and accounting requirements?
- What components of your enterprise do you need to report on separately?
- Which components can be represented by building a hierarchy of values to provide reporting at both detail and summary levels?
- Where are you on the spectrum of centralization versus decentralization?

Business Unit Management

- What reporting do I need by business unit?
- How can you set up your departments or business unit accounts to achieve departmental hierarchies that report accurately on your lines of business?
- What reporting do you need to support the managers of your business units, and the executives who measure them?
- How often are business unit results aggregated?
- What level of reporting detail is required across business units?

Security Structure

- · What level of security and access is allowed?
- Are business unit managers and the people that report to them secured to transactions within their own business unit?
- Are the transactions for their business unit largely performed by a corporate department or shared service center?

Compliance Requirements

- How do you comply with your corporate external reporting requirements and local statutory reporting requirements?
- Do you tend to prefer a corporate first or an autonomous local approach?
- Where are you on a spectrum of centralization, very centralized or decentralized?

Modeling Your Enterprise Management Structure in Oracle Fusion: Example

This example uses a fictitious global company to demonstrate the analysis that can occur during the enterprise structure configuration planning process.



Scenario

Your company, InFusion Corporation, is a multinational conglomerate that operates in the United States (US) and the United Kingdom (UK). InFusion has purchased an Oracle Fusion Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) solution including Oracle Fusion General Ledger and all of the Oracle Fusion subledgers. You are chairing a committee to discuss creation of a model for your global enterprise structure including both your US and UK operations.

InFusion Corporation

InFusion Corporation has 400 plus employees and revenue of 120 million US dollars. Your product line includes all the components to build and maintain air quality monitoring (AQM) applications for homes and businesses. You have two distribution centers and three warehouses that share a common item master in the US and UK. Your financial services organization provides funding to your customers for the initial costs of these applications.

Analysis

The following are elements you must consider in creating your model for your global enterprise structure.

- Your company is required to report using US Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP) standards and UK Statements of Standard Accounting Practice and Financial Reporting Standards. How many ledgers do you want to achieve proper statutory reporting?
- Your managers need reports that show profit and loss (revenue and expenses) for their lines of business. Do you
 use business units and balancing segments to represent your divisions and businesses? Do you secure data by two
 segments in your chart of accounts which represents each department and legal entity? Or do you use one segment
 that represents both to produce useful, but confidential management reports?
- Your corporate management requires reports showing total organizational performance with drill-down capability to the supporting details. Do you need multiple balancing segment hierarchies to achieve proper rollup of balances for reporting requirements?
- Your company has all administrative, account payables, procurement, and Human Resources functions performed at their corporate headquarters. Do you need one or more business units in which to perform all these functions? How is your shared service center configured?

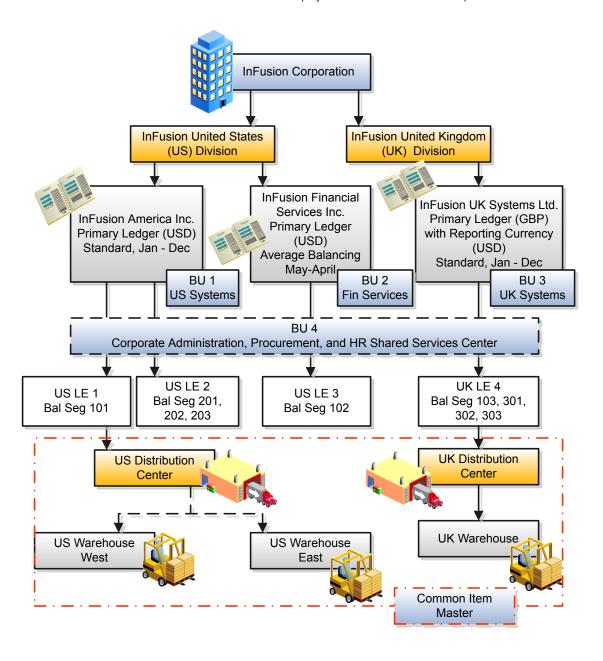
Global Enterprise Structure Model

The following figure and table summarize the model that your committee has designed and uses numeric values to provide a sample representation of your structure. The model includes the following recommendations:

- Creation of three separate ledgers representing your separate legal entities:
 - o InFusion America Inc.
 - InFusion Financial Services Inc.
 - InFusion UK Services Ltd.



- Consolidation of results for application components, installations, and maintenance product lines across the enterprise
- All UK general and administrative costs processed at the UK headquarters
- US Systems' general and administrative costs processed at US Corporate headquarters
- US Financial Services maintains its own payables and receivables departments





Real World Entity	Entity Name	Enterprise	Legal Entity	BSV	Ledger	BU	Cost Center	Dept	In ventory Org
Enterprise	InFusion Group								
Company	USLE1								
Company	USLE2		-	-					
Company	USLE3		-	7					
Company	UK LE 4		<u> </u>						
Business Unit	U S Systems BU 1								
Business Unit	FIN Services BU 2								
Bu siness Unit	UK Systems BU 3								
Division	In Fusion UK						•		
Division	InFusion US								
Headquarters	BU 4								
Shared Service Center	BU 4								
Department	AP Department								
List of Items	Common Item Master								
Distribution Center	US Distribution Center								
Distribution Center	UK Distribution Center								
Warehouse	U S Warehouse West								
Warehouse	US Warehouse East								
Warehouse	UK Warehouse								
B SV = Balancing Segme	ent Value								
BU = Business Unit									
Dept = Department									
Org = Organization									
= Mandatory Setup									
Setup									

In this chart, the green globe stands for required and gold globe stands for optional setup. The following statements expand on the data in the chart.

- The enterprise is required because it serves as an umbrella for the entire implementation. All organizations are created within an enterprise.
- Legal entities are also required. They can be optionally mapped to balancing segment values or represented by ledgers. Mapping balancing segment values to legal entities is required if you plan to use the intercompany functionality. The InFusion Corporation is a legal entity but is not discussed in this example.
- At least one ledger is required in an implementation in which you record your accounting transactions.
- Business units are also required because financial transactions are processed in business units.
- A shared service center is optional, but if used, must be a business unit.
- Divisions are optional and can be represented with a hierarchy of cost centers or by a second balancing segment value.
- Departments are required because they track your employees.
- Optionally, add an item master organization and inventory organizations if you are tracking your inventory transactions in Oracle Fusion Applications.



Note: Some Oracle Fusion Human Capital Management and Oracle Sales Cloud implementations do not require recording accounting transactions and therefore, do not require a ledger.

Essbase Character and Word Limitations

The following is a comprehensive list of character and word limitations that apply to Essbase. All of the limitations apply to all of the Oracle Fusion General Ledger configurations summarized in the table.

Oracle Fusion General Ledger Configuration	Maps to Essbase
Chart of Account Name	Cube Name
Chart of Account Segment Name	Dimension Name
Chart of Accounts Segment Value	Dimension Member Name
Chart of Accounts Segment Value Description	Alias for Member
Tree and Tree Version Name	Dimension Member Name
Primary Ledger Name	Dimension Member Name in Ledger Dimension
Secondary Ledger Name	Dimension Member Name in Ledger Dimension
Reporting Currency Name	Dimension Member Name in Ledger Dimension
Ledger Set Name	Dimension Member Name in Ledger Dimension
Accounting Calendar Period Names	Dimension Member Name in Accounting Period Name
Scenario Name Defined in Predefined Value Set Called Accounting Scenario	Dimension Member Name in Scenario Dimension

Even if case sensitivity is enabled in an aggregate storage outline for which duplicate member names is enabled, do not use matching dimension names with only case differences. For example, do not:

- Name two dimensions Product and product.
- Use quotation marks or brackets.
- Use tabs in dimension, member, or alias names.
- Use accent characters.
- Use the characters for dimension or member names.



Restricted Characters

The following is a list of characters that are restricted and cannot be used at the beginning of dimension, member, or alias names.

Character	Meaning
@	at sign
\	backslash
,	comma
-	dash, hyphen, or minus sign
	For the accounting calendar period names, you can use a hyphen or an underscore in the middle of an accounting calendar period name. For example: Jan-15 or Adj_Dec-15 can be used successfully.
=	equal sign
<	less than sign
0	parentheses
	period
+	plus sign
	single quotation mark
-	underscore
	For the accounting calendar period names, you can use a hyphen or an underscore in the middle of an accounting calendar period name. For example: Jan-15 or Adj_Dec-15 can be used successfully.
	vertical bar

Other Restrictions

- Don't place spaces at the beginning or end of names. Essbase ignores such spaces.
- Don't use these types of words as dimension or member names:
 - o Calculation script commands, operators, and keywords.



- Report writer commands.
- Function names and function arguments.
- o Names of other dimensions and members (unless the member is shared).
- o Generation names, level names, and aliases in the database.
- Any of these words in the table below:

List 1	List 2	List 3
ALL	AND	ASSIGN
AVERAGE	CALC	CALCMBR
COPYFORWARD	CROSSDIM	CURMBRNAME
DIM	DIMNAME	DIV
DYNAMIC	EMPTYPARM	EQ
EQOP	EXCEPT	EXP
EXPERROR	FLOAT	FUNCTION
GE	GEN	GENRANGE
GROUP	GT	ID
IDERROR	INTEGER	LE
LEVELRANGE	LOOPBLOCK	LOOPPARMS
Ц	MBR	MBRNAME
MBRONLY	MINUS	MISSING, #MISSING
MUL	MULOP	NE
NON	NONINPUT	NOT
OR	PAREN	PARENPARM
PERCENT	PLUS	RELOP
SET	SKIPBOTH	SKIPMISSING
SKIPNONE	SKIPZERO	ТО



List 1	List 2	List 3
TOLOCALRATE	TRAILMISSING	TRAILSUM
UMINUS	UPPER	VARORXMBR
XMRONLY	\$\$\$UNIVERSE\$\$\$	#MI

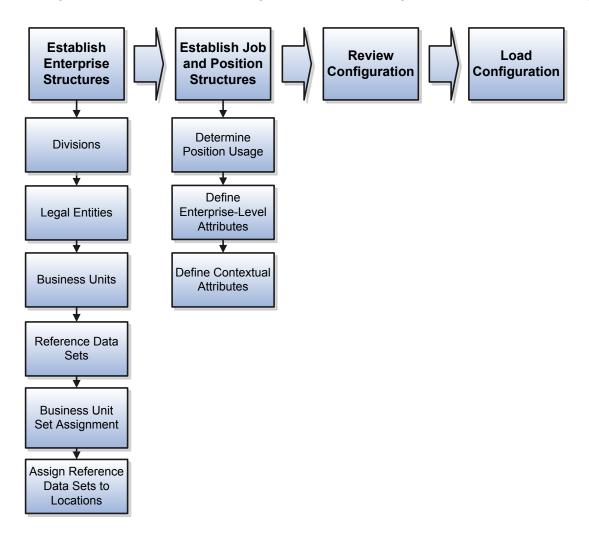
Define Initial Configuration with the Enterprise Structures Configurator

Establishing Enterprise Structures Using the Enterprise Structures Configurator: Explained

The Enterprise Structures Configurator is an interview-based tool that guides you through the process of setting up a basic enterprise structure. By answering questions about your enterprise, the tool creates a structure of divisions, legal entities, business units, and reference data sets that reflects your enterprise structure. After you create your enterprise structure, you also follow a guided process to determine whether to use positions, and whether to set up additional attributes for jobs and positions. After you define your enterprise structure and your job and position structures, you can review them, make any necessary changes, and then load the final configuration.



This figure illustrates the process to configure your enterprise using the Enterprise Structures Configurator.



To be able to use the Enterprise Structures Configurator, you must select the Enterprise Structures Guided Flow feature for your offerings on the Configure Offerings page in the Setup and Maintenance work area. If you don't select this feature, then you must set up your enterprise structure using individual tasks provided elsewhere in the offerings, and you can't create multiple configurations to compare different scenarios.

Establish Enterprise Structures

To define your enterprise structures, use the guided flow within the Establish Enterprise Structures task to enter basic information about your enterprise, such as the primary industry. You then create divisions, legal entities, business units, and reference data sets. The Establish Enterprise Structures task enables you to create multiple enterprise configurations so that you can compare different scenarios. Until you load a configuration, you can continue to create and edit multiple configurations until you arrive at one that best suits your enterprise.

Establish Job and Position Structures

You also use a guided process to determine whether you want to use jobs only, or jobs and positions. The primary industry that you select in the Establish Enterprise Structures task provides the application with enough information to make an initial recommendation. You can either accept the recommendation, or you can answer additional questions about how you



manage people in your enterprise, and then make a selection. After you select whether to use jobs or positions, you are prompted to set up a descriptive flexfield structure for jobs, and for positions if applicable. Descriptive flexfields enable you to get more information when you create jobs and positions.

Review Configuration

You can view a result of the interview process prior to loading the configuration. The review results, show the divisions, legal entities, business units, reference data sets, and the management reporting structure that the application will create when you load the configuration.

Load Configuration

You can load only one configuration. When you load a configuration, the application creates the divisions, legal entities, business units, and so on. After you load the configuration, you then use individual tasks to edit, add, and delete enterprise structures.

Rolling Back an Enterprise Structure Configuration: Explained

The Enterprise Structures Configurator (ESC) provides the ability to roll back an enterprise configuration in the following circumstances:

Roll Back a Configuration Manually

You can manually roll back an enterprise configuration after loading it, for example, because you decide you do not want to use it. Clicking the Roll Back Configuration button on the Manage Enterprise Configuration page rolls back any enterprise structures that were created as a part of loading the configuration.

Roll Back a Configuration Automatically

If an error occurs during the process of loading the configuration, then the application automatically rolls back any enterprise structures that were created before the error was encountered.

Designing an Enterprise Configuration: Example

This example illustrates how to set up an enterprise based on a global company operating mainly in the US and the UK with a single primary industry.

Scenario

InFusion Corporation is a multinational enterprise in the high technology industry with product lines that include all the components that are required to build and maintain air quality monitoring systems for homes and businesses. Its primary locations are in the US and the UK, but it has smaller outlets in France, Saudi Arabia, and the United Arab Emirates (UAE).

Enterprise Details

In the US, InFusion employs 400 people and has company revenue of 120 million US dollars.. Outside the US, InFusion employs 200 people and has revenue of 60 million US dollars.



Analysis

InFusion requires three divisions.

- The US division covers the US locations.
- The Europe division covers UK and France.
- Saudi Arabia and the UAE are covered by the Middle East division.

InFusion requires legal entities with legal employers, payroll statutory units, tax reporting units, and legislative data groups for the US, UK, France, Saudi Arabia, and UAE, to employ and pay its workers in those countries.

InFusion requires a number of departments across the enterprise for each area of business, such as sales and marketing, and a number of cost centers to track and report on the costs of those departments.

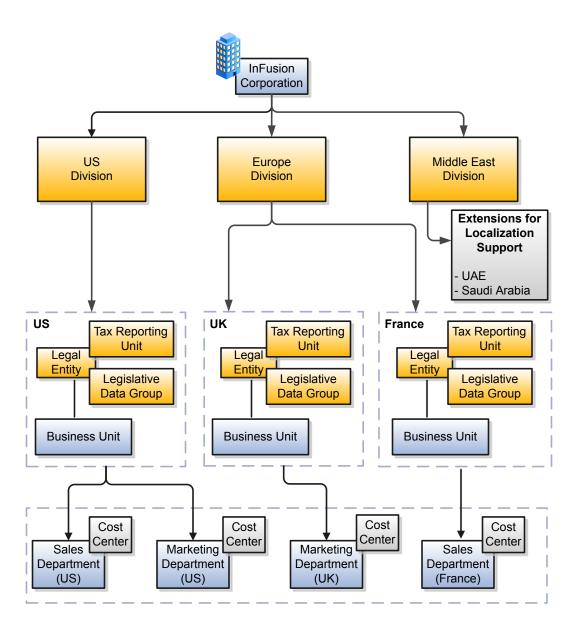
InFusion has general managers responsible for business units within each country. Those business units may share reference data. Some reference data can be defined within a reference data set that multiple business units may subscribe to. Business units are also required for financial purposes. Financial transactions are always processed within a business unit.

Resulting Enterprise Configuration

Based on this analysis, InFusion requires an enterprise with multiple divisions, ledgers, legal employers, payroll statutory units, tax reporting units, legislative data groups, departments, cost centers, and business units.



This figure illustrates the enterprise configuration that results from the analysis of InFusion Corporation.



Divisions: Explained

Managing multiple businesses requires that you segregate them by their strategic objectives and measure their results.



Responsibility to reach objectives can be delegated along the management structure. Although related to your legal structure, the business organizational hierarchies do not reflect directly the legal structure of the enterprise. The management entities and structure can include:

- Divisions and subdivisions
- Lines of business
- · Other strategic business units
- Their own revenue and cost centers

These organizations can be included in many alternative hierarchies and used for reporting, as long as they have representation in the chart of accounts.

Divisions

A division refers to a business-oriented subdivision within an enterprise, in which each division organizes itself differently to deliver products and services or address different markets. A division can operate in one or more countries, and can be many companies or parts of different companies that are represented by business units.

A division is a profit center or grouping of profit and cost centers, where the division manager is responsible for achieving business goals including profits. A division can be responsible for a share of the company's existing product lines or for a separate business. Managers of divisions may also have return on investment goals requiring tracking of the assets and liabilities of the division. The division manager generally reports to a top corporate executive.

By definition a division can be represented in the chart of accounts. Companies can use product lines, brands, or geographies as their divisions: their choice represents the primary organizing principle of the enterprise. This may coincide with the management segment used in segment reporting.

Oracle Fusion Applications supports a qualified management segment and recommends that you use this segment to represent your hierarchy of business units and divisions. If managers of divisions have return on investment goals, make the management segment a balancing segment. Oracle Fusion applications permit up to three balancing segments. The values of the management segment can be business units that roll up in a hierarchy to report by division.

Historically, divisions were implemented as a node in a hierarchy of segment values. For example, Oracle E-Business Suite has only one balancing segment, and often the division and legal entity are combined into a single segment where each value stands for both division and legal entity.

Use of Divisions in Oracle Fusion Human Capital Management (HCM)

Divisions are used in HCM to define the management organization hierarchy, using the generic organization hierarchy. This hierarchy can be used to create organization-based security profiles.

Legal Entities: Explained

A legal entity is a recognized party with rights and responsibilities given by legislation.

Legal entities have the following rights and responsibilities to:

- Own property
- Trade
- Repay debt
- Account for themselves to regulators, taxation authorities, and owners according to rules specified in the relevant legislation



Their rights and responsibilities may be enforced through the judicial system. Define a legal entity for each registered company or other entity recognized in law for which you want to record assets, liabilities, expenses and income, pay transaction taxes, or perform intercompany trading.

A legal entity has responsibility for elements of your enterprise for the following reasons:

- Facilitating local compliance
- Minimizing the enterprise's tax liability
- Preparing for acquisitions or disposals of parts of the enterprise
- Isolating one area of the business from risks in another area. For example, your enterprise develops property and
 also leases properties. You could operate the property development business as a separate legal entity to limit risk to
 your leasing business.

The Role of Your Legal Entities

In configuring your enterprise structure in Oracle Fusion Applications, the contracting party on any transaction is always the legal entity. Individual legal entities:

- Own the assets of the enterprise
- Record sales and pay taxes on those sales
- Make purchases and incur expenses
- Perform other transactions

Legal entities must comply with the regulations of jurisdictions, in which they register. Europe now allows for companies to register in one member country and do business in all member countries, and the US allows for companies to register in one state and do business in all states. To support local reporting requirements, legal reporting units are created and registered.

You are required to publish specific and periodic disclosures of your legal entities' operations based on different jurisdictions' requirements. Certain annual or more frequent accounting reports are referred to as statutory or external reporting. These reports must be filed with specified national and regulatory authorities. For example, in the United States (US), your publicly owned entities (corporations) are required to file quarterly and annual reports, as well as other periodic reports, with the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), which enforces statutory reporting requirements for public corporations.

Individual entities privately held or held by public companies do not have to file separately. In other countries, your individual entities do have to file in their own name, as well as at the public group level. Disclosure requirements are diverse. For example, your local entities may have to file locally to comply with local regulations in a local currency, as well as being included in your enterprise's reporting requirements in different currency.

A legal entity can represent all or part of your enterprise's management framework. For example, if you operate in a large country such as the United Kingdom or Germany, you might incorporate each division in the country as a separate legal entity. In a smaller country, for example Austria, you might use a single legal entity to host all of your business operations across divisions.

Creating Legal Entities in the Enterprise Structures Configurator: Points to Consider

Use the Enterprise Structures Configurator (ESC), to create legal entities for your enterprise automatically, based on the countries in which divisions of your business operate, or you can upload a list of legal entities from a spreadsheet.



Automatically Creating Legal Entities

If you are not certain of the number of legal entities that you need, you can create them automatically. To use this option, you first identify all of the countries in which your enterprise operates. The application opens the Map Divisions by Country page, which contains a matrix of the countries that you identified, your enterprise, and the divisions that you created. You select the check boxes where your enterprise and divisions intersect with the countries to identify the legal entities that you want the application to create. The enterprise is included for situations where your enterprise operates in a country, acts on behalf of several divisions within the enterprise, and is a legal employer in a country. If you select the enterprise for a country, the application creates a country holding company.

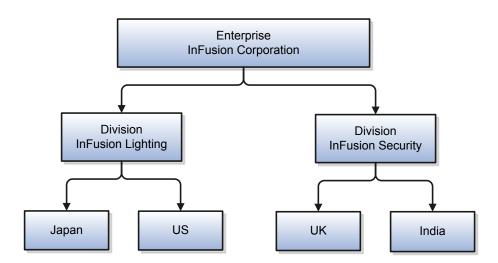
The application automatically creates the legal entities that you select, and identifies them as payroll statutory units and legal employers. For each country that you indicated that your enterprise operates in, and for each country that you created a location for, the application also automatically creates a legislative data group.

Any legal entities that you create automatically cannot be deleted from the Create Legal Entities page within the Enterprise Structures Configurator. You must return to the Map Divisions by Country page and deselect the legal entities that you no longer want.

Example: Creating Legal Entities Automatically

InFusion Corporation is using the ESC to set up its enterprise structure. The corporation has identified two divisions, one for Lighting, and one for Security. The Lighting division operates in Japan and the US, and the Security division operates in the UK and India.

This figure illustrates InFusion Corporation's enterprise structure.



This table represents the selections that InFusion Corporation makes when specifying which legal entities to create on the Map Divisions by Country page.

Country	Enterprise	InFusion Lighting	InFusion Security
Japan	No	Yes	No
US	No	Yes	No



Country	Enterprise	InFusion Lighting	InFusion Security
UK	No	No	Yes
India	No	No	Yes

Based on the selections made in the preceding table, the ESC creates the following four legal entities:

- InFusion Lighting Japan LE
- InFusion Lighting US LE
- InFusion Security UK LE
- InFusion Security India LE

Creating Legal Entities Using a Spreadsheet

If you have a list of legal entities already defined for your enterprise, you can upload them from a spreadsheet. To use this option, you first download a spreadsheet template, then add your legal entity information to the spreadsheet, and then upload directly to your enterprise configuration. You can export and import the spreadsheet multiple times to accommodate revisions.

Related Topics

- HCM Organization Models: Examples
- Payroll Statutory Units, Legal Employers, and Tax Reporting Units: How They Work Together
- Using Desktop Integrated Excel Workbooks: Points to Consider

Legal Entity in Oracle Fusion: Points to Consider

Oracle Fusion Applications support the modeling of your legal entities. If you make purchases from or sell to other legal entities, define these other legal entities in your customer and supplier registers. These registers are part of the Oracle Fusion Trading Community Architecture.

When your legal entities are trading with each other, represent them as legal entities and as customers and suppliers in your customer and supplier registers. Use legal entity relationships to determine which transactions are intercompany and require intercompany accounting. Your legal entities can be identified as legal employers and therefore, are available for use in Human Capital Management (HCM) applications.

Several decisions you should consider when you create legal entities.

- The importance of using legal entity on transactions
- Legal entity and its relationship to business units
- Legal entity and its relationship to divisions
- Legal entity and its relationship to ledgers
- Legal entity and its relationship to balancing segments
- Legal entity and its relationship to consolidation rules
- Legal entity and its relationship to intercompany transactions
- Legal entity and its relationship to worker assignments and legal employer
- Legal entity and payroll reporting



Legal reporting units

The Importance of Using Legal Entities on Transactions

All of the assets of the enterprise are owned by individual legal entities. Oracle Fusion Financials allow your users to enter legal entities on transactions that represent a movement in value or obligation.

For example, a sales order creates an obligation on the legal entity that books the order to deliver the goods on the acknowledged date. The creation also creates an obligation on the purchaser to receive and pay for those goods. Under contract law in most countries, damages can be sought for both:

- Actual losses, putting the injured party in the same state as if they had not entered into the contract.
- What is called loss of bargain, or the profit that would have made on a transaction.

In another example, if you revalued your inventory in a warehouse to account for raw material price increases, the revaluation and revaluation reserves must be reflected in your legal entity's accounts. In Oracle Fusion Applications, your inventory within an inventory organization is managed by a single business unit and belongs to one legal entity.

Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Business Units

A business unit can process transactions on behalf of many legal entities. Frequently, a business unit is part of a single legal entity. In most cases, the legal entity is explicit on your transactions. For example, a payables invoice has an explicit legal entity field. Your accounts payables department can process supplier invoices on behalf of one or many business units.

In some cases, your legal entity is inferred from your business unit that is processing the transaction. For example, Business Unit ACM UK has a default legal entity of InFusion UK Ltd. When a purchase order is placed in ACM UK, the legal entity InFusion UK Ltd is legally obligated to the supplier. Oracle Fusion Procurement, Oracle Fusion Project Portfolio Management, and Oracle Fusion Supply Chain applications rely on deriving the legal entity information from the business unit.<

Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Divisions

The division is an area of management responsibility that can correspond to a collection of legal entities. If wanted, you can aggregate the results for your divisions by legal entity or by combining parts of other legal entities. Define date-effective hierarchies for your cost center or legal entity segment in your chart of accounts to facilitate the aggregation and reporting by division. Divisions and legal entities are independent concepts.

Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Ledgers

One of your major responsibilities is to file financial statements for your legal entities. Map legal entities to specific ledgers using the Oracle Fusion General Ledger Accounting Configuration Manager. Within a ledger, you can optionally map a legal entity to one or more balancing segment values.

Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Balancing Segments

Oracle Fusion General Ledger supports up to three balancing segments. Best practices recommend one segment represents your legal entity to ease your requirement to account for your operations to regulatory agencies, tax authorities, and investors. Accounting for your operations means you must produce a balanced trial balance sheet by legal entity. If you account for many legal entities in a single ledger, you must:

- 1. Identify the legal entities within the ledger.
- 2. Balance transactions that cross legal entity boundaries through intercompany transactions.
- 3. Decide which balancing segments correspond to each legal entity and assign them in Oracle Fusion General Ledger Accounting Configuration Manager. Once you assign one balancing segment value in a ledger, then all your balancing segment values must be assigned. This recommended best practice facilitates reporting on assets, liabilities, and income by legal entity.

Represent your legal entities by at least one balancing segment value. You may represent it by two or three balancing segment values if more granular reporting is required. For example, if your legal entity operates in multiple jurisdictions in



Europe, you might define balancing segment values and map them to legal reporting units. You can represent a legal entity with more than one balancing segment value. Do not use a single balancing segment value to represent more than one legal entity.

In Oracle Fusion General Ledger, there are three balancing segments. You can use separate balancing segments to represent your divisions or strategic business units to enable management reporting at the balance sheet level for each. This solution is used to empower your business unit and divisional managers to track and assume responsibility for their asset utilization or return on investment. Using multiple balancing segments is also useful when you know at the time of implementation that you are disposing of a part of a legal entity and want to isolate the assets and liabilities for that entity.

Implementing multiple balancing segments requires every journal entry that is not balanced by division or business unit, to generate balancing lines. You cannot change to multiple balancing segments after you begin using the ledger because your historical data is not balanced by the new balancing segments. Restating historical data must be done at that point.

If your enterprise regularly spins off businesses or holds managers accountable for utilization of assets, identify the business with a balancing segment value. If you account for each legal entity in a separate ledger, no requirement exists to identify the legal entity with a balancing segment value.

While transactions that cross balancing segments don't necessarily cross legal entity boundaries, all transactions that cross legal entity boundaries must cross balancing segments. If you make an acquisition or are preparing to dispose of a portion of your enterprise, you may want to account for that part of the enterprise in its own balancing segment even if the portion is not a separate legal entity. If you do not map legal entities sharing the same ledger to balancing segments, you cannot distinguish them using intercompany functionality or track individual equity.

Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Consolidation Rules

In Oracle Fusion Applications you can map legal entities to balancing segments and then define consolidation rules using your balancing segments. You are creating a relationship between the definition of your legal entities and their role in your consolidation.

Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Intercompany Transactions

Use Oracle Fusion Intercompany feature to create intercompany entries automatically across your balancing segments. Intercompany processing updates legal ownership within the enterprise's groups of legal entities. Invoices or journals are created as needed. To limit the number of trading pairs for your enterprise, set up intercompany organizations and assign then to your authorized legal entities. Define processing options and intercompany accounts to use when creating intercompany transactions and to assist in consolidation elimination entries. These accounts are derived and automatically entered on your intercompany transactions based on legal entities assigned to your intercompany organizations.

Intracompany trading, in which legal ownership isn't changed but other organizational responsibilities are, is also supported. For example, you can track assets and liabilities that move between your departments within your legal entities by creating departmental level intercompany organizations.

💡 Tip: In the Oracle Fusion Supply Chain applications, you can model intercompany relationships using business units, from which legal entities are derived.

Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Worker Assignments and Legal Employer

Legal entities that employ people are called legal employers in the Oracle Fusion Legal Entity Configurator. You must enter legal employers on worker assignments in Oracle Fusion HCM.

Legal Entity and Payroll Reporting

Your legal entities are required to pay payroll tax and social insurance such as social security on your payroll. In Oracle Fusion Applications, you can register payroll statutory units to pay and report on payroll tax and social insurance for your legal



entities. As the legal employer, you might be required to pay payroll tax, not only at the national level, but also at the local level. You meet this obligation by establishing your legal entity as a place of work within the jurisdiction of a local authority. Set up legal reporting units to represent the part of your enterprise with a specific legal reporting obligation. You can also mark these legal reporting units as tax reporting units, if the legal entity must pay taxes as a result of establishing a place of business within the jurisdiction.

Business Units: Explained

A business unit is a unit of an enterprise that performs one or many business functions that can be rolled up in a management hierarchy. A business unit can process transactions on behalf of many legal entities. Normally, it has a manager, strategic objectives, a level of autonomy, and responsibility for its profit and loss. Roll business units up into divisions if you structure your chart of accounts with this type of hierarchy.

In Oracle Fusion Applications you do the following:

- Assign your business units to one primary ledger. For example, if a business unit is processing payables invoices, then it must post to a particular ledger. This assignment is required for your business units with business functions that produce financial transactions.
- Use a business unit as a securing mechanism for transactions. For example, if you run your export business separately from your domestic sales business, then secure the export business data to prevent access by the domestic sales employees. To accomplish this security, set up the export business and domestic sales business as two separate business units.

The Oracle Fusion Applications business unit model provides the following advantages:

- Enables flexible implementation
- Provides consistent entity that controls and reports on transactions
- Shares sets of reference data across applications

Business units process transactions using reference data sets that reflect your business rules and policies and can differ from country to country. With Oracle Fusion Application functionality, you can share reference data, such as payment terms and transaction types, across business units, or you can have each business unit manage its own set depending on the level at which you want to enforce common policies.

In countries where gapless and chronological sequencing of documents is required for subledger transactions, define your business units in alignment with your legal entities to ensure the uniqueness of sequencing.

In summary, use business units for:

- Management reporting
- Transaction processing
- Transactional data security
- Reference data sharing and definition

Brief Overview of Business Unit Security

A number of Oracle Fusion Applications use business units to implement data security. You assign roles like Accounts Payable Manager to users to permit them to perform specific functions, and you assign business units for each role to users to give them access to data in those business units. For example, users which have been assigned a Payables role for a particular business unit, can perform the function of payables invoicing on the data in that business unit. Roles can be assigned to users manually using the Security Console, or automatically using provisioning rules. Business Units can be assigned to users using the Manage Data Access for Users task in Setup and Maintenance.



Creating Business Units in the Enterprise Structures Configurator: Points to Consider

Business units are used within Oracle Fusion applications for management reporting, processing of transactions, and security of transactional data. Using the Enterprise Structures Configurator (ESC), you create business units for your enterprise either automatically or manually.

Automatically Creating Business Units

To create business units automatically, you must specify the level at which to create business units. Business units within your enterprise may be represented at one of two levels:

- Business function level, such as Sales, Consulting, Product Development, and so on.
- A more detailed level, where a business unit exists for each combination of countries in which you operate and the functions in those countries.

You can automatically create business units at the following levels:

- Country
- Country and Division
- Country and business function
- Division
- Division and legal entity
- Division and business function
- Business function
- Legal entity
- Business function and legal entity

Select the option that best meets your business requirements, but consider the following:

- If you use Oracle Fusion Financials, the legal entity option is recommended because of the manner in which financial transactions are processed.
- The business unit level that you select determines how the application automatically creates reference data sets.

After you select a business unit level, the application generates a list of business units, and you select the ones you want the application to create. If you select a level that has two components, such as country and division, then the application displays a table listing both components. You select the check boxes at the intersections of the two components.

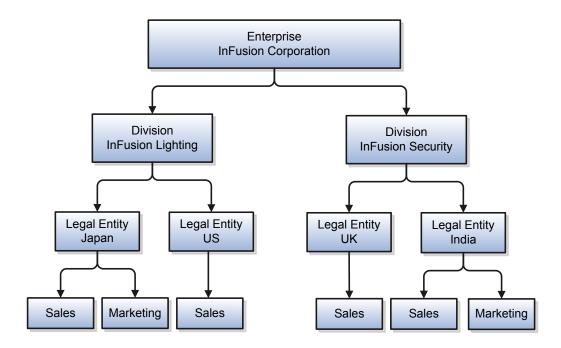
The business units listed by the application are suggestions only, and are meant to simplify the process to create business units. You aren't required to select all of the business units suggested. When you navigate to the next page in the ESC guided flow, the Manage Business Units page, you can't delete any of the business units created automatically. You must return to the Create Business Units page and deselect any business units that you no longer want.

Example: Selecting Business Unit Levels

InFusion Corporation is using the Enterprise Structures Configurator to set up its enterprise structure. InFusion has identified two divisions, one for Lighting, and one for Security. They operate in four countries: US, UK, Japan, and India, and they have created a legal entity for each of the countries. The sales and marketing functions are based in both India and Japan, while the US and the UK have only the sales function.



This figure illustrates InFusion Corporation's enterprise structure.



The following table lists the options for business unit levels and the resulting business units that the application suggests for InFusion Corporation.

Business Unit Level	Suggested Business Units
Country	USUKJapanIndia
Country and Division	 InFusion Lighting: Japan InFusion Lighting: US Infusion Security: UK Infusion Security: India
Country and business function	 Sales: Japan Marketing: Japan Sales: US Sales: UK Marketing: India Sales: India
Division	InFusion LightingInFusion Security
Division and Legal Entity	InFusion Lighting: JapanInFusion Lighting: USInfusion Security: UK



Business Unit Level	Suggested Business Units
	Infusion Security: India
Division and Business Function	 InFusion Lighting, Sales InFusion Lighting, Marketing InFusion Security, Sales InFusion Security, Marketing
Business Function	SalesMarketing
Legal Entity	 Legal Entity: Japan Legal Entity: US Legal Entity: UK Legal Entity India
Legal Entity and Business Function	 Legal Entity: Japan, Sales Legal Entity: Japan, Marketing Legal Entity: US, Sales Legal Entity: UK, Sales Legal Entity India, Marketing Legal Entity India, Sales

Manually Creating Business Units

If none of the levels for creating business units meets your business needs, you can create business units manually, and you create them on the Manage Business Units page. If you create business units manually, then no reference data sets are created automatically. You must create them manually as well.

Reference Data Sets and Sharing Methods: Explained

Oracle Fusion Applications reference data sharing feature is also known as SetID. The reference data sharing functionality supports operations in multiple ledgers, business units, and warehouses. As a result, there is a reduction in the administrative burden and the time to implement new business units. For example, you can share sales methods, or transaction types across business units. You may also share certain other data across asset books, cost organizations, or project units.

The reference data sharing features use reference data sets to which reference data is assigned. The reference data sets group assigned reference data. The sets can be understood as buckets of reference data assigned to multiple business units or other application components.

Reference Data Sets

You begin this part of your implementation by creating and assigning reference data to sets. Make changes carefully as changes to a particular set affect all business units or application components using that set. You can assign a separate set to each business unit for the type of object that is being shared. For example, assign separate sets for payment terms, transaction types, and sales methods to your business units.

Your enterprise can determine that certain aspects of your corporate policy can affect all business units. The remaining aspects are at the discretion of the business unit manager to implement. This allows your enterprise to balance autonomy and control for each business unit. For example, your enterprise holds business unit managers accountable for their profit and



loss, but manages working capital requirements at a corporate level. In such a case, you can let managers define their own sales methods, but define payment terms centrally. In this example:

- Each business unit has its own reference data set for sales methods.
- One central reference data set for payment terms is assigned to all business units.

The reference data sharing is especially valuable for lowering the cost of setting up new business units. For example, your enterprise operates in the hospitality industry. You are adding a new business unit to track your new spa services. The hospitality divisional reference data set can be assigned to the new business unit to quickly set up data for this entity component. You can establish other business unit reference data in a business unit-specific reference data set as needed.

Reference Data Sharing Methods

Variations exist in the methods used to share data in reference data sets across different types of objects. The following list identifies the methods:

- Assignment to one set only, no common values allowed. This method is the simplest form of sharing reference
 data that allows assigning a reference data object instance to one and only one set. For example, Asset Prorate
 Conventions are defined and assigned to only one reference data set. This set can be shared across multiple asset
 books, but all the values are contained only in this one set.
- Assignment to one set only, with common values. This method is the most commonly used method of sharing
 reference data that allows defining reference data object instance across all sets. For example, Receivables
 Transaction Types are assigned to a common set that is available to all the business units. You need not explicitly
 assign the transaction types to each business unit. In addition, you can assign a business unit-specific set of
 transaction types. At transaction entry, the list of values for transaction types includes the following:
 - Transaction types from the set assigned to the business unit.
 - Transaction types assigned to the common set that is shared across all business units.
- Assignment to multiple sets, no common values allowed. The method of sharing reference data that allows a
 reference data object instance to be assigned to multiple sets. For instance, Payables Payment Terms use this
 method. It means that each payment term can be assigned to one or more than one set. For example, you assign
 the payment term Net 30 to several sets, but assign Net 15 to a set specific only to your business unit. At transaction
 entry, the list of values for payment terms consists of only the set that is assigned to the transaction's business unit.
- Note: Oracle Fusion Applications contains a reference data set called Enterprise. Define any reference data that affects your entire enterprise in this set.

Business Units and Reference Data Sets: How They Work Together

Reference data sharing enables you to group set-enabled reference data such as jobs or grades to share the data across different parts of the organization. Sets also enable you to filter reference data at the transaction level so that only data assigned to certain sets is available to be selected. To filter reference data, Oracle Fusion Human Capital Management (HCM), applications use the business unit on the transaction. To set up reference data sharing in Oracle Fusion HCM, you create business units and sets, and then assign the sets to the business units.

Common Set Versus Specific Sets

Some reference data in your organization may be considered global, and should therefore be made available for use within the entire enterprise. You can assign this type of data to the Common Set, which is a predefined set. Regardless of the



business unit on a transaction, reference data assigned to the Common Set is always available, in addition to the reference data assigned to the set that corresponds to the business unit on the transaction.

Other types of reference data can be specific to certain business units, so you can restrict the use of the data to those business units. In this case, you can create sets specifically for this type of data, and assign the sets to the business units.

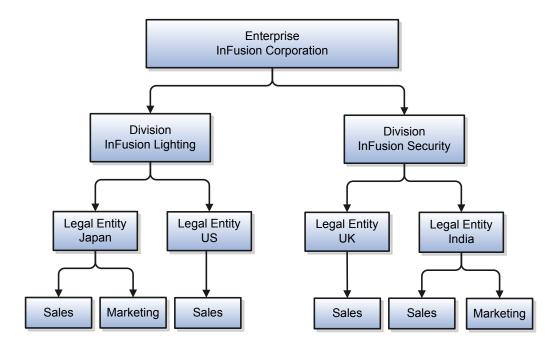
Business Unit Set Assignment

When you assign reference data sets to business units, you assign a default reference data set to use for all reference data types for that business unit. You can override the set assignment for one or more data types.

Example: Assigning Sets to Business Units

InFusion Corporation has two divisions: Lighting and Security, and the divisions each have two locations. Each location has one or more business functions.

The following figure illustrates the structure of InFusion Corporation.



When deciding how to create business units, InFusion decides to create them using the country and business function level. Therefore, they created the following business units:

- Sales Japan
- Marketing Japan
- Sales US
- Sales UK
- Marketing India
- Sales_India

Because locations, departments, and grades are specific to each business unit, InFusion does not want to share these types of reference data across business units. They create a reference data set for each business unit so that data of those types can be set up separately. Because the jobs in the Sales business function are the same across many locations, InFusion



decides to create one additional set called Jobs. They override the set assignment for the Jobs reference data group and assign it to the Jobs set. Based on these requirements, they create the following sets:

- Sales_Japan_Set
- Mktg_Japan_Set
- Sales_US_Set
- Sales_UK_Set
- Mktg_India_Set
- Sales India Set
- Grades_Set

InFusion assigns business units to sets as follows:

Business Unit	Default Set Assignment	Set Assignment Overrides
Sales_Japan	Sales_ Japan_Set for grades, departments, and locations	Jobs set for jobs
Marketing_ Japan	Mktg_Japan_Set for grades, departments, and locations	None
Sales_US	Sales_US_Set for grades, departments, and locations	Jobs set for jobs
Sales_UK	Sales_UK_Set for grades, departments, and locations	Jobs set for jobs
Marketing_ India	Mktg_India_Set for grades, departments, and locations	None
Sales_India	Sales_ India_Set for grades, departments, and locations	Jobs set for jobs

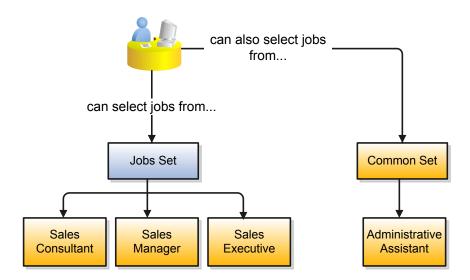
When setting up grades, departments, and locations for the business units, InFusion assigns the data to the default set for each business unit. When setting up jobs, they assign the Jobs set and assign the Common Set to any jobs that may be used throughout the entire organization.

When using grades, departments, and locations at the transaction level, users can select data from the set that corresponds to the business unit they enter on the transaction, and any data assigned to the Common Set. For example, for transactions for the Marketing_Japan business unit, grades, locations, and departments from the Mktg_Japan_Set is available to select, as well as from the Common Set.

When using jobs at the transaction level, users can select jobs from the Jobs set and from the Common Set when they enter a sales business unit on the transaction. For example, when a manager hires an employee for the Sales_India business unit, the list of jobs is filtered to show jobs from the Jobs and Common sets.

The following figure illustrates what sets of jobs can be accessed when a manager creates an assignment for a worker.





Creating Reference Data Sets in the Enterprise Structures Configurator: Explained

If you created business units automatically, then the Enterprise Structures Configurator automatically creates reference data sets for you. The Enterprise Structures Configurator creates one reference data set for each business unit. You can add additional sets, but you cannot delete any of the sets that were created automatically.

A standard set called the Enterprise set is predefined.

Common Set

The Common set is a predefined set that enables you to share reference data across business units. When you select setenabled data at the transaction level, the list of values includes data in the:

- Common set
- Set associated with the data type for the business unit on the transaction

For example, when you create an assignment, the list of values for grades includes grade in the:

- Common set
- Set that is assigned to grades for the business unit in which you creating the assignment

Jobs and Positions: Critical Choices

Jobs and positions represent roles that enable you to distinguish between tasks and the individuals who perform those tasks.

Note the following:

- The key to using jobs or positions depends on how each is used.
- Positions offer a well-defined space independent of the person performing the job.



- Jobs are a space defined by the person.
- A job can be defined globally in the Common Set, whereas a position is defined within one business unit.
- You can update the job and department of a position at any time. For example, if you hire someone into a new role and want to transfer the position to another department.

During implementation, one of the earliest decisions is whether to use jobs or a combination of jobs and positions. The determinants for this decision are:

- The primary industry of your enterprise
- How you manage your people

Primary Industry of Your Enterprise

The following table outlines information about Primary industries and how they set up their workforce.

Primary Industry	Workforce Setup
Mining	Positions
Utilities	Positions
Manufacturing	Positions
Retail Trade	Positions
Transportation and Warehousing	Positions
Educational Services	Positions
Public Transportation	Positions
Agriculture, Forestry, Fishing, and Hunting	Jobs
Construction	Jobs
Wholesale Trade	Jobs
Information	Jobs
Finance and Insurance	Jobs
Professional, Scientific, and Technical Services	Jobs
Management of Companies and Enterprises	Jobs



Primary Industry	Workforce Setup
Administrative and Support and Waste Management and Remediation Services	Jobs
Arts, Entertainment, and Recreation	Jobs
Accommodation and Food Services	Jobs
Other Services (Except Public Administration)	Jobs

Management of People

The following table displays suggestions of whether to use jobs or a combination of jobs and positions based on your industry and how you manage your employee turnover.

Industry	You always replace employees by rehiring to same role	You replace the headcount, but the manager can use the headcount in a different job	You rehire to the same position, but the manager can request a reallocation of budget to a different post
Project (An industry that supports project-based forms of organization in which teams of specialists from both inside and outside the company report to project managers.)	Positions	Jobs	Jobs
Controlled (An industry that is highly structured in which all aspects of work and remuneration are well organized and regulated.)	Positions	Positions	Positions
Manufacturing	Positions	Jobs	Positions
Retail	Positions	Jobs	Positions
Education	Positions	Jobs	Positions
Other	Positions	Jobs	Jobs

Related Topics

• Grades and Grade Rates: How They Work with Jobs, Positions, Assignments, Compensation, and Payroll



Positions: Examples

Positions are typically used by industries that use detailed approval rules, which perform detailed budgeting and maintain headcounts, or have high turnover rates.

Retail Industry

ABC Corporation has high turnovers. It loses approximately 5% of its cashiers monthly. The job of the cashier includes three positions: front line cashier, service desk cashier, and layaway cashier. Each job is cross-trained to take over another cashier's position. When one cashier leaves from any of the positions, another existing cashier from the front line, service desk or layaway can assist where needed. But to ensure short lines and customer satisfaction, ABC Corporation must replace each cashier lost to turnover. Since turnover is high in retail it's better for this industry to use positions.

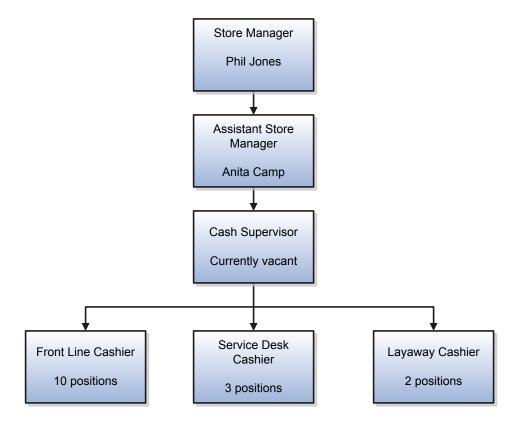
Note the following:

- An automatic vacancy is created when an employee terminates employment.
- The position exists even when there are no holders. Having the position continue to exist is important if the person who leaves the company is a manager or supervisor with direct reports.
- All direct reports continue reporting to the position even if the position is empty.
- You don't have to reassign these employees to another manager or supervisor. The replacement manager is assigned to the existing position.

Also, an added advantage to using Positions is when you hire somebody new, many of the attributes are inherited from the position. This speeds up the hiring process.



This figure illustrates the retail position setup.



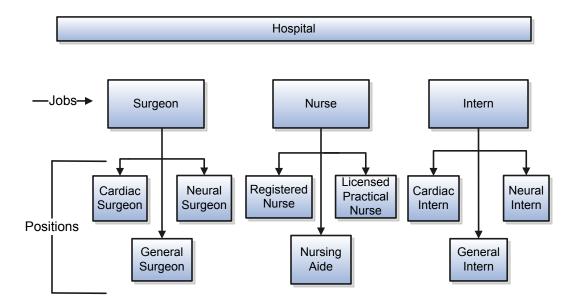
Health Care Industry

Health care is an industry that must regulate employment, roles, and compensation according to strict policies and procedures. Fixed roles tend to endure over time, surviving multiple incumbents. Industries that manage roles rather than individuals, where roles continue to exist after individuals leave, typically model the workforce using positions.

The hospital has a structured headcount and detailed budgeting. For example, a specific number of surgeons, nurses, and interns of various types are needed. These positions must be filled in order for the hospital to run smoothly. Use jobs and positions when you apply detailed headcount rules.



This figure illustrates the hospital position setup.



Jobs: Example

Jobs are typically used without positions by service industries where flexibility and organizational change are key features.

Software Industry

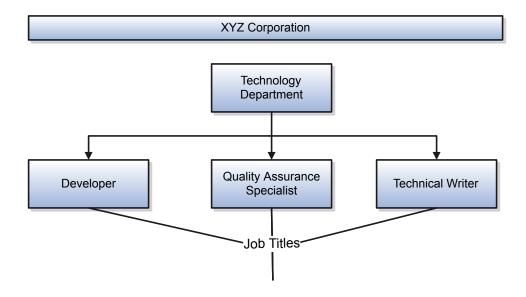
For example, XYZ Corporation has a director over the departments for developers, quality assurance, and technical writers.

- Recently, three developers have left the company.
- The director decides to redirect the head count to other areas.
- Instead of hiring all three back into development, one person is hired to each department, quality assurance, and technical writing.

In software industries, the organization is fluid. Using jobs gives an enterprise the flexibility to determine where to use head count, because the job only exists through the person performing it. In this example, when the three developers leave XYZ Corporation, their jobs no longer exist, therefore the corporation has the flexibility to move the headcount to other areas.



This figure illustrates the software industry job setup.



Job and Position Structures: Explained

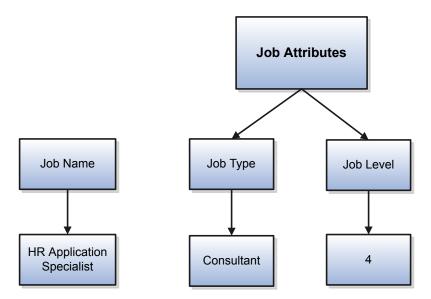
Job and position structures identify the descriptive flexfield structure that enables you to specify additional attributes that you want to capture when you define jobs and positions. Job and position attributes provide further detail to make jobs and positions more specific. You also use attributes to define the structure of your jobs and positions. You can specify attributes at the enterprise level for jobs and positions, at the business unit level for positions, and at the reference data set level for jobs. Job and position structures are optional.

Enterprise-Level Job Attributes

When you define a job, you enter a value for the name of the job. To make job names more specific, set up attributes to identify additional details about the job, such as the nature of the work that is performed or the relative skill level required. If these attributes apply to all jobs within your enterprise, set up enterprise-level job attributes. Standard capabilities mean that you can use the different segments of the name to identify common jobs or job holders for analysis or compensation, or for grouping records in reports, for example, to find all jobs of a specific job type. You should not use attributes with values that change regularly, for example, salary ranges or expense approval levels that change every year.



This figure illustrates how job type and job level provide further details for the HR Application Specialist job.

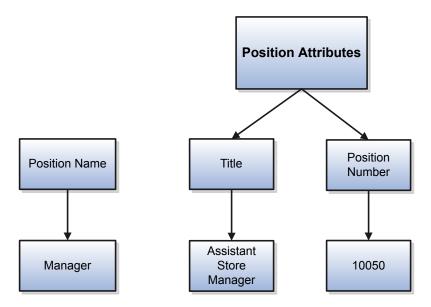


Enterprise-Level Position Attributes

Position attributes at the enterprise level are similar to those for jobs. Each position that you define identifies a specific role in the enterprise, which you can manage independently of the person in the position. A position belongs to one specific department or organization. The name of each position must be unique. To simplify the process of managing unique names for positions, set up enterprise-level attributes to identify separate components of the position name. For example, you can set up an attribute for position title and one for position number. When defining the attributes that make up the structure of a position name, consider whether any of your attributes are part of the definition of a common job type. Using job types for a position can help you manage common information that applies to many different positions. For example you can define a job type of Manager. Level 1 and use this for comparison of positions across departments or lines or business, or for setting common job requirements. You can then define multiple manager type positions in your HR department, each of which has responsibility for a different management function or group.



This figure illustrates how title and position number provide further details for the manager position.



Business Unit-Level Attributes for Positions

If you have information that you want to capture for positions that is specific to each business unit, then you can define attributes at the business unit level for positions. When you create positions, these attributes appear in addition to any enterprise-level attributes. For example, you may want to identify the sales region for all positions in the sales business unit. You can set up a text attribute called Sales Region and use it to enter the necessary information when creating positions for the sales business unit.

Reference Data Set-Level Attributes for Jobs

If you have information for jobs that applies to specific reference data sets, set up attributes for jobs at the reference data set level. When you create jobs, these attributes appear in addition to any enterprise-level attributes. For example, you may want to identify all information technology (IT) jobs within a specific set. You can set up a text attribute called Function and use it to enter IT in jobs that you create that perform an IT function within a specific set.

FAQs for Define Initial Configuration

What happens if I don't use the Enterprise Structures Configurator to set up my enterprise structures?

The Enterprise Structures Configurator is an interview-based tool that guides you through setting up divisions, legal entities, business units, and reference data sets. If you do not use the Enterprise Structures Configurator, then you must set up your enterprise structure using the individual tasks that correspond to each enterprise component. In addition, you can't set up multiple configurations and compare different scenarios. Using the Enterprise Structures Configurator is the recommended process for setting up your enterprise structures.



What's an ultimate holding company?

The legal entity that represents the top level in your organization hierarchy, as defined by the legal name entered for the enterprise. This designation is used only to create an organization tree, with these levels:

- Ultimate holding company as the top level
- · Divisions and country holding companies as the second level
- Legal employers as the third level

What's the default reference data set?

The reference data set that is assigned to a business unit for all reference data groups, such as grades, locations, departments, and jobs. You can override the default reference data set for any reference data group.

What happens if I override the set assignment?

For the selected business unit, you can override the default reference data set for one or more reference data groups. For example, assume you have three reference data groups: Vision 1 SET, Vision 2 SET, and Vision 3 SET, where Vision SET 1 is the default set for business unit United Kingdom Vision 1 BU. You can override the default so that:

- Grades are assigned to Vision 2 SET
- Departments are assigned to Vision 3 SET
- Jobs are assigned to the default set, Vision 3 SET

Define Reference Data Sharing

Reference Data Sharing: Explained

Reference data sharing facilitates sharing of configuration data such as jobs and payment terms, across organizational divisions or business units. You define reference data sets and determine how common data is shared or partitioned across business entities to avoid duplication and reduce maintenance effort. Depending on the requirement (specific or common), each business unit can maintain its data at a central location, using a set of values either specific to it or shared by other business units.

A common reference data set is available as the default set, which can be assigned to several business units sharing the same reference data. For commonly used data such as currencies, you can use the common reference data set and assign it to multiple business units in various countries that use the same currency. In cases where the default set can't be assigned to an entity, you can create specific sets. The data set visible on the transactional page depends on the sharing method used to share reference data.

For example, XYZ Corporation uses the same grades throughout the entire organization. Instead of different business units setting up and using the same grades, XYZ Corporation decides to create a set called Grades, which contains the grades. All business units in the organization have the Grades set so that the grades can be shared and used.

Note: For specific information about configuring reference data sharing for a particular object or product, refer to the relevant product documentation.



Reference Data Sets: Explained

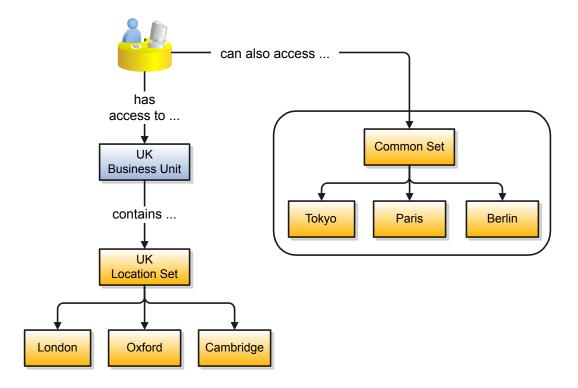
Reference data sets are logical groups of reference data that various transactional entities can use depending on the business context. You can get started using either the common reference data set or the enterprise set depending on your implementation requirement. You can also create and maintain custom reference data sets, while continuing to use the common reference data set.

Consider the following scenario. Your enterprise can decide that only some aspects of corporate policy should affect all business units. The remaining aspects are at the discretion of the business unit manager to implement. This enables your enterprise to balance autonomy and control for each business unit. For example, your enterprise holds business unit managers accountable for their profit and loss, but manages working capital requirements at a corporate level. Then, you can let managers define their own sales methods, but define payment terms centrally. As a result, each business unit has its own reference data set for sales methods and one central reference data set for payment terms assigned to all business units.

Partitioning

Partitioning reference data and creating data sets provide you the flexibility to handle the reference data to fulfill your business requirements. You can share modular information and data processing options among business units with ease. You can create separate sets and subsets for each business unit. Alternatively, you can create common sets or subsets to enable sharing reference data between several business units, without duplicating the reference data.

The following figure illustrates the reference data sharing method (assignment to one set only, with common values). The user can access the data assigned to a specific set in a particular business unit, as well as access the data assigned to the common set.





Related Topics

Defining Default Reference Data Sets: Points to Consider

Reference Data Sets and Sharing Methods: Explained

Oracle Fusion Applications reference data sharing feature is also known as SetID. The reference data sharing functionality supports operations in multiple ledgers, business units, and warehouses. As a result, there is a reduction in the administrative burden and the time to implement new business units. For example, you can share sales methods, or transaction types across business units. You may also share certain other data across asset books, cost organizations, or project units.

The reference data sharing features use reference data sets to which reference data is assigned. The reference data sets group assigned reference data. The sets can be understood as buckets of reference data assigned to multiple business units or other application components.

Reference Data Sets

You begin this part of your implementation by creating and assigning reference data to sets. Make changes carefully as changes to a particular set affect all business units or application components using that set. You can assign a separate set to each business unit for the type of object that is being shared. For example, assign separate sets for payment terms, transaction types, and sales methods to your business units.

Your enterprise can determine that certain aspects of your corporate policy can affect all business units. The remaining aspects are at the discretion of the business unit manager to implement. This allows your enterprise to balance autonomy and control for each business unit. For example, your enterprise holds business unit managers accountable for their profit and loss, but manages working capital requirements at a corporate level. In such a case, you can let managers define their own sales methods, but define payment terms centrally. In this example:

- Each business unit has its own reference data set for sales methods.
- One central reference data set for payment terms is assigned to all business units.

The reference data sharing is especially valuable for lowering the cost of setting up new business units. For example, your enterprise operates in the hospitality industry. You are adding a new business unit to track your new spa services. The hospitality divisional reference data set can be assigned to the new business unit to quickly set up data for this entity component. You can establish other business unit reference data in a business unit-specific reference data set as needed.

Reference Data Sharing Methods

Variations exist in the methods used to share data in reference data sets across different types of objects. The following list identifies the methods:

- Assignment to one set only, no common values allowed. This method is the simplest form of sharing reference
 data that allows assigning a reference data object instance to one and only one set. For example, Asset Prorate
 Conventions are defined and assigned to only one reference data set. This set can be shared across multiple asset
 books, but all the values are contained only in this one set.
- Assignment to one set only, with common values. This method is the most commonly used method of sharing
 reference data that allows defining reference data object instance across all sets. For example, Receivables
 Transaction Types are assigned to a common set that is available to all the business units. You need not explicitly
 assign the transaction types to each business unit. In addition, you can assign a business unit-specific set of
 transaction types. At transaction entry, the list of values for transaction types includes the following:
 - Transaction types from the set assigned to the business unit.



- o Transaction types assigned to the common set that is shared across all business units.
- Assignment to multiple sets, no common values allowed. The method of sharing reference data that allows a
 reference data object instance to be assigned to multiple sets. For instance, Payables Payment Terms use this
 method. It means that each payment term can be assigned to one or more than one set. For example, you assign
 the payment term Net 30 to several sets, but assign Net 15 to a set specific only to your business unit. At transaction
 entry, the list of values for payment terms consists of only the set that is assigned to the transaction's business unit.
- Note: Oracle Fusion Applications contains a reference data set called Enterprise. Define any reference data that affects your entire enterprise in this set.

Assigning Reference Data Sets to Reference Objects: Points to Consider

You can assign the reference data sets to reference objects using the Manage Reference Data Set Assignments page. For multiple assignments, you can classify different types of reference data sets into groups and assign them to the reference entity objects. The assignment takes into consideration the determinant type, determinant, and reference group, if any.

Determinant Types

The partitioned reference data is shared using a business context setting called the determinant type. A determinant type is the point of reference used in the data assignment process. The following table lists the determinant types used in the reference data assignment.

Туре	Description
Asset Book	Information about the acquisition, depreciation, and retirement of an asset that belongs to a ledger or a business unit.
Business Unit	The departments or organizations within an enterprise.
Cost Organization	The organization used for cost accounting and reporting on various inventory and cost centers within an enterprise.
Project Unit	A logical organization within an enterprise that is responsible for enforcing consistent project management practices.
Reference Data Set	References to other shared reference data sets.

Determinant

The determinant (also called determinant value) is a value that corresponds to the selected determinant type. The determinant is one of the criteria for selecting the appropriate reference data set.

Reference Groups

A transactional entity may have multiple reference entities (generally considered to be setup data). However, all reference entities are treated alike because of similarity in implementing business policies and legal rules. Such reference entities in your



application are grouped into logical units called reference groups. For example, all tables and views that define Sales Order Type details might be a part of the same reference group. Reference groups are predefined in the reference groups table.

Items and Supplier Site Reference Data Sharing: Explained

Some products, such as items and supplier sites, required special logic for reference data sharing and have implemented their own domain-specific ways for sharing data.

Items

If you share your items across warehouses or manufacturing facilities, you can access them through a common item master. Configure one or multiple item masters for your enterprise, based your enterprise structure. A single item master is recommended because it provides simpler and more efficient maintenance. However, in rare cases, it may be beneficial to keep multiple item masters. For example, if you acquire another enterprise and want to continue to operate your lines of business separately, maintaining a second item master might be the best decision.

Suppliers Sites

You can approve particular suppliers to supply specified commodities and authorize your business units to buy from those suppliers when the need arises. For example, you might be a household cleaning products manufacturer and need dyes, plastics, and perfumes to make your products. You purchase from a central supplier 70% of your perfume supplies with an additional supplier, in reserve, from whom you purchase the remaining 30%. At the same time, each of your business units purchases plastics and dyes from the same supplier, but from different local supplier sites to save transportation costs.

To implement business unit-specific supplier sites, Oracle Fusion Procurement supports a method for defining suppliers sites as owned and managed by the business unit responsible for negotiating the supplier terms. Your other business units that have a service provider relationship defined with your procurement business unit subscribe to the supplier sites using the supplier site assignments feature. In addition, Procurement allows sharing of the following procurement data objects across business units:

- Supplier qualification data, such as approved supplier lists
- Catalog content, such as agreements, smart forms, public shopping lists, and content zones
- Procurement configuration data

FAQs for Define Reference Data Sharing

What reference data objects can be shared across business units?

The following list contains the reference data objects for the Oracle Fusion Applications that can be shared across business units and the method in which the reference data for each is shared.

Application Name	Reference Data Object	Method of Sharing
Trading Community Model	Customer Account Relationship	Assignment to one set only, no common values allowed
Trading Community Model	Customer Account Site	Assignment to one set only, no common values allowed



Application Name	Reference Data Object	Method of Sharing
Trading Community Model	Salesperson	Assignment to one set only, no common values allowed
Opportunity Management	Sales Method Group	Assignment to one set only, with common values
Work Management	Assessment Templates	Assignment to one set only, with common values
Enterprise Contracts	Contract Types	Assignment to one set only, with common values
Sales	Sales Method	Assignment to one set only, with common values
Common Components	Activity Templates	Assignment to one set only, with common values
Payables	Payment Terms	Assignment to multiple sets, no common values allowed
Receivables	Accounting Rules	Assignment to one set only, with common values
Receivables	Aging Buckets	Assignment to one set only, with common values
Receivables	Auto Cash Rules	Assignment to one set only, with common values
Receivables	Collectors	Assignment to one set only, with common values
Receivables	Lockbox	Assignment to one set only, with common values
Receivables	Memo Lines	Assignment to one set only, with common values
Receivables	Payment Terms	Assignment to one set only, with common values
Receivables	Remit To Address	Assignment to one set only, with common values
Receivables	Revenue Contingencies	Assignment to one set only, with common values



Application Name	Reference Data Object	Method of Sharing
Receivables	Transaction Source	Assignment to one set only, with common values
Receivables	Transaction Type	Assignment to one set only, with common values
Advanced Collections	Collections Setups	Assignment to one set only, with common values
Advanced Collections	Dunning Plans	Assignment to one set only, with common values
Tax	Tax Classification Codes	Assignment to multiple sets, no common values allowed
Human Resources	Departments	Assignment to one set only, with common values
Human Resources	Jobs	Assignment to one set only, with common values
Human Resources	Locations	Assignment to one set only, with common values
Human Resources	Grades	Assignment to one set only, with common values
Project Billing	Project and Contract Billing	Assignment to multiple sets, no common values allowed
Project Foundation	Project Accounting Definition	Assignment to one set only, no common values allowed
Project Foundation	Project Rates	Assignment to one set only, with common values
Order Management	Hold Codes	Assignment to one set only, with common values
Order Management	Orchestration Process	Assignment to one set only, with common values

What reference data objects can be shared across asset books?

The following list contains the reference data objects for Oracle Fusion Assets that can be shared across asset books and the method in which the reference data for each is shared.



Application Name	Reference Data Object	Method of Sharing
Assets	Bonus Rules	Assignment to one set only, no common values allowed
Assets	Depreciation Ceilings	Assignment to one set only, no common values allowed
Assets	Depreciation Methods	Assignment to one set only, with common values
Assets	Asset Descriptions	Assignment to one set only, no common values allowed
Assets	Property Types	Assignment to one set only, with common values
Assets	Prorate Conventions	Assignment to one set only, no common values allowed
Assets	Asset Queue Names	Assignment to one set only, with common values
Assets	Retirement Types	Assignment to one set only, with common values
Assets	Unplanned Types	Assignment to one set only, with common values

What reference data objects can be shared across cost organizations?

The following list contains the reference data objects for Oracle Fusion Cost Management that can be shared across cost organizations and the method in which the reference data for each is shared.

Application Name	Reference Data Object	Method of Sharing
Cost Management	Cost Structure	Assignment to one set only, no common values allowed

What reference data objects can be shared across project units?

The following table contains the reference data objects for Oracle Fusion Project Foundation that can be shared across project units and the method in which the reference data for each is shared.

Application Name	Reference Data Object	Method of Sharing
Project Foundation	Project Definition	Assignment to multiple sets, no common values allowed



Application Name	Reference Data Object	Method of Sharing
Project Foundation	Project Transaction Types	Assignment to multiple sets, no common values allowed

Define Enterprise: Manage Enterprise HCM Information

Enterprise: Explained

An enterprise is a collection of legal entities under common control and management.

Enterprise Defined

When implementing Oracle Fusion Applications you operate within the context of an enterprise that has already been created in the application for you. This is either a predefined enterprise or an enterprise that has been created in the application by a system administrator. An enterprise organization captures the name of the deploying enterprise and the location of the headquarters. In Oracle Fusion Applications, an organization classified as an enterprise is defined before defining any other organizations in the HCM Common Organization Model. All other organizations are defined as belonging to an enterprise.

Managing Enterprise Information for Non-HCM Users: Explained

The Manage Enterprise HCM Information task includes default settings for your enterprise such as the employment model, worker number generation, and so on. If you are not implementing Oracle Fusion Human Capital Management (HCM), then the only action you may need to perform using this task is to change the enterprise name, if necessary. The other settings are HCM-specific and are not relevant outside of Oracle Fusion HCM.

Define Enterprise: Manage Locations

Locations: Explained

A location identifies physical addresses of a workforce structure, such as a department or a job. You create and manage locations using the Manage Locations task in the Workforce Structures work area.

You can also create locations to enter the addresses of external organizations that you want to maintain, such as employment agencies, tax authorities, and insurance or benefits carriers.

The locations that you create exist as separate structures that you can use for reporting purposes, and in rules that determine employee eligibility for various types of compensation and benefits. You enter information about a location only once. Subsequently, when you set up other workforce structures you select the location from a list.



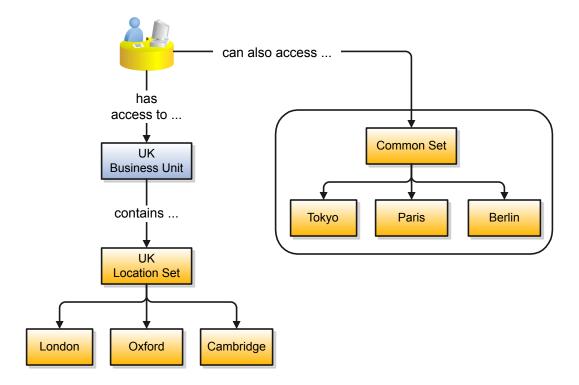
Location Sets

When you create a location, you must associate it with a set. Only those users who have access to the set's business unit can access the location set and other associated workforce structure sets, such as those that contain departments and jobs.

Note the following:

- You can also associate the location to the common set so that users across your enterprise can access the location irrespective of their business unit.
- When users search for locations, they can see the locations that they have access to along with the locations in the common set.

The following figure shows how locations sets restrict access to users.



Uploading Locations Using a Spreadsheet

If you have a list of locations already defined for your enterprise, you can upload them from a spreadsheet.

To use this option:

- Download a spreadsheet template
- Add your location information to the spreadsheet
- Upload directly to your enterprise configuration

You can upload the spreadsheet multiple times to accommodate revisions.



Related Topics

Uploading Workforce Structures Using a Spreadsheet: Explained

FAQs for Manage Locations

Why can't I see my location in the search results?

You can search for approved locations only. Also, if you created a location in Oracle Fusion Trading Community Model, then you can't access that location from Oracle Fusion Global Human Resources. For use in Oracle Fusion HCM, you must recreate the location from the Manage Locations page.

What happens if I select a geographic hierarchy node when I'm creating or editing a location?

The calendar events that you created for the geographic node start to apply for the location and may impact the availability of worker assignments at that location. You manage locations using the Manage Locations task in the Workforce Structures work area.

The geographical hierarchy nodes available for selection on the Locations page display from a predefined geographic hierarchy.

Related Topics

• Worker Availability: How It Is Determined

What happens if I select an inventory organization when I am creating or editing a location?

The location is available for selection in purchase documents of that inventory organization in Oracle Fusion Inventory Management. If you don't select an inventory organization, then the location is available in purchase documents across all inventory organizations.

What happens if I inactivate a location?

Starting from the effective date that you entered, you can no longer associate the location with other workforce structures, assignments, or applications. If the location is already in use, it will continue to be available to the components that currently use it.

How can I associate a location with an inventory organization?

From the Oracle Fusion Global Human Resources, go to the Manage Locations page. Use the Manage Locations task in the Workforce Structures work area.

To appear on the Create or Edit Location pages, your inventory organization must be effective on today's date and must exist in the location set that you selected.

Define Geographies



Geography Structure, Hierarchy, and Validation: How They Fit Together

There are three components that are dependent on each other when defining a country: geography structure, geography hierarchy, and geography validation. Every country has to have the geography structure defined first before the hierarchy can be defined, and the geography hierarchy has to be defined before the validation can be defined.

Geography Structure

Firstly, you need to create a geography structure for each country to define which geography types are part of the country structure, and how the geography types are hierarchically related within the country structure. For example, you can create geography types called State, City, and Postal Code. Then you can rank the State geography type as the highest level within the country, the City as the second level, and the Postal Code as the lowest level within the country structure. Geography structure can be defined using the **Manage Geographies** task, or can be imported using tasks in the **Define Geographies** activity.

Geography Hierarchy

Once the geography structure is defined, the geographies for each geography type can be added to the hierarchy. For example, below the United States you can create a geography called California using a State geography type.

As part of managing the geography hierarchy you can view, create, edit, and delete the geographies for each geography type in the country structure. You can also add a primary and alternate name and code for each geography. A geography hierarchy can be created using the **Manage Geographies** task, or can be imported using tasks in the **Define Geographies** activity.

Geography Validation

After defining the geography hierarchy, you need to specify the geography validations for the country. You can choose which address style formats you would like to use for the country, and for each selected address style format you can map geography types to address attributes. You can also select which geography types should be included in geography or tax validation, and which geography types will display in a list of values during address entry in other user interfaces. The geography validation level for the country, such as error or warning, can also be selected.

Geography Structures: Explained

This topic describes geography structures and the tasks you can perform using geography structures.

A geography structure is a hierarchical grouping of geography types for a country. For example, the geography structure for the United States is as follows:

Level	Geography Type
1	State
2	County
3	City



Level	Geography Type
4	Postal Code

You can use the geography structure to relate geography types for a country and define geography types for a country.

Relate Geography Types for a Country

You can determine how a country's geographies are hierarchically related by creating the hierarchy of the geography types in the geography structure. When you define a country's structure, the geography type Country is implicitly at the top of the geography structure with the level 1. The subsequent geography types that you add after country are numbered in sequence.

You must add a geography type as a level in the country structure before you can define a geography for that geography type in a country. For example, before defining the state of California, the State geography type must be added to the United States country structure. To quickly create country structure, you can copy a structure from another country and modify the geography types for the country.

Define Geography Types for a Country

You can use any of the master reference geography types to create your geography structure. If required, you can create a geography type, before adding it to the country structure. Each geography type is added below the current lowest level.

Note: You cannot delete geography types that have associated geography data. You can only delete the lowest level geography type of the country structure.

A geography type that you create within the country structure can be used for other country structures as well.

Geography Hierarchy: Explained

This topic describes geography hierarchy and various aspects of geography hierarchy.

Geography hierarchy is a data model that creates conceptual parent-child relationships between geographies. The top level of the geography hierarchy is country, which is the parent, and the hierarchy contains several child geographies. The following table shows sample parent-child relationships in a geography.

California	Parent of San Mateo county
San Mateo County	Parent of Redwood City
Redwood City	Parent of 94065
94065	Child

When you enter just 94065, the application determines that the postal code is in California and the corresponding city is Redwood City.

The application uses geography hierarchy information to facilitate business processes that rely on geography information, such as, tax calculation, order sourcing rules, and sales territory definition. The geography hierarchy information is centrally located and shared among other application offerings.



The geography hierarchy includes:

- Geography: Geography is a physical space with boundaries that is a defined instance of a geography type, such as country, state, province or city. For example, San Jose is a geography of the City geography type.
- Geography type: Geography types are divisional grouping of user defined geographies, for example, Continent, Country Regions, and Tax Regions.
- Geography usage: Geography usage indicates how a geography type or geography is used in the application.
- Master reference geography hierarchy: The geography hierarchy data is considered the single source of reference for all geography related data such as geography types and geographies.
 - The geography usage for the entire hierarchy is the master reference, and defined geography types and geographies are the master reference geography types and geographies. For example, you can create geography types called State, City, and Postal Code. Then, you can rank the State as the highest level, City as the second level, and Postal Code as the lowest level within the country structure.
- User defined zones: User defined zones are a collection of geographical data, created from master reference data for a specific purpose. For example, while the territory zones are collections of master reference geographies ordered with a hierarchy, the tax and shipping zones are without a hierarchical grouping.

Geography Validation: Explained

Geography validation determines the geography mapping and validation for a country's address styles, as well as the overall geography validation control for a country.

The **No Styles Format** address style format is the default address style format for a country. By defining the mapping and validation for this format you will ensure that validations can be performed for any address in the country. After the **No Styles Format** is defined you can set up additional mapping for specific address styles.

For each address style format, you can define the following:

- Map to attribute
- Enable list of values
- Tax validation
- Geography validation
- · Geography validation control

Map to Attribute

For every address style format, you can map each geography type to an address attribute. For example, you can map the **State** geography type to the **State** address attribute for the United States, or map the **State** geography type to the **County** address attribute for the United Kingdom. The geography types that appear are based on how the country structure is defined. The list of address attributes that appear are based on address formats delivered with the application, or your customer defined address formats.

Note: You only need to map geography types that you want to use for geography or tax validation purposes.

Enable List of Values

Once a geography type is mapped to an attribute, then you can specify whether the geography type will appear in a list of values during address entry in user interfaces. It is very important to review carefully if you want to enable a list of values. You should only enable a list of values if you have sufficient geography data imported or created for that geography. If the setup



for master geography data is incomplete, then the geography data is either not imported or created. As a result, the list of values for the address attribute does not list any geography data.

Once you have enabled a list of values for an address attribute, you can only select the geography data available for the geography type. This means that if a specific geography value is not available in the geography hierarchy, you cannot create an address with a different geography value.

Tax Validation

You can also specify whether a geography type will be included in tax validation. For example, for the United States North America address style format you specify that County, State, and City are used for tax validation. This will mean that when a transaction involves an address with the North America address style, the address must have the correct county, state, and city combination based on the geography hierarchy data, to be considered valid for tax calculation.

Geography Validation

You can specify whether a geography type will be included in geography validation. This will mean that, for example, when the user enters a United States address using the North America address style format, the address must have the correct country, state, and postal code combination based on geography hierarchy data to be considered geographically valid.

If an address element is mapped to a geography type, but not selected for geography validation usage, then during address entry suggested values will be provided for the address element, but the address element will not be validated.

Note: For either the tax or geography validation, do not skip more than one consecutive level unless you are certain that the selected geography types can uniquely identify geographies. For example, the United States country structure is: State, County, City, and Postal Code, and you want to select just State and Postal Code for geography or tax validation. However, for the combination of California and 94065, the city can be either Redwood Shores or Redwood City. In this case, you should also select at least the City geography type for geography or tax validation.

Geography Validation Control

You can select the geography validation level for a country. Validation will check if the entered address maps to the geography hierarchy data available for the country, and the geography validation control determines whether you can save an address that did not pass validation during address entry. For example, if the validation level is **Error**, then an address cannot be saved if the values do not match the geography hierarchy data.

These are the geography validation levels you can choose:

- Error only completely valid addresses can be saved, with all mandatory address elements entered.
- No Validation all addresses can be saved including incomplete and invalid addresses.

Regardless of the result of validation, the validation process will try to map any address attribute to a geography of the country, and store any mapping it could establish based on the available data. This is called **Geography Name Referencing** and it is executed as part of validation. The result of this referencing is used in several business processes in the application to map an address to a specific geography or zone.

The Geography Dimension value in territories is derived from sell-to addresses of sales accounts. To use geography dimensions in territories, you must validate the geography elements in the addresses, such as state, city, and postal code. You can validate the address by enabling geography validation for each country using the Manage Geographies task. Perform the following in the Manage Geographies task:

- Enable at least one level in the geography hierarchy for geography validation.
- Enable geography validation for all geography levels that you intend to use for territory definition for each country.



• If needed, enable a list of values containing specific geography elements. This will help users search and select appropriate geography values during addresses entry and eliminate all possibilities of wrong address entry.

You can set geography validation control to Error in the Manage Geography Validation page. This ensures that users can only use valid geography elements in addresses.

Note: If you have already created addresses before setting up geography validation for a country, you must enabling geography validation and then execute the Run Maintain Geography Name Referencing task for that country. This validates all your geography elements.

Managing Geography Structures, Hierarchies, and Validation: Worked Example

This example shows how to configure the geography structure, hierarchy, and validation for a country geography, using the United Kingdom country geography as an illustration.

The following table summarizes the key decisions for this scenario.

Decisions to Consider	In This Example
Copy an existing country structure?	No, create a new country structure.
What is the structure of the geography types?	Create geography types with the following ranking structure:
	1. County
	2. Post Town
What is the geography hierarchy?	Create the following hierarchy:
	1. Country of United Kingdom
	2. County of Berkshire
	3. Post Town of Reading
Which address style format will you use when mapping geography validations?	The default address style format, called the No Styles Format.
Are you using Oracle Fusion Tax for tax purposes?	No, do not select Tax Validation for the geography types.

Defining the Geography Structure

Add the County and Post Town geography types to the United Kingdom geography structure.

- 1. On the Manage Geographies page, enter GB in the Code field. Click Search.
- 2. On the Manage Geographies page, click **Structure Defined**.
- 3. On the Manage Geography Structure page, click the **Create** button next to the **Copy Country Structure From** field.
- 4. In the Geography Structure section, select the County list item in the **Add Geography Type** field.
- 5. Click Add.
- **6.** Select the Post Town list item in the **Add Geography Type** field.



7. Click Add.

Defining the Geography Hierarchy

To create the geography hierarchy for United Kingdom, add the geographies for the County and Post Town geography types using the geography hierarchy user interfaces. You can also use the Manage File Import Activities task to import geography hierarchies using a .csv or xml file.

- 1. On the Manage Geographies page, enter GB in the Code field. Click Search.
- 2. On the Manage Geographies page, click Hierarchy Defined.
- 3. In the Geography Hierarchy section, click United Kingdom to highlight the table row, and click Create.
- 4. In the Create County page, Primary and Alternate Names section, enter Berkshire in the Name field.
- 5. Click Save and Close.
- 6. In the Geography Hierarchy section, click Berkshire to highlight the table row, and click Create.
- 7. In the **Create Post Town** page, Primary and Alternate Names section, enter Reading in the **Name** field.
- 8. Click Save and Close.

Defining the Geography Validations

To specify the geography validations for the geography types you added to United Kingdom, define the geography mapping and validation for the United Kingdom default address style format. Then, map the geography types to attributes, enable the geography types for Lists of Values and Geography Validation, and set the geography validation level.

- 1. On the Manage Geographies page, click Validation Defined.
- 2. In the Address Style section, click **No Styles Format** to highlight the table row.
- 3. For the County geography type, click the County list item in the Map to Attribute field.
- 4. Select the Enable List of Values and Geography Validation options.
- 5. For the Post Town geography type, click the City list item in the Map to Attribute field.
- 6. Select the Geography Validation option.
- 7. In the Geography Validation Control section, select Error in the Geography Validation Level for Country list.
- 8. Click Save and Close.

Geocoding: Explained

This topic explains geocoding and how to enable this option in the application.

Geocoding is the process of finding latitude and longitude coordinates from geographic data such as street addresses or zip codes. Once these coordinates are available, you can use the spatial services feature to identify points of interest, such as customer and contact addresses, in the vicinity. The application integrates the Geocoding feature with eLocation (http://elocation.oracle.com/maps_oracle_dot_com_main.html), which is a Geocoding service provided by Oracle.

By default, the Geocoding option is turned off in the application. You can enable the Geocoding option in the **Setup and Maintenance, Manage Geographies** page.

If the Geocoding feature is enabled, the feature can be scheduled to run at regular time intervals. This ensures that newly created or updated locations are picked up and geocoded whenever you create or update an address using the user interface, web services, bulk import, or file-based import.

Related Topics

What are Spatial Services?



Setting Up Geocoding: Procedure

This procedure lists the steps to set up geocoding in Oracle applications.

Geocoding is a process that determines the latitude and longitude coordinates for a location. By default, geocoding is turned off in the application. You can use geocoding to display customers in the vicinity of a mobile address.

Enabling Geocoding for a Country

To enable geocoding for a country, complete these steps:

- 1. From the Setup and Maintenance work area, search for Manage Geographies and click Go to Task.
- Search the country for which you want to enable geocoding. You can either search by the country name or country code.
- 3. Click **Search**. The search results for the matching country names are displayed.
- 4. Select the country for which you want to enable the geocoding option.
- **5.** Select **Geocoding Defined** for the country.

Populating Location Latitude and Longitude Information

Once geocoding is enabled, you can schedule this feature to run at regular time intervals so that newly created or updated locations are picked up and geocoded. To schedule the geocoding feature to run at regular intervals, complete these steps:

- 1. Navigate to the Scheduled Processes work area, and click Schedule New Process.
- 2. Click the Name drop-down and search for Populate Location Latitude and Longitude Information, and then click **OK**.
- 3. Enter the parameters such as Start Date and End Date, and click **Submit**.

Importing Geographies: Explained

A geography, such as Tokyo or Peru, describes a boundary on the surface of the earth. You can create new geographies by importing data through interface tables. There are two options for populating the interface tables: using the tool of your preference to load the data or using file-based data import. If you plan to provide the data details in a source file, use the file-based import feature. If you will populate the interface table directly, run the geography loader process to import the data. Having a good understanding of the import entity, interface table, and destination table will help you prepare your import data.

Consider the following when importing geographies:

- Nokia geography reference data
- File-based import option
- Geography loader process option
- Import object entity, interface table, and destination tables

Nokia Geography Reference Data

Oracle Sales Cloud includes third-party (Nokia) master geography data for multiple countries that can be easily imported. You can import Oracle-licensed Nokia data from Navteq, for those countries where the data is available, such as the U.S. You can import Nokia Geography data using the **Manage Geographies** task. Search for the country, and select **Import Nokia Data** from the **Actions** menu. If the licensed Navteq data is not available for a particular country, then the **Import Nokia Data** action is disabled.



File-Based Import Option

The file-based import process reads the data included in your XML or text file, populates the interface tables, and imports the data into the application destination tables. The **File-Based Data Import Setup and Maintenance** task list includes the tasks needed to configure the geography import object, create source file mappings, and schedule the import activities.

Geography Loader Process Option

Populate the interface table with your import data, then navigate to the **Run Geography Loader Setup and Maintenance** task to schedule the import of data from the interface table to the destination table.

Import Object Entity, Interface Table, and Destination Tables

The geography import object consists of one entity and interface table that forms the geography. If you are using file-based import, you can map your source file data to import entity attributes that correspond to the interface table columns. The import activity process populates the interface table based on the mapping and your source file. If using the geography loader scheduled process, populate the interface table directly using your preferred tool. If you need the unique IDs of existing application data for your import data, use the **Define Data Export Setup and Maintenance** task list to export the information.

The following lists the object entity, tables, and resulting application object:

File-Based Import Entities	Interface Tables	Destination Tables	Application Object
ImpGeography	HZ_IMP_GEOGRAPHIES_T	HZ_GEOGRAPHIES	Geography
		HZ_ GEOGRAPHY_ IDENTIFIERS	
		HZ_ GEOGRAPHY_ TYPES_B	
		HZ_ HIERARCHY_ NODES	

Nokia Geography Reference Data: Explained

Oracle Sales Cloud includes third-party Nokia master geography data that is available for import for the following countries.

	Country Name	Country Code
1.	Andorra	AD
2.	Argentina	AR
3.	Austria	AT
4.	Belgium	BE
5.	Brazil	BR
6.	Bulgaria	BG



	Country Name	Country Code
7.	Canada	CA
8.	Cayman Island	КҮ
9.	Chile	CL
10.	Croatia	HR
11.	Czech Republic	CZ
12.	Denmark	DK
13.	Dominican Republic	DO
14.	Estonia	EE
15.	Finland	FI
16.	France	FR
17.	Germany	DE
18.	Greece	GR
19.	Guadeloupe	GP
20.	Hungary	HU
21.	Iceland	IS
22.	India	IN
23.	Indonesia	ID
24.	Ireland	IE
25.	Isle of Man	IM
26.	Israel	IL
27.	Italy	ІТ
28.	Jamaica	JM



	Country Name	Country Code
29.	Latvia	LV
30.	Liechtenstein	Ц
31.	Lithuania	LT
32.	Luxembourg	LU
33.	Malaysia	MY
34.	Malta	MT
35.	Martinique	MQ
36.	Mexico	MX
37.	Netherlands	NL
38.	New Zealand	NZ
39.	Norway	NO
40.	Peru	PE
41.	Poland	PL
42.	Portugal	PT
43.	Puerto Rico	PR
44.	Reunion Island	RE
45.	Romania	RO
46.	Russian Federation (Russia)	RU
47.	San Marino	SM
48.	Slovakia	SK
49.	Slovenia	SI
50.	South Africa	ZA



	Country Name	Country Code
51.	Spain	ES
52.	Swaziland	SZ
53.	Sweden	SE
54.	Switzerland	CH
55.	Taiwan	TW
56.	Turkey	TR
57.	United Kingdom	GB
58.	United States	US
59.	Uruguay	UY
60.	Holy See (Vatican City State)	VA

Replacing Existing Master Geography Data with Revised Nokia Geography Data: Procedure

You must import and set up reference geography data for the countries where you do business. Using the Nokia geography reference data, you no longer have to source geography data from a third party. You can import Oracle-licensed Nokia data from NAVTEQ, including the country structure and hierarchy information, either to create a new geography setup or replace your existing geography data.

This topic describes the steps to replace your existing master geography data with the revised Nokia geography data.

Creating an Export File of All Territories

You must export all territories before deleting the master geography data because removing the master geography data invalidates the territory definitions that are based on the Geography dimension. You can either export the definitions of all territories to a file or make manual corrections. If there are a large number of territories, export the territories definition to a file that can be used during the territories import process. However, if there are very few affected territories, then you can choose to either export the territories definition to a file or make corrections manually.

This procedure is applicable only if there are territories defined using the Geography dimension.

Perform the following steps to create an export file of all territories.

- 1. From the Territories and Quotas work area, click **View Active Territories** in the Tasks pane.
- 2. In the View Active Territories page, select the top territory.
- 3. Click the Actions drop-down list, and select Export, and then Export Selected Territory Hierarchy.
- 4. In the Warning dialog box, click **OK**.



- 5. Click the **Actions** drop-down list and select **Export**, and then **View Export** Status.
- 6. Review the status of the export job and verify if it has completed successfully.
- 7. In the Exported Data File column, click the .zip file against your export job, and click **Save**. All the territories are exported to a compressed file on your system.
- 8. Click OK.
- 9. Click **Done** in the View Active Territories page.

Deleting the Territory Geography Data

A territory definition has references to the territory geography data and master geography data. Since territory geography data is based on the master geography data, you must delete the territory geography data prior to deleting the master geography data. When you delete the territory geography data, all territories that are defined using geography dimension become invalid.

This procedure is applicable only if territory geographies are defined.

Perform the following steps to delete the territory geography data.

- 1. From the Setup and Maintenance work area, search for Manage Territory Geographies and click Go to Task.
- 2. In the Manage Territory Geographies page, click **View All Hierarchies**.
- 3. Select the top node for the country for which you want to replace the master geography data and click the **Delete** icon.
- 4. In the Warning dialog box, click **OK**.
- 5. In the Confirmation dialog box, click **OK**. The parent node of the territory geography data and its children are deleted
- 6. Repeat steps 3 to 5 to delete all top nodes in the territory geography data.
- 7. Click Save and Close.

Although the territory geography data is deleted, the territory definitions may appear to remain valid. This is because the Territory Management application retains a copy of the dimension members referenced in the territory definitions. This copy is updated when you trigger the **Load and Activate** process from the **Enable Dimensions and Metrics** task.

Deleting the Master Geography Data

To delete the master geography data for a country, you must create a support request with proper justification. Note that when the master geography data is deleted, the geography and its children are deleted and all the related territory, tax, and shipping zone references become invalid. So you must take backup of these before deleting the master geography data.

Importing Nokia Geography Reference Data

Use this procedure to import Nokia geography reference data licensed by Oracle. If the country data you want to import is not available, then the Import Nokia Data action is disabled.

The geography data is provided by Nokia and is third-party content. As per Oracle policy, this software and documentation may provide access to or information about content and services from third parties. Oracle and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content and services. Oracle and its affiliates are not responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services.

Perform the following steps to import Nokia geography reference data. Currently, the revised Nokia geography reference data is available only for US at this time.

- 1. From the Setup and Maintenance work area, search for **Manage Geographies**, and click **Go to Task**.
- 2. In the Manage Geographies page, enter either the country name or the two-letter ISO code (for example, US), and click **Search**.
- 3. Select the country in the search results.
- 4. Click the Actions drop-down list, and select Import Nokia Data.
- 5. In the Warning dialog box, click **OK**.



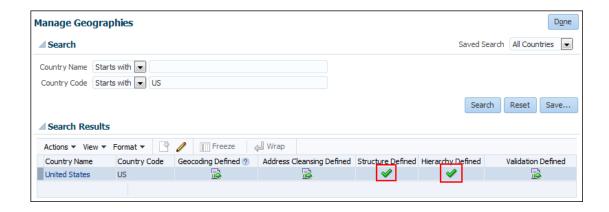
6. In the Confirmation dialog box, click **OK**.

The import of larger countries may require several hours to complete.

You can track the progress of the import process by selecting **Scheduled Processes** from the Navigator menu.

Note: To access the Scheduled Processes work area, you must be signed in as a user with the Employee abstract role. The initial user does not have this role assigned, but the other users you created do.

After the import is complete, you can search for the country again in the Manage Geographies page. Check marks now appear in the **Structure Defined** and **Hierarchy Defined** columns indicating the import completed successfully.



Next, click the **Validation Defined** icon to define the validations, enable List of Values, and choose address style format for a country as set up before. For more information, see the "Geography Validation: Explained" topic.

The **Geocoding Defined** and **Address Cleansing Defined** columns are used for additional features which you must license from Oracle and set up separately.

- Geocoding makes it possible to display customers in the vicinity of a mobile address. You set up **Geocoding** Enabled for those countries where you are using Around Me functionality in Sales Cloud Mobile.
- Cleansing makes it possible to validate addresses down to the street level.

Running the Geography Name Referencing Process

The Geography Name Referencing (GNR) process validates address elements in location tables, such as HZ_LOCATIONS, against the master geography data.

Perform the following steps to run the GNR process.

- 1. Navigate to the Scheduled Processes work area, and click Schedule New Process.
- Click the Name drop-down list and search for Validate Geographies Against Master Geographies, and then click OK.
- 3. Click **OK** in the Schedule New Process dialog box.
- 4. In the Process Details dialog box, enter the following details:
 - Location Table Name: HZ LOCATIONS
 - Run Type: ALL
 - Usage Code: GEOGRAPHY
- **5.** Enter the country code in the Country Code field.



- 6. Click Submit.
- 7. In the Confirmation dialog box, click **OK**.
- 8. Click Close.
- 9. In the Scheduled Processes page, click the **Refresh** icon.
- 10. Verify if the status of the process has completed successfully.

Recreating and Loading the Territory Geography Data

You can recreate the territory geography data, after the master geography data is imported, using either of the following methods:

- Import process: If you created the original territory geography data using the import process, then use the same
 import file to recreate the territory geography structure.
 For more information about importing the territory geography data using the import file, see "Importing Territory
 Geography Hierarchies Using File-Based Data Import: Quick Start" in the Oracle Sales Cloud Understanding FileBased Data Import and Export guide.
- Manual creation process: You can manually recreate the territory geography data structures, as they existed before
 their deletion, using the Manage Territory Geographies task.
 For more information about creating zones and adding geographies to a zone, see "Managing Territory Geographies:
 Worked Example" topic.

After you have recreated the territory geography data, perform the following steps to load the data.

- 1. From the Setup and Maintenance work area, search for Enable Dimensions and Metrics, and click Go to Task.
- In the Enable Dimensions and Metrics page, click the Actions drop-down list, and select Load and Activate.
 The process loads the territory geography data to make dimension members available for selection when defining territories.
- 3. In the Confirmation dialog box, click **OK**.
- 4. Click Done.

Restoring the Invalid Territory Definitions

After recreating the territory geography hierarchies and running the Load and Activate option from the **Enable Dimensions** and **Metrics** task, the geography dimensions are populated with the new geography members. The geography members in the territory appear as invalid because your territories still reference the old copies of the dimension members that were deleted. The new members are not referenced automatically by the territories. You must re-reference the territory definitions from the old geography dimension members to the new ones.

You can restore the invalid territory definitions by either importing the previously created export file or making manual corrections to the territories.

- Restoring Valid Territory Definitions Using Territories Import
 - **a.** Open the export file you saved in the "Creating an Export File of All Territories" step. The compressed file contains four CSV files.
 - **b.** Open **TERR HEADER.CSV** file.
 - c. Enter **REPLACE** in the Action column for all territories that are based on geography dimension.
 - d. Save the file in CSV format and compress it together with three other CSV files.
 - e. From the Territories and Quotas work area, click **View Active Territories** in the Tasks pane.
 - f. Click the Actions drop-down list, and select Import to Proposal, and then Import Territories.
 - g. Select the newly created compressed file and click **OK**.
 - h. Click the Actions drop-down list and select Import to Proposal, and then View Import Status.
 - i. Review the status of the export job and verify if it has completed successfully.



- j. Click OK.
- k. From the Tasks pane, click Manage Territory Proposals.
- I. In the Manage Territory Proposals page, under Current Territory Proposals table, search for the proposal with your import file name.
- m. Click the import file name to open the territory proposal.
- **n.** Click **Edit Coverage** to verify that the territory definitions are valid.
- o. Verify that there are no values listed as invalid in the Selected Dimension Members section.
- p. Click Save and Close.
- q. Click **Activate**. The territory proposal of your import file is activated.
- Restoring Valid Territory Definitions through Manual Corrections

Although this method is always applicable, it is most appropriate when you have to restore territory definitions for a smaller number of territories.

- a. From the Territories and Quotas work area, click **Manage Territory Proposals** in the Tasks pane.
- **b.** In the Manage Territory Proposals page, click the **Create** icon.
- c. In the Create Territory Proposals dialog box, enter a name and click **Save and View**.
- **d.** In the Territory Proposals page, add all the territories with the Geography dimension value other than the value "Any" to the proposal.
- e. Select a territory and click Edit Coverage.
- **f.** In the Edit Coverage page, select **Geography** from the Dimensions drop-down list. The invalid dimension members are displayed in the Selected Dimension Members pane.
- **g.** Expand the values in the Available Dimension Members section or search for the member that has the same name as the one marked invalid in the Selected Dimension Members pane.
- **h.** Select one or more new geography dimension members from Available Dimension Members pane and click **Add** icon to the Selected Dimension Members pane.
- i. Click the **Remove** icon to remove the invalid members from the Selected Dimension Members pane.
- j. Click Save and Close.
- k. Repeat steps 4 to 10 for all territories that were based on Geography dimension.
- I. Click Activate. After the activation process is complete, your territory definitions are valid again and are referencing to the new geography data.
- Running Batch Assignment Process for Opportunities
 - a. From Navigator, click **Scheduled Processes**.
 - **b.** In the Schedule Processes page, click **Schedule New Process**.
 - c. In the Schedule New Process dialog box, search for the Revenue Territory Based Assignment process and select it.
 - d. Click OK.
 - **e.** In the Process Details dialog box, enter **OpenOpportunitiesByCreationDate** in the View Criteria Name field. This selects all revenue lines belonging to open opportunities that were created in the last 'X' days.
 - f. Enter BindOptyCreationDateFrom= followed by the date.

For example, if BindOptyCreationDateFrom=2014-01-01, then all open opportunities which were created between 1st January 2014 till the current date, are processed.

- g. Click Submit to schedule the process.
- h. In the Confirmation dialog box, make a note of the process identifier for monitoring the process, and click **OK**.
- i. Click Close.
- j. In the Schedule Processes page, click the **Refresh** icon.



- k. Review the status of the process job and verify if it has completed successfully.
 - Note: Review a small subset of the open opportunities to confirm that the territory assignment is as expected.
- Running Batch Assignment Process for Sales Accounts
 - **a.** Ensure that the **ZCA_SA_AUTO_ASSIGN_ON_CREATE** and **ZCA_SA_AUTO_ASSIGN_ON_UPDATE** profile options are set to Yes in the **Manage Customer Center Profile Options** task.
 - b. From Navigator, click Customers.
 - c. In the Customers page, click Create Account.
 - d. In the Create Account page, enter a name and address of the sales account, and select the Address is sell to check box.
 - e. Click Save and Close.
 - f. From Navigator, click Customers.
 - g. In the Search pane, search for the name of the sales account you created and select it.
 - **h.** Under Customer Information, select **Sales Account Team**. The details of the sales account and territories associated with the sales account are displayed.

This indicates that the sales account was created successfully and the batch assignment was run automatically to assign the matching territories to the sales account.

To run the batch assignment process manually from the Scheduled Processes page, perform the following steps.

- a. From Navigator, click Scheduled Processes.
- **b.** In the Schedule Processes page, click **Schedule New Process**.
- c. In the Schedule New Process dialog box, search for the Request Sales Account Assignments process and select it.
- d. Click OK.
- Enter SalesAccount_Work_Object in the Work Object Code field and
 SalesAccountTerritory Candidate Object in the Candidate Object Code field.
- f. Select **Territory** in the Assignment Mode list.
- g. Enter AllSalesAccountsVC in the View Criteria Name field. This selects all sales accounts.
- h. Click **Submit** to schedule the process.
- i. In the Confirmation dialog box, make a note of the process identifier for monitoring the process, and click OK.
- j. Click Close.
- **k.** In the Schedule Processes page, click the **Refresh** icon.
- I. Review the status of the process job and verify if it has completed successfully.
 - Note: Review a small subset of the accounts to confirm that the territory assignment is as expected.

Related Topics

Managing Territory Geographies: Worked Example



Creating Countries: Procedure

This procedure lists the steps to create countries in Oracle Sales Cloud.

In Oracle Sales Cloud, countries are pre-seeded. If you are unable to find a specific country in the Manage Geographies page, then you can add it to the application.

Note: Oracle Sales Cloud provides support for Nokia geography data for 60 countries. For more information on the list of countries, see the Nokia Geography Reference Data: Explained topic. For countries where Nokia geography data is not available, you can purchase the geography data from a third-party data provider and load it into the application using File-Based Data Import. For more information, see the Importing Geographies chapter in the Oracle Sales Cloud Understanding File-Based Data Import and Export guide. If countries are not available in the application, then use the procedure outlined in this topic to create them.

Perform the following steps to create a new country.

- 1. From the Setup and Maintenance work area, search for Manage Territories and click **Go to Task**.
- 2. Click the New icon.
- 3. Enter the following details:
 - Territory Code: Enter a unique code for the territory.
 - o Territory Name: Enter a unique name for the territory.
 - Description: Enter a description for the territory.
- 4. Click Save and Close.
 - Note: After you have added a new country in the application, if you want to import the geography data for that country, then you must perform Step 5 to 10.
- 5. From the Setup and Maintenance work area, search for Manage Geographies and click Go to Task.
- 6. In the Manage Geographies page, enter either the country name or the two-letter ISO code for the country you just added, and click **Search**.
- 7. Select the country in the search results.
- 8. Click the **Actions** drop-down, and select **Create Country**.
- 9. In the Create Country dialog box, select the name of the country and click **Save**.
- 10. Click Done.

Importing Geographies Using File-Based Import: Explained

This topic explains how to prepare and import geography data from an external data source using the File-Based Data Import feature. A geography is any region with a boundary around it, regardless of its size. It might be a state, a country, a city, a country, or a ward. You must create or import geographies before you can associate them with custom zones and addresses.



Note: The application ships with third-party (Nokia) master geography data for multiple countries that can be easily imported. You can import Oracle-licensed Nokia data from Navteq, for those countries where the data is available, such as the U.S. You can import Nokia Geography data using the Manage Geographies task. Search for the country, and select Import Nokia Data from the Actions menu. If the licensed Navteq data is not available for a particular country, then the Import Nokia Data action is disabled. For more information, see Replacing Existing Master Geography Data with Revised Nokia Geography Data: Procedure. If Nokia geography data is not available for a country, then use the information in this chapter to import it using File-Based Data Import.

Consider the following questions when importing your data:

- How does your legacy system or source system represent the geography data compared to how Oracle applications represent the same data?
- Do you have to configure values in the application to map to your data values?
- What import features are available for importing your business object?
- How do you verify your imported data?

Comparing Business Object Structures

You must understand how your geography data corresponds with the data in the application so that you can map your legacy data to the data that the application requires. First, you must understand how the application represents the structure of the data for a geography.

You must import a separate country structure import object for each country. Each of these import objects must contain the geography types that are used in the country's structure, organized in a hierarchy using geography level numbers. For example, if you are importing the country structure of Australia, the country structure could be the following: 1: Country, 2: State, 3: County, 4: Town, 5: ZIP.

Import Objects for the Geography

To facilitate importing geographies, the application incorporates the structure of the geography into import objects. The import object for the geography is ImpGeography.

Comparing Business Object Data

Each import object is a collection of attributes that helps to map your data to the application data and to support one-to-many relationships between the structural components that make up the geography.

You must understand the attribute details of the import objects so that you can prepare your import data. You can use reference guide files that contain attribute descriptions, values that populate attributes by default when you do not provide values, and validation information for each import object attribute. The validation information includes the navigation path to the task where you can define values in the application. For example, if you have values in your data that correlate to a choice list in the application, then the validation information for that attribute provides the task name in the Setup and Maintenance work area where you can define your values. For additional information, including a list of reference guide file names and locations that you need to complete this task, see the following table.

Import Object	Related Import Object Topic
ImpGeography	Geography Import Objects: How They Work Together





You can use the keyword importing geographies to search for related topics in Help.

Extensible Attributes

The application doesn't support extensible attributes for geographies. You can import only data for geography object that already exist by default in the application.

Importing Geographies Using File-Based Data Import

For the geography business object, you must use the File-Based Data Import feature. You prepare XML or text source data files in a form that is suitable for a file-based import. The file-based import process reads the data in your source file, populates the interface tables according to your mapping, and imports the data into the application destination tables.

The Define File-Based Data Import Setup and Maintenance task list includes the tasks that are required to configure the import objects, to create source-file mappings, and to schedule the import activities. You submit file-based import activities for each import object. When you're creating a new geography, you import the Geography object. You must be assigned the Master Data Management Administrator job role to access and submit the import activities for geographies.

When importing geography information, you must provide the parent reference information for all parent levels for the entity.

Verifying Your Imported Data

Oracle applications provide File-Based Import activity reports, which you can use to verify imported data. Users with the Master Data Management Administrator job role can also navigate to the Manage Geographies work area to view the imported geographies.

Related Topics

- File-Based Data Import: How It Works
- Getting Started with File-Based Import: Documentation Overview

Geography Import Objects: How They Work Together

This topic describes the Geography import object. You use the Geography import object to import geography information.

This topic introduces the following:

- Target objects for the Geography import object
- Target import object attributes
- · Reference guide files for target import object attributes

Geography Target Import Objects

You can use the Geography import object to import geography hierarchy information to create or update the geography data of a country. To map the source data in your import file to the target attributes in the application, you must understand how the target objects are related and what attributes are included in each target object.

The target import objects in the Geography import object contain information about the geography hierarchy. When updating an existing geography, you must provide the parent reference information of the existing geography, which connects the geography to the country of which it is a part.

Use the ImpGeography target import object to create and update geography information.



Note: Before you import geography data for a country, you must define the country's geography structure.

Target Import Object Attributes

You must compare the attributes that you want to import with the target object attributes that are available and with their valid values. To evaluate your source data and Oracle Sales Cloud attributes for mapping and validation, you use a reference file. See the File Based Data Import for Oracle Sales Cloud quide available on the Oracle Sales Cloud Help Center (https:// docs.oracle.com/cloud/latest/salescs_gs/docs.htm). In the File Based Data Imports chapter, see the topic for your import object of interest, which includes links to reference files for target import objects. A reference guide file includes attribute descriptions, default values, and validations performed by the import process. Review the validation for each attribute to determine whether there are functional prerequisites or prerequisite setup tasks that are required.

To import your source file data, you define a mapping between your source file data and the combination of the target object and target object attribute. You can predefine and manage import mappings using the Manage File Import Mappings task, or you can define the mapping when you define the import activity using the Manage File Import Activities task. Both tasks are available in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

Note: If any of the attributes you want to import do not have an equivalent target object attribute, then review the Application Composer extensibility features for geography.

Reference Files for Target Import Object Attributes

To access the reference guide files for the geography's target import objects, see the File Based Data Import for Oracle Sales Cloud guide available on the Oracle Sales Cloud Help Center (https://docs.oracle.com/cloud/latest/salescs_gs/docs.htm). In the File Based Data Imports chapter, see the topic for your import object of interest, which includes links to reference files for target import objects. For detailed information on importing geographies using file-based import, refer to Document No. 1481758.1, Importing Master Reference Geography Data, on the Oracle Support site.

The following table lists the reference files that are available by target import object.

Target Import Object	Description	Attribute Reference Guide File Names
ImpGeography	Contains information that captures a country's geography hierarchy details, such as geography type, geography code, etc.	HZ_IMP_GEOGRAPHIES_T_Reference

Related Topics

- File-Based Data Import: How It Works
- Getting Started with File-Based Import: Documentation Overview

Importing Geographies Using File-Based Data Import: Worked Example

This example demonstrates how to import data using the File-Based Data Import tool. In this example, you have a source file containing geography data that you want to import into the application so that the geography data can be used for real time address validation and tax purposes.



The following table summarizes the key decisions that you must make in this scenario.

Decisions to Consider	In This Example
What type of object are you importing?	Geography
What file type are you using for your source data?	Text file
Where are you uploading your source data file from?	Your desktop
What data type is your source data file?	Comma separated
Which fields are you importing into the application?	All, except for the RecordTypeCode field
When do you want to process the import?	Immediately

Summary of the Tasks

You perform the following steps to create an import activity and activate the import:

- 1. Determining what information is in the source file.
- 2. Creating and scheduling the import activity.
- 3. Monitoring the import results.

Prerequisites for Importing Additional Geography Data After Your Initial Import

- 1. Ensure that the combination of the Source ID and Parent Source ID values is unique for each row of data within a single import. However, your source data files don't need to have the same Source ID and Parent Source ID values as your previously imported geography data. If the geography structure levels and the parents for each geography value are the same, then the changed IDs will not affect the import.
- 2. Ensure that all the parents of a child geography are included in your data file so that the child geography can be added. For example, if you originally imported US, CA, and San Francisco, and now you want to import the city of San Jose in CA, then your data file must include US, CA, and San Jose.
- 3. Check that your source data file has the correct values for the geography data that you have already loaded. For example, if your initial import included the value US for country and CA as state, and in a subsequent import you have California as a state, then your geography import creates two state records (CA and California) in the application data, with the US as the country parent.

Determining What Information is in the Source File

- 1. The source geography data files must include a unique Source ID value for each row of data and Parent Source ID value for the parent of that row of data. The Source or Parent Source IDs should not be longer than 18 characters.
- 2. You can structure your geography source data as follows:

Geography Level	Name	Source ID	Parent Source ID
1 (Country)	US	1	
2 (State)	CA	11	1



Geography Level	Name	Source ID	Parent Source ID
3 (County)	Alameda	111	11
4 (City)	Pleasanton	1111	111
4 (City)	Dublin	1112	111

Creating and Scheduling the Import Activity

You can create an import activity, enter the import details, and schedule the import. An import activity includes selecting the source file or file location, mapping the source file to the database, and scheduling the import.

- 1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, search for the **Manage File Import Activities** task. Click **Go to Task**.
- 2. In the Manage Import Activities page, click Create.
- 3. In the Create Import Activity: Map Fields page, map each field from your source file to the target object and attribute, as shown in the following table.

Field	Value
Name	Master Reference Geographies
Object	Geography
File Type	Text File
File Selection	Specific file
Upload From	Desktop
File Name	Choose relevant file from desktop
Data Type	Comma separated

- Note: Ensure that the file type that you select in the Create Import Activity: Set Up page matches the file type of the source data file.
- 4. Click Next.
- 5. In the Create Import Activity: Map Fields page, map each field from your source file to the Oracle Sales Cloud database object and attribute, as shown in the following table.

Column Header	Example Value	Ignore	Object	Attribute
Primary Geography Name	Primary Geography Name	United States	Imp Geography	Primary Geography Name
Country Code	US	No	Imp Geography	Country Code



Column Header	Example Value	Ignore	Object	Attribute
Record Type Code	0	Yes	Imp Geography	Record Type Code
Source ID	10265	No	Imp Geography	Source ID
Parent Source ID	1053	No	Imp Geography	Parent Source ID

If you don't want to import a column in the text file, then you can select **Ignore**.

- Note: If you can't map the fields from your source file to the relevant target object, then see the import object spreadsheets.
- 6. Click Next.
- 7. In the Create Import Activity: Create Schedule page, select **Immediate** in the Schedule field so that the import will start as soon as you activate it.

Instead of immediately importing the data, you can choose a date and time to start the import. You can also specify whether the import will be repeated and the frequency of the repeated import.

8. Click Next.

Monitoring the Import Results

You can monitor the processing of the import activity and view the completion reports for both successful records and errors.

- 1. In the Create Import Activity: Review and Activate page, verify your import details in the Import Details, File Details, Import Options, and Schedule sections. Update the import details if required by navigating to the previous screens using the **Back** link.
- 2. Confirm your import details, and click **Activate** to submit the import.

After the import activity has finished, the Status field value changes to Completed.

Related Topics

· File-Based Import Processing: How it Works

Importing Country Structures Using File-Based Import: Explained

This topic explains how to prepare and import country structure data from an external data source using the File-Based Data Import feature. A country structure is a hierarchical grouping of geography types for a country. For example, the geography structure for the United States has the geography type of State at the top, followed by the County, then the City, and finally the Postal Code.

You can use the country structure to set up the following:

- The relationships between geographies within a country
- The types of geographies that you can define for a country



Consider the following questions when importing your data:

- How does your legacy system or source system represent the geography data compared to how the application represents the same data?
- Do you have to configure values in the application to map to your data values?
- Do you have to customize the application to capture additional attributes that are critical to the way you do business?
- What import features are available for importing your business object?
- How do you verify your imported data?

Comparing Business Object Structures

You must understand how your country structure data corresponds with the data in the application so that you can map your legacy data to the data that the application requires. First, you must understand how the application represents the structure of the data for a country structure.

You must import a separate country structure import object for each country. Each of these import objects must contain the geography types that are used in the country's structure, organized in a hierarchy using geography level numbers. For example, if you're importing the country structure of Australia, the country structure could be the following: 1: Country, 2: State, 3: County, 4: Town, 5: ZIP.

Import Objects for the Country Structure

To facilitate importing country structures, the application incorporates the structure of the country structure into import objects. The import object for country structures is GeoStructureLevel.

Comparing Business Object Data

Each import object is a collection of attributes that helps to map your data to the application data and to support one-to-many relationships between the structural components that make up the country structure.

You must understand the attribute details of the import objects so that you can prepare your import data. You can use reference guide files that contain attribute descriptions, values that populate attributes by default when you don't provide values, and validation information for each attribute. The validation information includes the navigation path to the task where you can define values in the application. For example, if you have values in your data that correlate to a choice list in the application, then the validation information for that attribute provides the task name in the Setup and Maintenance work area where you can define your values. For additional information, including a list of reference guide file names and locations that you need to complete this task, see the following table.

Import Object	Related Import Object Topic
Country Structure	Country Structure Import Objects: How They Work Together

Extensible Attributes

If you need to extend the application object to import your legacy or source data, you must use Application Composer to design your object model extensions and to generate the required artifacts to register your extensions and make them available for importing. The corresponding import object is updated with the extensible attributes, which can then be mapped to your source file data. You can use the same source file to import both extensible custom attributes and the standard import object attributes.



Importing Country Structures Using File-Based Data Import

For the country structure business object, you must use the File-Based Data Import feature. You prepare XML or text source data files in a form that is suitable for a file-based import. The file-based import process reads the data in your source file, populates the interface tables according to your mapping, and imports the data into the application destination tables.

The Define File-Based Data Import Setup and Maintenance task list includes the tasks that are required to configure the import objects, to create source-file mappings, and to schedule the import activities. You submit file-based import activities for each import object. When you're creating a new country structure, you import the Country Structure object. You must be assigned the Master Data Management Administrator job role to access and submit the import activities for country structures.

Verifying Your Imported Data

You can view the list of import activities from the Manage Import Activities page. You can verify your imported data by clicking the Status column for your import activity.

Related Topics

- File-Based Data Import: How It Works
- Getting Started with File-Based Import: Documentation Overview
- Extending Oracle Sales Cloud: How It Works

Country Structure Import Objects: How They Work Together

This topic describes the Country Structure import object. You use the Country Structure import object when you submit a file-based import activity to import your country structure information. This topic introduces the following:

- Target objects for the Country Structure import object
- Target import object attributes
- Reference guide files for target import object attributes

Country Structure Target Import Objects

The Country Structure import object contains one target import object. The target import object organizes the individual attributes of the different aspects of the geography structure. When updating an existing country structure, you must provide the parent reference information of the existing country structure. This reference information connects the imported geography structure to the existing one. Use the ImpGeoStructureLevel target import object to create and update country structure information.

Target Import Object Attributes

You must compare the attributes that you want to import with the target object attributes that are available and with their valid values. To evaluate your source data and Oracle Sales Cloud attributes for mapping and validation, you use a reference file. See the File Based Data Import for Oracle Sales Cloud guide available on the Oracle Sales Cloud Help Center (https://docs.oracle.com/cloud/latest/salescs_gs/docs.htm). In the File Based Data Imports chapter, see the topic for your import object of interest, which includes links to reference files for target import objects. A reference guide file includes attribute descriptions, default values, and validations performed by the import process. Review the validation for each attribute to determine whether there are functional prerequisites or prerequisite setup tasks that are required.

To import your source file data, you define a mapping between your source file data and the combination of the target object and target object attribute. You can predefine and manage import mappings using the Manage File Import Mappings task, or



you can define the mapping when you define the import activity using the Manage File Import Activities task. Both tasks are available in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

Note: If any of the attributes you want to import does not have an equivalent target object attribute, then review the Application Composer extensibility features for country structures.

Reference Files for Target Import Object Attributes

To access reference files for this object's target import objects, see the File Based Data Import for Oracle Sales Cloud guide available on the Oracle Sales Cloud Help Center (https://docs.oracle.com/cloud/latest/salescs_gs/docs.htm). In the File Based Data Imports chapter, see the topic for your import object of interest, which includes links to reference files for target import objects.

For detailed information on importing geographies using file-based import, refer to Document No. 1481758.1, Importing Master Reference Geography Data, on the Oracle Support site.

The following table lists the reference files that are available by target import object.

Target Import Object	Description	Reference Guide File Names
ImpGeoStructureLevel	Information that specifies a country's geography structure.	HZ_IMP_ GEO_STRUCTURE _ LEVELS_ Reference

Related Topics

- File-Based Data Import: How It Works
- Getting Started with File-Based Import: Documentation Overview
- Importing Country Structures Using File-Based Import: Quick Start
- Extending Oracle Sales Cloud: How It Works

Importing and Exporting Territory Geography Zones: Explained

Territory geography zones are geographical boundaries that you can set up to replicate your organization's regions, such as a Pacific Northwest sales region. You can set up territory geography zones in one application instance, and then after the territory geography zones are defined you can export the territory zones and import them into another application instance.

To define your territory geography zones and then import your territory zones into another application instance, you must complete the following steps:

- 1. Import the master reference geography data into the application.
- 2. Define your territory geography zones using the Manage Territory Geographies task.
- **3.** Export the territory geography zones.
- **4.** Import the territory geography zones into another application instance.

Import the master reference geography data

Firstly, you need to import the master reference geography data. Master reference geography data consists of geography elements such as country, state, and city, and is required for any geographical information you store in the application, such as address information used in customer and sales records. For more information, refer to the Geography Hierarchy: Explained topic listed in the related topics section. Master reference geography data can be imported into the application



using the Manage File Import Activities task in Setup and Maintenance - refer to the Importing Master Reference Geography Data: Worked Example topic listed in the related topics section for more information.

Define your territory geography zones

Once the master reference geography data has been imported, you can then create your territory geography zones in the application using the Manage Territory Geographies task in Setup and Maintenance. For more information, refer to the Managing Territory Geographies: Worked Example topic listed in the related topics section.

Export the territory geography zones

Once you have completed importing the master reference geography data and defining your territory geography zone tasks, you can create a configuration package to export the territory zone data. For more information, refer to the Exporting Setup Data demo listed in the related topics section.

Import the territory geography zones

Once you have downloaded your configuration package for your territory geography zone setup, you can import the territory zones into another application instance. For more information, refer to the Importing Setup Data listed in the related topics section.

Note: Ensure that you import your master reference geography data into the new application instance before you import the configuration package.

Related Topics

Managing Territory Geographies: Worked Example

Defining Address Cleansing: Explained

Address cleansing validates, corrects, and standardizes address information that you enter in the application. Address cleansing, unlike geography validation, validates both the geography attributes and the address line attributes.

To use the address cleansing functionality, you need to have license for the customer data quality application, because the feature is delivered using data quality integration.

You can specify the real-time address cleansing level for each country by choosing either of these options:

- None: Specifies no real time address cleansing.
- Optional: Provides option to cleanse addresses.

Once you have enabled address cleansing for a country, a **Verify Address** icon appears at address entry points in the application. Click the icon to perform address cleansing and receive a corrected, standardized address. If the application does not find a matching address, then an alert message is displayed.

FAQs for Define Geographies

When do I define address cleansing?

When address data entered into the application needs to conform to a particular format, in order to achieve consistency in the representation of addresses. For example, making sure that the incoming data is stored following the correct postal address format.



Why can't I update a geography structure by copying an existing country structure?

You can only update a geography structure by adding existing geography types, or by creating new geography types and then adding them to the geography structure. You can only copy an existing country structure when you are defining a new country structure.

Why can't I delete a level of the country geography structure?

If a geography exists for a country geography structure level then you cannot delete the level. For example, if a state geography has been created for the United States country geography structure, then the State level cannot be deleted in the country geography structure.

Can I add any geography to the geography hierarchy?

Yes. However, the geography type for the geography that you want to add must be already added to the country geography structure.

Can I edit a specific geography in the geography hierarchy?

Yes. In the Manage Geography Hierarchy page you can edit details such as the geography's date range, primary and alternate names and codes, and parent geographies.

How can I add a geography that is the level below another geography in a geography hierarchy?

Select the geography that you want your geography to be created below, and then click the **Create** icon. This will allow you to create a geography for a geography type that is the level below the geography type you selected. The structure of the country's geography types are defined in the Manage Geography Structure page.

Define Legal Jurisdictions and Authorities

Jurisdictions and Legal Authorities: Explained

You are required to register your legal entities with legal authorities in the jurisdictions where you conduct business. Register your legal entities as required by local business requirements or other relevant laws. For example, register your legal entities for tax reporting to report sales taxes or value added taxes.

Define jurisdictions and related legal authorities to support multiple legal entity registrations, which are used by Oracle Fusion Tax and Oracle Fusion Payroll. When you create a legal entity, the Oracle Fusion Legal Entity Configurator automatically creates one legal reporting unit for that legal entity with a registration.

Jurisdictions: Explained

Jurisdiction is a physical territory such as a group of countries, country, state, country, or parish where a particular piece of legislation applies. French Labor Law, Singapore Transactions Tax Law, and US Income Tax Laws are examples of particular legislation that apply to legal entities operating in different countries' jurisdictions. Judicial authority may be exercised within a jurisdiction.



Types of jurisdictions are:

- Identifying Jurisdiction
- Income Tax Jurisdiction
- Transaction Tax Jurisdiction

Identifying Jurisdiction

For each legal entity, select an identifying jurisdiction. An identifying jurisdiction is your first jurisdiction you must register with to be allowed to do business in a country. If there is more than one jurisdiction that a legal entity must register with to commence business, select one as the identifying jurisdiction. Typically the identifying jurisdiction is the one you use to uniquely identify your legal entity.

Income tax jurisdictions and transaction tax jurisdictions do not represent the same jurisdiction. Although in some countries, the two jurisdictions are defined at the same geopolitical level, such as a country, and share the same legal authority, they are two distinct jurisdictions.

Income Tax Jurisdiction

Create income tax jurisdictions to properly report and remit income taxes to the legal authority. Income tax jurisdictions by law impose taxes on your financial income generated by all your entities within their jurisdiction. Income tax is a key source of funding that the government uses to fund its activities and serve the public.

Transaction Tax Jurisdiction

Create transaction tax jurisdictions through Oracle Fusion Tax in a separate business flow, because of the specific needs and complexities of various taxes. Tax jurisdictions and their respective rates are provided by suppliers and require periodic maintenance. Use transaction tax jurisdiction for legal reporting of sales and value added taxes.

Legal Authorities: Explained

A legal authority is a government or legal body that is charged with powers to make laws, levy and collect fees and taxes, and remit financial appropriations for a given jurisdiction.

For example, the Internal Revenue Service is the authority for enforcing income tax laws in United States. In some countries, such as India and Brazil, you are required to print legal authority information on your tax reports. Legal authorities are defined in the Oracle Fusion Legal Entity Configurator. Tax authorities are a subset of legal authorities and are defined using the same setup flow.

Legal authorities are not mandatory in Oracle Fusion Human Capital Management (HCM), but are recommended and are generally referenced on statutory reports.

Creating Legal Jurisdictions, Addresses and Authorities: Examples

Define legal jurisdictions and related legal authorities to support multiple legal entity registrations, which are used by Oracle Fusion Tax and Oracle Fusion Payroll.

Legal Jurisdictions

Create a legal jurisdiction by following these steps:

1. Navigator > Setup and Maintenance > Manage Legal Jurisdictions > Go to Task.



- 2. Select Create.
- 3. Enter a unique Name, United States Income Tax.
- 4. Select a **Territory**, United States.
- 5. Select a **Legislative Category**, Income tax.
- **6.** Select **Identifying**, Yes. Identifying indicates the first jurisdiction a legal entity must register with to do business in a country.
- Enter a Start Date if desired. You can also add an End Date to indicate a date that the jurisdiction may no longer be used.
- 8. Select a Legal Entity Registration Code, EIN or TIN.
- 9. Select a Legal Reporting Unit Registration Code, Legal Reporting Unit Registration Number.
- 10. Optionally enter one or more **Legal Functions**.
- 11. Save and Close.

Legal Addresses for Legal Entities and Reporting Units

Create a legal address for legal entities and reporting units by following these steps:

- 1. Navigator > Setup and Maintenance > Manage Legal Address > Go to Task.
- 2. Select Create.
- 3. Select Country.
- 4. Enter Address Line 1, Oracle Parkway.
- 5. Optionally enter Address Line 2, and Address Line 3.
- **6.** Enter or Select **Zip Code**, 94065.
- 7. Select Geography 94065 and Parent Geography Redwood Shores, San Mateo, CA.
- 8. Optionally enter a **Time Zone**, US Pacific Time.
- 9. OK.
- 10. Save and Close.

Legal Authorities

Create a legal authority by following these steps:

- Navigator > Setup and Maintenance > Manage Legal Authorities > Go to Task.
- 2. Enter the Name, California Franchise Tax Board.
- 3. Enter the **Tax Authority Type**, Reporting.
 - Note: Create an address for the legal authority.
- 4. Select Create.
- 5. The Site Number is automatically assigned.
- 6. Optionally enter a Mail Stop.
- 7. Select **Country**, United States
- 8. Enter Address Line 1, 121 Spear Street, Suite 400.
- Optionally enter Address Line 2, and Address Line 3.
- 10. Enter or Select **Zip Code**, 94105.
- 11. Select Geography 94105 and Parent Geography San Francisco, San Francisco, CA.
- 12. OK.
- **13.** Optionally enter a **Time Zone**, US Pacific Time.
- **14.** Optionally click the **One-Time Address** check box.
- 15. The From Date defaults to today's date. Update if necessary.
- **16.** Optionally enter a **To Date** to indicate the last day the address can be used.



- Note: You can optionally enter Address Purpose details.
- 17. Select Add Row.
- **18.** Select **Purpose**.
- **19.** The **Purpose from Date** will default to today's date.
- 20. Optionally enter a Purpose to Date.
- 21. OK.
- 22. Save and Close.

Creating Legal Entities, Registrations, and Reporting Units: Examples

Define a legal entity for each registered company or other entity recognized in law for which you want to record assets, liabilities, and income, pay transaction taxes, or perform intercompany trading.

Legal Entity

Create a legal entity by following these steps:

- Navigator > Setup and Maintenance > Manage Legal Entity > Go to Task.
- 2. Accept the default **Country**, United States.
- 3. Enter Name, InFusion USA West.
- 4. Enter Legal Entity Identifier, US0033.
- 5. Optionally enter **Start Date**. When the start date is blank the legal entity is effective from the creation date.
- 6. Optionally enter an End Date.
- 7. Optionally, if your legal entity should be registered to report payroll tax and social insurance, select the Payroll statutory unit check box.
- 8. Optionally, if your legal entity has employees, select the Legal employer check box.
- 9. Optionally, if this legal entity is not a payroll statutory unit, select an existing payroll statutory unit to report payroll tax and social instance on behalf of this legal entity.
- 10. Enter the Registration Information
- **11.** Accept the default **Identifying Jurisdiction**, United States Income Tax.
- 12. Search for and select a Legal Address, 500 Oracle Parkway, Redwood Shores, CA 94065.

The legal address must have been entered previously using the Manage Legal Address task.

- 13. OK.
- **14.** Optionally enter a **Place of Registration**.
- 15. Enter the EIN or TIN.
- 16. Enter the Legal Reporting Unit Registration Number.
- 17. Save and Close.
- 18. Navigator > Setup and Maintenance > Define Legal Entries > Manage Legal Entity > Select... to set scope.
- 19. Select the Manage Legal Entity.
- 20. In the *Legal Entity list, select Select and Add.
- 21. Click Apply and Go to Task.
- 22. Select your legal entity.
- 23. Save and Close on the very bottom of the window.

This sets the scope for your task list to the selected legal entity.

24. Save and Close.



Legal Entity Registrations

A legal entity registration with the same name as that of the legal entity is created by default. To verify this, locate the **Manage Legal Entity Registrations** task and then select **Go to Task**. To create another registration for the legal entity follow these steps:

- 1. Navigator > Setup and Maintenance > Manage Legal Entity Registrations: Verify that the Legal Entity scope value is set correctly.
- 2. Go to Task.
- 3. Select Create.
- 4. Enter Jurisdiction.
- 5. Enter Registered Address.
- 6. Enter Registered Name.
- Optionally enter Alternate Name, Registration Number, Place of Registration, Issuing Legal Authority, and Issuing Legal Authority Address, Start Date, and End Date.
- 8. Save and Close.

Legal Reporting Unit

When a legal entity is created, a legal reporting unit with the same name as that of the entity is also automatically created. To create more legal reporting units or modify the settings follow these steps:

- 1. Navigator > Setup and Maintenance > Define Legal Reporting Unit. > Manage Legal Reporting Unit. Verify that the Legal Entity scope value is set correctly.
- 2. Go to Task
- 3. Select Create.
- 4. Enter **Territory**, United States.
- 5. Enter Name.
- 6. Optionally enter a Start Date.
- 7. Enter Registration Information.
- 8. Search for and select Jurisdiction.
- 9. Enter Main Legal Reporting Unit information.
- 10. Select the value Yes or No for the Main Legal Reporting Unit. Set value to yes only if you are creating a new main (primary) legal reporting unit.
- **11.** Enter the **Main Effective Start Date**, 1/1/11.
- 12. Save and Close.

Define Legal Entities: Manage Legal Entity

Legal Entities: Explained

A legal entity is a recognized party with rights and responsibilities given by legislation.

Legal entities have the following rights and responsibilities to:

- Own property
- Trade
- Repay debt



 Account for themselves to regulators, taxation authorities, and owners according to rules specified in the relevant legislation

Their rights and responsibilities may be enforced through the judicial system. Define a legal entity for each registered company or other entity recognized in law for which you want to record assets, liabilities, expenses and income, pay transaction taxes, or perform intercompany trading.

A legal entity has responsibility for elements of your enterprise for the following reasons:

- Facilitating local compliance
- Minimizing the enterprise's tax liability
- Preparing for acquisitions or disposals of parts of the enterprise
- Isolating one area of the business from risks in another area. For example, your enterprise develops property and
 also leases properties. You could operate the property development business as a separate legal entity to limit risk to
 your leasing business.

The Role of Your Legal Entities

In configuring your enterprise structure in Oracle Fusion Applications, the contracting party on any transaction is always the legal entity. Individual legal entities:

- Own the assets of the enterprise
- Record sales and pay taxes on those sales
- Make purchases and incur expenses
- · Perform other transactions

Legal entities must comply with the regulations of jurisdictions, in which they register. Europe now allows for companies to register in one member country and do business in all member countries, and the US allows for companies to register in one state and do business in all states. To support local reporting requirements, legal reporting units are created and registered.

You are required to publish specific and periodic disclosures of your legal entities' operations based on different jurisdictions' requirements. Certain annual or more frequent accounting reports are referred to as statutory or external reporting. These reports must be filed with specified national and regulatory authorities. For example, in the United States (US), your publicly owned entities (corporations) are required to file quarterly and annual reports, as well as other periodic reports, with the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), which enforces statutory reporting requirements for public corporations.

Individual entities privately held or held by public companies do not have to file separately. In other countries, your individual entities do have to file in their own name, as well as at the public group level. Disclosure requirements are diverse. For example, your local entities may have to file locally to comply with local regulations in a local currency, as well as being included in your enterprise's reporting requirements in different currency.

A legal entity can represent all or part of your enterprise's management framework. For example, if you operate in a large country such as the United Kingdom or Germany, you might incorporate each division in the country as a separate legal entity. In a smaller country, for example Austria, you might use a single legal entity to host all of your business operations across divisions.

Legal Entity in Oracle Fusion: Points to Consider

Oracle Fusion Applications support the modeling of your legal entities. If you make purchases from or sell to other legal entities, define these other legal entities in your customer and supplier registers. These registers are part of the Oracle Fusion Trading Community Architecture.



When your legal entities are trading with each other, represent them as legal entities and as customers and suppliers in your customer and supplier registers. Use legal entity relationships to determine which transactions are intercompany and require intercompany accounting. Your legal entities can be identified as legal employers and therefore, are available for use in Human Capital Management (HCM) applications.

Several decisions you should consider when you create legal entities.

- The importance of using legal entity on transactions
- Legal entity and its relationship to business units
- Legal entity and its relationship to divisions
- Legal entity and its relationship to ledgers
- Legal entity and its relationship to balancing segments
- Legal entity and its relationship to consolidation rules
- Legal entity and its relationship to intercompany transactions
- Legal entity and its relationship to worker assignments and legal employer
- Legal entity and payroll reporting
- Legal reporting units

The Importance of Using Legal Entities on Transactions

All of the assets of the enterprise are owned by individual legal entities. Oracle Fusion Financials allow your users to enter legal entities on transactions that represent a movement in value or obligation.

For example, a sales order creates an obligation on the legal entity that books the order to deliver the goods on the acknowledged date. The creation also creates an obligation on the purchaser to receive and pay for those goods. Under contract law in most countries, damages can be sought for both:

- Actual losses, putting the injured party in the same state as if they had not entered into the contract.
- What is called loss of bargain, or the profit that would have made on a transaction.

In another example, if you revalued your inventory in a warehouse to account for raw material price increases, the revaluation and revaluation reserves must be reflected in your legal entity's accounts. In Oracle Fusion Applications, your inventory within an inventory organization is managed by a single business unit and belongs to one legal entity.

Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Business Units

A business unit can process transactions on behalf of many legal entities. Frequently, a business unit is part of a single legal entity. In most cases, the legal entity is explicit on your transactions. For example, a payables invoice has an explicit legal entity field. Your accounts payables department can process supplier invoices on behalf of one or many business units.

In some cases, your legal entity is inferred from your business unit that is processing the transaction. For example, Business Unit ACM UK has a default legal entity of InFusion UK Ltd. When a purchase order is placed in ACM UK, the legal entity InFusion UK Ltd is legally obligated to the supplier. Oracle Fusion Procurement, Oracle Fusion Project Portfolio Management, and Oracle Fusion Supply Chain applications rely on deriving the legal entity information from the business unit.<

Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Divisions

The division is an area of management responsibility that can correspond to a collection of legal entities. If wanted, you can aggregate the results for your divisions by legal entity or by combining parts of other legal entities. Define date-effective hierarchies for your cost center or legal entity segment in your chart of accounts to facilitate the aggregation and reporting by division. Divisions and legal entities are independent concepts.



Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Ledgers

One of your major responsibilities is to file financial statements for your legal entities. Map legal entities to specific ledgers using the Oracle Fusion General Ledger Accounting Configuration Manager. Within a ledger, you can optionally map a legal entity to one or more balancing segment values.

Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Balancing Segments

Oracle Fusion General Ledger supports up to three balancing segments. Best practices recommend one segment represents your legal entity to ease your requirement to account for your operations to regulatory agencies, tax authorities, and investors. Accounting for your operations means you must produce a balanced trial balance sheet by legal entity. If you account for many legal entities in a single ledger, you must:

- 1. Identify the legal entities within the ledger.
- 2. Balance transactions that cross legal entity boundaries through intercompany transactions.
- 3. Decide which balancing segments correspond to each legal entity and assign them in Oracle Fusion General Ledger Accounting Configuration Manager. Once you assign one balancing segment value in a ledger, then all your balancing segment values must be assigned. This recommended best practice facilitates reporting on assets, liabilities, and income by legal entity.

Represent your legal entities by at least one balancing segment value. You may represent it by two or three balancing segment values if more granular reporting is required. For example, if your legal entity operates in multiple jurisdictions in Europe, you might define balancing segment values and map them to legal reporting units. You can represent a legal entity with more than one balancing segment value. Do not use a single balancing segment value to represent more than one legal entity.

In Oracle Fusion General Ledger, there are three balancing segments. You can use separate balancing segments to represent your divisions or strategic business units to enable management reporting at the balance sheet level for each. This solution is used to empower your business unit and divisional managers to track and assume responsibility for their asset utilization or return on investment. Using multiple balancing segments is also useful when you know at the time of implementation that you are disposing of a part of a legal entity and want to isolate the assets and liabilities for that entity.

Implementing multiple balancing segments requires every journal entry that is not balanced by division or business unit, to generate balancing lines. You cannot change to multiple balancing segments after you begin using the ledger because your historical data is not balanced by the new balancing segments. Restating historical data must be done at that point.

If your enterprise regularly spins off businesses or holds managers accountable for utilization of assets, identify the business with a balancing segment value. If you account for each legal entity in a separate ledger, no requirement exists to identify the legal entity with a balancing segment value.

While transactions that cross balancing segments don't necessarily cross legal entity boundaries, all transactions that cross legal entity boundaries must cross balancing segments. If you make an acquisition or are preparing to dispose of a portion of your enterprise, you may want to account for that part of the enterprise in its own balancing segment even if the portion is not a separate legal entity. If you do not map legal entities sharing the same ledger to balancing segments, you cannot distinguish them using intercompany functionality or track individual equity.

Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Consolidation Rules

In Oracle Fusion Applications you can map legal entities to balancing segments and then define consolidation rules using your balancing segments. You are creating a relationship between the definition of your legal entities and their role in your consolidation.

Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Intercompany Transactions

Use Oracle Fusion Intercompany feature to create intercompany entries automatically across your balancing segments. Intercompany processing updates legal ownership within the enterprise's groups of legal entities. Invoices or journals are created as needed. To limit the number of trading pairs for your enterprise, set up intercompany organizations and



assign then to your authorized legal entities. Define processing options and intercompany accounts to use when creating intercompany transactions and to assist in consolidation elimination entries. These accounts are derived and automatically entered on your intercompany transactions based on legal entities assigned to your intercompany organizations.

Intracompany trading, in which legal ownership isn't changed but other organizational responsibilities are, is also supported. For example, you can track assets and liabilities that move between your departments within your legal entities by creating departmental level intercompany organizations.

💡 Tip: In the Oracle Fusion Supply Chain applications, you can model intercompany relationships using business units, from which legal entities are derived.

Legal Entity and Its Relationship to Worker Assignments and Legal Employer

Legal entities that employ people are called legal employers in the Oracle Fusion Legal Entity Configurator. You must enter legal employers on worker assignments in Oracle Fusion HCM.

Legal Entity and Payroll Reporting

Your legal entities are required to pay payroll tax and social insurance such as social security on your payroll. In Oracle Fusion Applications, you can register payroll statutory units to pay and report on payroll tax and social insurance for your legal entities. As the legal employer, you might be required to pay payroll tax, not only at the national level, but also at the local level. You meet this obligation by establishing your legal entity as a place of work within the jurisdiction of a local authority. Set up legal reporting units to represent the part of your enterprise with a specific legal reporting obligation. You can also mark these legal reporting units as tax reporting units, if the legal entity must pay taxes as a result of establishing a place of business within the jurisdiction.

Define Legal Entities: Define Legal Reporting Units

Planning Legal Reporting Units: Points to Consider

Each of your legal entities has at least one legal reporting unit. Legal reporting units can also be referred to as establishments. You can define either domestic or foreign establishments. Define legal reporting units by physical location, such as sales offices, or by logical unit, such as groups of employees subject to different reporting requirements. For example, define logical legal reporting units for both salaried and hourly paid employees.

Another example of logical reporting units is in Oracle Fusion Human Capital Management (HCM) where you use legal reporting units to model tax reporting units. A tax reporting unit is used to group workers for the purpose of tax reporting.

Planning Legal Reporting Units

Plan and define your legal reporting units at both the local and national levels if you operate within the administrative boundaries of a jurisdiction that is more granular than country. For example, your legal entity establishes operations in a country that requires reporting of employment and sales taxes locally as well as nationally. Therefore, you need more than one legally registered location to meet this legal entity's reporting requirements in each local area. Additionally, legal entities in Europe operate across national boundaries, and require you to set up legal reporting units for the purposes of local registration in each country. There can be multiple registrations associated with a legal reporting unit. However, only one identifying registration can be defined by the legal authority used for the legal entity or legal reporting unit and associated with the legal reporting unit.



Define Chart of Accounts for Enterprise Structures: Manage Chart of Accounts Structures and Structure Instances

Chart of Accounts: Explained

The chart of accounts is the underlying structure for organizing financial information and reporting. An entity records transactions with a set of codes representing balances by type, expenses by function, and other divisional or organizational codes that are important to its business.

A well-designed chart of accounts provides the following benefits:

- Effectively manages an organization's financial business.
- Supports the audit and control of financial transactions.
- · Provides flexibility for management reporting and analysis.
- Anticipates growth and maintenance needs as organizational changes occur.
- Facilitates an efficient data processing flow.
- Enables delegation of responsibility for cost control, profit attainment, and asset utilization.
- Measures performance against corporate objectives by your managers.

The chart of accounts facilitates aggregating data from different operations, from within an operation, and from different business flows, thus enabling the organization to report using consistent definitions to their stakeholders in compliance with legislative and corporate reporting standards and aiding in management decisions.

Best practices include starting the design from external and management reporting requirements and making decisions about data storage in the general ledger, including thick versus thin general ledger concepts.

Thick Versus Thin General Ledger: Critical Choices

Thick versus thin general ledger is standard terminology used to describe the amount of data populated and analysis performed in your general ledger. Thick and thin are the poles; most implementations are somewhere in between. Here are some variations to consider:

- A general ledger used in conjunction with an enterprise profitability management (EPM) product, which has data standardized from each operation, is a thin general ledger. Use this variation if your solution is project-based, and Oracle Fusion Project Portfolio Management is implemented. More detailed reporting can be obtained from the Projects system. In the thin general ledger, business units, divisions, and individual departments are not represented in the chart of accounts.
- A thick general ledger:
 - Has segments representing all aspects.
 - Captures every detail of your business.
 - Runs frequent posting.
 - Defines many values in each segment.



A thick general ledger is designed to serve as a repository of management data for a certain level of management. For example, a general ledger designed to provide management data to supervise operations, such as daily sales, without invoice details.

 A primary and secondary ledger, with one thick general ledger and the other a thin general ledger, provides dual representation to meet reporting requirements.

Thin General Ledger

With a thin general ledger, you use the general ledger for internal control, statutory reporting, and tracking of asset ownership. You minimize the data stored in your general ledger. A thin general ledger has many of the following characteristics:

- Minimal chart of accounts
 - Short list of cost centers
 - Short list of natural accounts
 - Short list of cost accounts
 - Summary level asset and liability accounts
 - Low number of optional segments
- Infrequent posting schedule

A thin general ledger:

- Has natural accounts at a statutory reporting level, for example, payroll expense, rent, property taxes, and utilities.
- Has cost centers at the functional expense level, such as Research and Development or Selling, General, and Administrative, rather than at department or analytic levels.
- Omits business unit, division, and product detail.

One example of an industry that frequently uses a thin general ledger is retail. In a retail organization, the general ledger tracks overall sales numbers by region. A retail point of sales product tracks sales and inventory by store, product, supplier, markup, and other retail sales measures.

Thick General Ledger

With a thick general ledger, you use the general ledger as a detailed, analytic tool, performing analytic functions directly in the general ledger. Data is broken down by many reporting labels, and populated frequently from the subledgers.

You maximize the data stored in the general ledger. A thick general ledger has many of the following characteristics:

- Maximum use of the chart of accounts
 - Long list of natural accounts
 - Long list of cost centers
 - Long list of costing accounts
 - Detailed asset and liability accounts
- Frequent posting schedule

A thick general ledger had details for cost of goods sold and inventory balances and track property plant and equipment at a granular level. Cost centers represent functional expenses, but also roll up to departmental or other expense analysis levels. Using product and location codes in optional segments can provide reporting by line of business. Posting daily, at the individual transaction level, can maximize the data stored in the general ledger.



One example of an industry that frequently uses a thick general ledger is electronic manufacturers. Detail on the revenue line is tagged by sales channel. Product is structured differently to provide detail on the cost of goods sold line, including your bill of materials costs. The general ledger is used to compare and contrast both revenue and cost of goods sold for margin analysis.

Other Considerations

Consider implementing a thick ledger if there are business requirements to do any of the following:

- Track entered currency balances at the level of an operational dimension or segment of your chart of accounts, such as by department or cost center
- Generate financial allocations at the level of an operational dimension or segment
- Report using multiple layered and versions of hierarchies of the operational dimension or segment from your general ledger

Consider implementing a thin ledger in addition to a thick ledger, if there are additional requirements for:

- Minimal disclosure to the authorities in addition to the requirements listed above. For example, in some European countries, fiscal authorities examine ledgers at the detailed account level.
- Fiscal only adjustments, allocations, and revaluations, which don't impact the thick general ledger.

The important consideration in determining if a thick ledger is the primary or secondary ledger is your reporting needs. Other considerations include how the values for an operational dimension or segment are derived and the amount of resources used in reconciling your different ledgers. If values for an operational dimension or segment are entered by the user, then a thick primary ledger is the better choice.

However, if values for the operational segment are automatically derived from attributes on transactions in your subledger accounting rules, then use a thick secondary ledger. This decision affects the amount of:

- Storage and maintenance needed for both the general ledger and subledger accounting entries
- System resources required to perform additional posting
- In summary, you have:
 - Minimum demand on storage, maintenance, and system resources with the use of a thin ledger
 - Greater demand on storage, maintenance, and system resources with the use of a thick ledger
 - Greatest demand on storage, maintenance and system resources with the use of both thick and thin ledgers
 - Note: Generally speaking, there is a trade-off between the volume of journals and balances created and maintained versus system resource demands. Actual performance depends on a wide range of factors including hardware and network considerations, transaction volume, and data retention policies.

Summary

The factors you should consider in your decision to use a thick or thin general ledger for your organization, are your:

- Downstream EPM system and its capabilities
- Business intelligence system and its capabilities
- Subledger systems and their capabilities and characteristics, including heterogeneity
- General ledger reporting systems and their capabilities
- Maintenance required for the thick or thin distributions and record keeping



- Maintenance required to update value sets for the chart of accounts segments
- Preferences of the product that serves as a source of truth
- Level at which to report profitability including gross margin analysis
- Industry and business complexity

Chart of Accounts: How Its Components Fit Together

The important elements in a basic chart of accounts in Oracle Fusion Applications included a structure that defines the account values, segments and their labels, and rules (security and validation). Account combinations link the values in the segments together and provide the accounting mechanism to capture financial transactions.

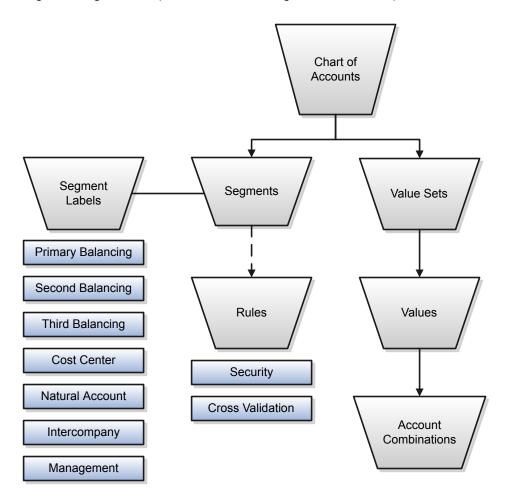


Chart of Accounts

The chart of accounts defines the number and attributes of various segments, including:

- Order of segments
- · Width of segments
- Prompts



• Segment labels, such as balancing, natural account, and cost center.

The chart of accounts further defines:

- · Combination of value sets associated with each segment
- Type of segment
- Default values for the segments
- Additional conditions designating the source of the values using database tables
- Required and displayed properties for the segments

Segments

A chart of accounts segment is a component of the account combination. Each segment has a value set attached to it to provide formatting and validation of the set of values used with that segment. The combination of segments creates the account combination used for recording and reporting financial transactions. Examples of segments that may be found in a chart of accounts are company, cost center, department, division, region, account, product, program, and location.

Value Sets and Values

The value sets define the attributes and values associated with a segment of the chart of accounts. You can think of a value set as a container for your values. You can set up your flexfield so that it automatically validates the segment values that you enter against a table of valid values. If you enter an invalid segment value, a list of valid values appears automatically so that you can select a valid value. You can assign a single value set to more than one segment, and you can share value sets across different flexfields.

Caution: You must use Independent validation only for the Accounting Key Flexfield value sets. Other validations prevent you from using the full chart of accounts functionality, such as data security, reporting, and account hierarchy integration. Dependent values sets are not supported.

Segment Labels

Segment labels identify certain segments in your chart of accounts and assign special functionality to those segments. Segment labels were referred to as flexfield qualifiers in Oracle E-Business Suite. Here are the segment labels that are available to use with the chart of accounts.

- Balancing: Ensures that all journals balance for each balancing segment value or combination of multiple balancing segment values to use in trial balance reporting. The three balancing segment labels are: primary, second, and third balancing. The primary balancing segment label is required.
- Cost Center: Facilitates grouping of natural accounts by functional cost types, accommodating tracking of specific business expenses across natural accounts. As cost centers combine expenses and headcount data into costs, they are useful for detailed analysis and reporting. Cost centers are optional, but required if you are accounting for depreciation, additions, and other transactions in Oracle Fusion Assets, and for storing expense approval limits in Oracle Fusion Expense Management. If you are implementing Oracle Fusion Procurement, you can use cost centers for business intelligence reporting and to route transactions for approval.
- **Natural Account:** Determines the account type (asset, liability, expense, revenue, or equity) and other information specific to the segment value. The natural account segment label is required.
- **Management:** Optionally, denotes the segment that has management responsibility, such as the department, cost center, or line of business. Also can be attached to the same segment as one of the balancing segments to make legal entity reporting more granular.
- **Intercompany**: Optionally, assigns the segment to be used in intercompany balancing functionality.



Note: All segments have a segment qualifier that enables posting for each value. The predefined setting is Yes to post.

Account Combinations

An account combination is a completed code of segment values that uniquely identifies an account in the chart of accounts, for example 01-2900-500-123, might represent InFusion America (company)-Monitor Sales (division)-Revenue (account)-Air Filters (product).

Rules

The chart of accounts uses two different types of rules to control functionality.

- **Security rules**: Prohibit certain users from accessing specific segment values. For example, you can create a security rule that grants a user access only to his or her department.
- **Cross-validation rules**: Control the account combinations that can be created during data entry. For example, you may decide that sales cost centers 600 to 699 should enter amounts only to product sales accounts 4000 to 4999.

Create Chart of Accounts, Ledger, Legal Entities, and Business Units in Spreadsheets: Explained

Represent enterprise structures of your chart of accounts, ledger, legal entities, and business unit configuration to track and report on your financial objectives and meet your reporting requirements. These components are the underlying structure for organizing financial information and reporting.

The chart of accounts within the ledger facilitates:

- Aggregating data from different operations, from within an operation, and from different business flows
- Consistent definitions to your stakeholders in compliance with legislative and corporate reporting standards and aids in management decisions

Rapid implementation is a way to configure a financial enterprise and financial reporting structures quickly using sheets in a workbook that upload lists of:

- · Companies (legal entities)
- Ledgers by country
- Business units
- Chart of accounts and segment values
- Segment value hierarchies
- Financial sequences
- Required subledger accounts

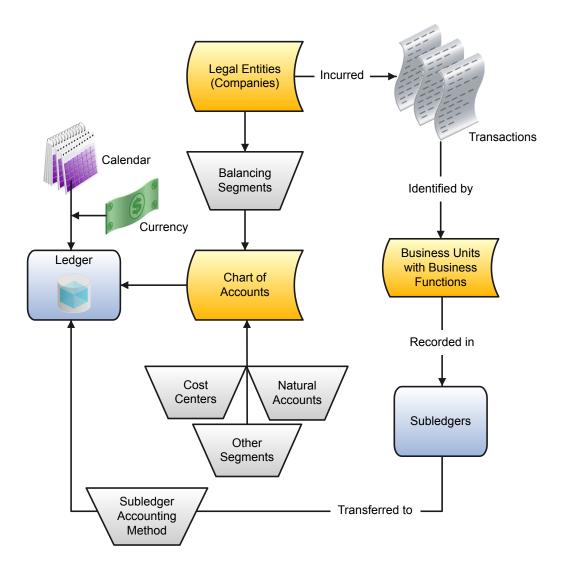
Once the sheets have been uploaded, the application creates your:

- Chart of accounts structure and instance
- Segment value hierarchies
- Key accounts such as retained earnings
- Required subledger accounts



- Calendar
- Primary ledgers by country
- Legal entities and their locations
- Business units
- Document and journal sequences

The following figure shows the relationship of these components.



- **Legal Entity**: Identifies a recognized party with rights and responsibilities given by legislation, which has the right to own property and the responsibility to account for themselves.
- **Chart of Accounts**: Configures accounts consisting of components called segments that are used to record balances and organize your financial information and reporting.
- **Segment**: Contains a value set that provides formatting and validation of the set of values used with that segment. When combined, several segments create an account combination for recording your transactions and journal entries.



- **Segment Label**: Identifies certain segments in your chart of accounts and assigns special functionality to those segments. The required segment labels are:
 - Balancing Segment: Ensures that all journals balance for each balancing segment value or combination of multiple balancing segment values to use in financial processes and reporting. The three balancing segment labels are: Primary balancing segment, Second balancing segment, and Third balancing segment. The Primary balancing segment label is required and must be the first segment in the Rapid Implementation spreadsheet.
 - Natural Account: Facilitates processes in the General Ledger application, such as retained earnings posting.
 For each child value, you must assign an Account Type. You can select from one of the general choices to mark the account value as an Asset, Liability, Owner's Equity, Revenue, or Expense account.

If the account is used by the rapid implementation solution to provide accounts for setup objects, select the appropriate Expanded Account Type value for the child account. Examples of expanded account types required for setup objects are:

- Owner's Equity Retained Earnings: To set up General Ledger ledgers.
- Liability Accounts Payable: To set up Payables common options.
- Asset Accounts Receivable: To set up Receivables receipt methods.

Accounts tagged with expanded account types are automatically assigned a financial category. You can override the default category in the Financial Category field, or leave it out.

- Cost Center: Facilitates grouping of natural accounts by functional cost types, accommodating tracking of specific business expenses across natural accounts.
- **Ledger**: Maintains the records and is a required component in your configuration. The rapid implementation process:
 - Creates your primary ledgers by combining your chart of accounts, calendar, and currency as well as other required options defined in the sheets.
 - Assigns a default value for the fourth component, which is the subledger accounting method. The subledger accounting method is used to group subledger journal entry rule sets together to define a consistent accounting treatment.
 - Note: The standard accrual method is the default subledger accounting method assigned to the primary ledger.
 - Creates a General Ledger balances cube for each ledger with a unique chart of accounts and calendar combination. Each segment is created as a dimension in the balances cube along with the standard cube dimensions.
- Business Units with Business Functions: Identifies where subledger transactions are posted and provides
 access to perform subledger business processes. When configured, business units are assigned to a primary ledger
 and a default legal entity.
- **Subledger**: Captures detailed transactional information, such as supplier invoices, customer payments, and asset acquisitions. Uses subledger accounting to transfer transactional balances to the ledger where they are posted.



- Note: Segment Value Hierarchies: You can create more than one hierarchy for any of your chart of accounts segments during initial setup. You can also create additional hierarchies after the initial setup is done by uploading the rapid implementation spreadsheet data. Document and Journal Sequences: You can create sequences for each legal entity or ledger based on the predefined country defaults. Document sequences are created for:
 - Payables invoices
 - Payments
 - Receivables invoices
 - Receivables credit memos
 - · Receivables adjustment activities

Reporting and accounting journal sequences are created for subledger journals and General Ledger journals.

Create Chart of Accounts, Ledger, Legal Entities, and Business Units in Spreadsheets: How They're Processed

The Create Chart of Accounts, Ledger, Legal Entities, and Business Units rapid implementation process consists of four steps.

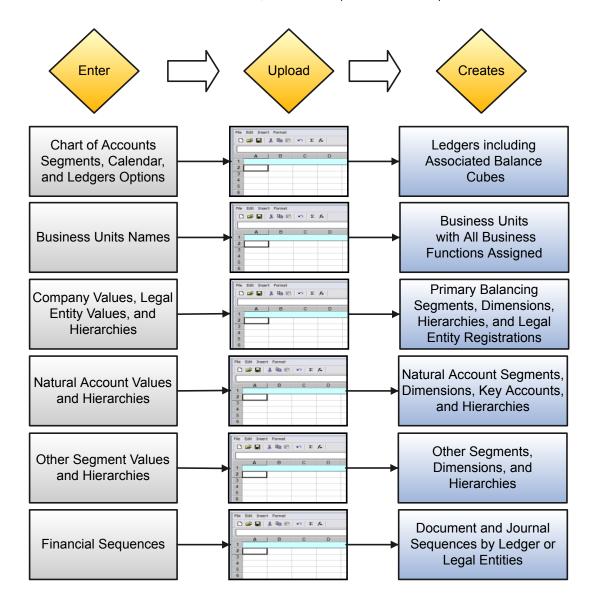
- 1. Entering data into the sheets.
- 2. Verifying the entered data and resolving the errors, if any.
- 3. Uploading the first file generated.
- 4. After successful upload of the first file, uploading the second file generated for the rest of the configuration.

Process Overview

Begin by downloading the Rapid Implementation for General Ledger workbook using the Create Chart of Accounts, Ledger, Legal Entities, and Business Units in Spreadsheet task on the Setup and Maintenance work area.



The following figure illustrates the Create Chart of Accounts, Ledger, Legal Entities, and Business Units process, what data is entered into each sheet of the workbook, and the components that the process creates.



The Rapid Implementation for General Ledger workbook includes the following sheets:

- Instructions
- · Chart of Accounts, Calendar, and Ledger
- Business Units
- Companies and Legal Entities
- Natural Accounts
- Financial Sequences



Sheets for entering other segment values and hierarchies for additional segments of your chart of accounts are created automatically by entering the segments on the Chart of Accounts, Calendar, and Ledger sheet and then clicking **Add Segment Sheets** or **Generate Additional Hierarchy** on that same sheet.

Instructions Sheet

Read the planning tips, loading process, best practices, and recommendations. Refer to the sample data worksheet to get an idea of how to enter the data and generate the required upload files.

The following figure shows the link to the sample data template on the Instructions sheet.

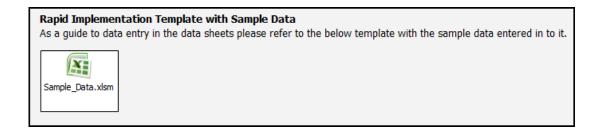
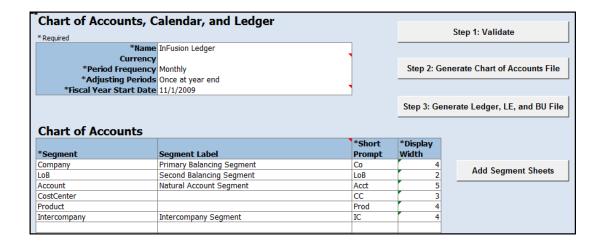


Chart of Accounts, Calendar, and Ledger Sheet

Enter the data to create your ledger, chart of accounts, currency, and calendar, and to set the required ledger options.



Name: Enter the name of your primary ledgers.

Note: A primary ledger is created for each unique country entered in the Companies and Legal Entities sheet. The country code is appended to the name you have specified to create the primary ledger. For example, if one of the legal entities is based in the United States and another in Canada, and the ledger name is InFusion Ledger, then two primary ledgers, InFusion Ledger US and InFusion Ledger CA, are created. All the primary ledgers that are created use the same chart of accounts, account hierarchies, and accounting calendar. Legal entities and their primary balancing segment values are assigned to the primary ledger of their respective countries.



- **Currency**: Enter the ledger currency in which most of your transactions are entered if you're not entering legal entity data. If you're entering legal entities, leave the field blank. The currency is supplied by default based on the country.
- Period Frequency: Select one of the available frequencies.
- Adjusting Periods: Select the number of periods that are used to enter closing, auditing, or other adjustments in the General Ledger at quarter or year end. The entries are tracked in the adjusting period and not in your monthly activity.
- **Fiscal Year Start Date**: Enter the start date of your calendar for the ledgers. The date can't be changed after the ledgers are created.
 - ▲ Caution: Select a period before the first period in which you plan to load history or perform translations to enable running translation. You can't run translation in the first defined period of a ledger calendar.
- Chart of Accounts section: Enter your segments, segment labels, short prompts, and display width data that's
 used to create your chart of accounts. Plan this data carefully because you're defining the basic structure for your
 accounting and reporting.
 - **Segment**: Enter the names of your segments.
 - **Segment Label**: Select which segment the application uses for certain processing, such as the Primary Balancing Segment, which is used to balance journal entries.
 - Note: If you select an Intercompany Segment label, you must complete at least one intercompany rule. You must also select the **Enable Intercompany Balancing** option using the Specify Ledger Options task for the Balancing API to perform intercompany balancing. Also note that the same hierarchy specified for the primary balancing segment is also used for the intercompany balancing segment automatically.
 - Note: If you plan to enable segment value security rules for the primary balancing segment, then you should not assign the Intercompany Segment label to the Intercompany segment. By default, the Rapid Implementation spreadsheet assigns the same value set to the Company and Intercompany segments if the Intercompany Segment label is assigned. If you want to use segment value security rules for the Company segment where a user can only access Company 01, that user can't transact with other companies in an intercompany transaction because segment value security rules are assigned at the value set level. What you should do instead is not assign the Intercompany Segment label to the Intercompany segment. Use the **Add Segment Sheets** button to add sheets for any unqualified segments, and assign the values directly. Obviously, you will want to assign the same values to the Company and Intercompany segments. You must then assign the Intercompany segment label to this segment by navigating to Edit Key Flexfield Segment Intercompany using the application pages to use the intercompany segment in intercompany balancing.
 - o **Short Prompt**: Enter a short name for the segment for the application to use.
 - **Display Width**: Enter the segment size. Select carefully and leave room for growth. For example, if you have 89 cost centers, enter 3 for the display length to allow for more than 100 cost centers in the future.
- Add Segment Sheets button: Select to create sheets for additional segments. Only the Company and Natural Accounts sheets are provided.

From the new segment sheet, you can click **Generate Additional Hierarchy** to create more than one hierarchy for any of your chart of account segments. This creates a worksheet and populates it with the data already entered for



that segment. Change this data as required for the new hierarchy. You can create additional hierarchies during initial setup or after the initial setup is done.

- **Step 1**: **Validate** button: Click to validate your entered data. An actionable validation report is generated if any errors occur in data entry. Correct these errors before proceeding by clicking each error on the report. Clicking the error navigates you to the exact sheet and cell on that sheet where the error can be found.
- Step 2: Generate Chart of Accounts File button: Click to create a file that is then uploaded to create the chart of accounts structures, values, and hierarchies.
- Step 3: Generate Ledger, LE, and BU File button: Click to create a file that is then uploaded to create ledgers, legal entities and their locations, business units (BU), and document and journal sequences.

Business Units Sheet

Enter the name of your business units and related default legal entities.

Business Units	
Name	Default Legal Entity Name
USA Business Unit1	VCC InFusion Cupertino Cherries
USA Business Unit2	VSCC InFusion San Carlos Chocolates
Canada Business Unit1	Infusion Core Canada Ltd.

You can enter more than one business unit per ledger. Business units are created with entered names. Based on the default legal entity entered in the Business Units sheet, the respective country's primary ledger is supplied by default for the business unit. The first legal entity that is associated with the ledger is supplied by default for all the business units of that country.

Companies and Legal Entities Sheet

Enter a list of your legal entities with their addresses, registration number, reporting unit registration number, and assigned parent or child value. You can create up to nine levels of parent values to use to roll up your legal entities to meet corporate and local reporting requirements.



The registration number identifies legal entities registered for your company and recognized in law for which you want to record and perform transactions. The reporting unit registration number identifies the lowest level component of a legal structure that requires registrations.

Companies and Legal Entities *Required Generate Additional Hierarchy						
Parent2	Parent1	Child	*Company Description	Name	*Identifier	*Country
			Total InFusion Companies			
			InFusion USA			
3800			InFusion USA Corporate Office			
		3888	InFusion USA Corporation	IFU InFusion USA Ltd.	US103111	United States
		3999	InFusion USA HQ	IFU InFusion USA Ltd.		
3100			InFusion Napa			
		3111	InFusion Marketing - US Napa	IFU InFusion USA Ltd.		
		3121	InFusion Sales -US Napa	IFU InFusion USA Ltd.		
	3200		InFusion Farms			
		3211	InFusion Growing -US	IFF InFusion Farms Ltd.	US104111	United States
		3221	InFusion Harvesting -US	IFF InFusion Farms Ltd.		

Legal Entity							
Address						*Reporting Unit	
*Address Line	City	State	County	Province	Postal Code	*Registration Number	Registration Number
14800 Main	St. Helena	CA	Napa			IF5021	IFUS31
12320 Washington	Calistoga	CA	Napa			IF5031	IFUS41

To create additional hierarchies for the company segment for reporting or other purposes, click the **Generate Additional Hierarchy** button on this sheet. This creates a worksheet and populates it with the data already entered for that segment. Change this data as required for the new hierarchy. You can create additional hierarchies during initial setup or after the initial setup is done.

- Note: For the Company segment, adding legal entity information isn't supported on the new hierarchy's sheet.
- Note: When a new hierarchy sheet is created, the name for that sheet is derived by adding a counter to the sheet name. For example, when you click **Generate Additional Hierarchy** on the Companies and Legal Entities sheet, the new sheet is named Companies and Legal Entities 1. When you click **Generate Additional Hierarchy** again, another sheet is generated with the name Companies and Legal Entities 2.



Natural Accounts Sheet

Enter your account values that are used to record the type of balance.

Generate Additional Hierarchy							
lue Parent4	Parent3	Parent2	Parent1	Child	*Description	*Account Type	Financial Category
					Net Assets	Asset	
				00000	Default	Asset	
19999					Total Assets	Asset	
	10000				Total Cash	Asset	
		11000			Total Cash- Checking	Asset	
				11010	Cash Checking - Others	Asset	
	13999				Total Receivables	Asset	
		13000			Total Current Receivables	Asset	
				13005	Accounts Receivable	Asset - Accounts Receivable	Accounts receivable

- Parent Values, Child Values and Descriptions: Enter to create segment values and build hierarchies. Child values are the postable account values. To define hierarchies, enter parent values. Hierarchies are used for chart of accounts mappings, revaluations, data access sets, cross-validation rules, and segment value security rules. The balances cube and account hierarchies are also used for financial reporting, Smart View queries, and allocations.
- **Account Type**: Enter to identify the type of account: Asset, Liability, Revenue, Expense, or Owner's Equity. Account types are used in year-end close processes and to correctly categorize your account balances for reporting.

If the account is used by the rapid implementation solution to provide accounts for setup objects, select the appropriate Expanded Account Type value for the child account. Examples of expanded account types required for setup objects are:

- o Owner's Equity Retained Earnings: To set up General Ledger ledgers.
- Liability Accounts Payable: To set up Payables common options.
- o Asset Account Receivable: To set up Receivables receipt methods.

Accounts tagged with expanded account types are automatically assigned a financial category. You can override the default category in the **Financial Category** field, or leave it out.

- Financial Category: Enter to identify groups of accounts for reporting with Oracle Transactional Business Intelligence.
- **Generate Additional Hierarchy**: To create additional hierarchies for the company segment for reporting or other purposes, click the **Generate Additional Hierarchy** button on this sheet. This creates a worksheet and populates it with the data already entered for that segment. Change this data as required for the new hierarchy. You can create additional hierarchies during initial setup or after the initial setup is done.



Financial Sequences Sheet

Enable document or journal sequences to assign unique numbers to your transactions to meet legal requirements.

Sequences		
Transactions	*Restart	*Initial Value
Payables Invoices	Annually	1
Payments	Annually	1
Receivables Invoices	Annually	1
Receivables Credit Memos	Annually	1
Receivables Adjustment Activities	Monthly	1
Subledger Journals	Never	100
General Ledger Journals	Never	100

The transactions the document sequences are created for include:

- Payables invoices
- Payments
- Receivables invoices
- Receivables credit memos
- Receivables adjustment activities

Reporting and accounting journal sequences are created for:

- Subledger journals
- General Ledger journals

Complete the following steps on the Sequences sheet:

- 1. **Restart**: Set to restart the numbering based on one of the following criteria:
 - o **Annually**: Restart sequence numbers once a year.
 - o Monthly: Restart sequence numbers each month.
 - **Never**: Never restart sequences numbers. Continue with the same sequence.
- 2. Initial Value: The beginning number in the sequence.

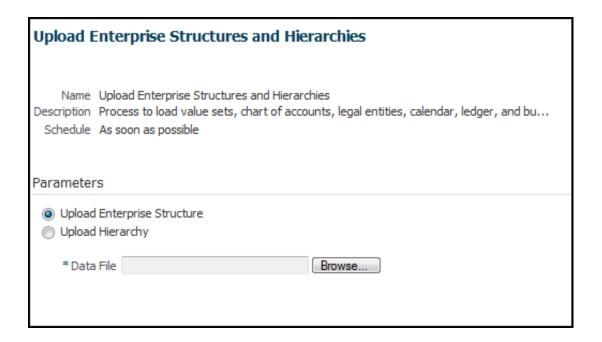
Upload the Sheets

After you complete the other sheets, return to the Chart of Accounts, Calendar, and Ledger sheet and perform the following steps:

- 1. Click Step 1: Validate. The process validates your data entry. Ensure the validation report has no errors.
- 2. Click **Step 2**: **Generate Chart of Accounts File**. The process generates a data file called ChartOfAccounts.xml with the entered chart of accounts and hierarchies setup data. Save the file to a network or local drive.
- 3. Click **Step 3**: **Generate Ledger**, **LE**, **and BU File**. The process generates a data file called FinancialsCommonEntities.xml with the entered ledger, legal entities, and business unit setup data. Save the file to a network or local drive.



- **4.** Navigate to the Setup and Maintenance work area. Search for and select the **Upload Chart of Accounts** task. The Upload Enterprise Structures and Hierarchies process is launched.
- 5. Accept the default selection of the **Upload Enterprise Structure** option.



- 6. Click **Browse** and select the first file that you saved called ChartOfAccounts.xml.
- 7. Click Submit.
- 8. Verify that the process completed without errors or warnings.
- Navigate to the Setup and Maintenance work area. Search for and select the Upload Ledger, Legal Entities, and Business Units task. The Upload Enterprise Structures and Hierarchies process is launched.
- 10. Accept the default selection of the Upload Enterprise Structure option.
- 11. Click **Browse** and select the second file that you saved called FinancialsCommonEntities.xml.
- 12. Click Submit.
- **13.** Verify that the process completed without errors or warnings.
 - ▼ Tip: You can't change the chart of accounts, accounting calendar, or currency for your ledgers after the setup is created. Open the first accounting period to begin entering data with a user that has proper access to the newly-created primary ledger.

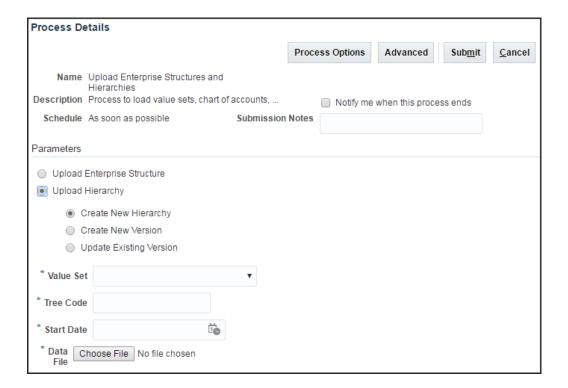
Create Additional Hierarchies After Initial Setup

To create more than one hierarchy for any of your chart of account segments after the initial enterprise structure setup:

- 1. Click the **Generate Additional Hierarchy** button on the segment's sheet for which you want to create the additional tree or tree version. This creates a new worksheet and populates the sheet with the data already entered for that segment. Change the data as required for the new hierarchy.
- 2. To create the hierarchy based on the data in the particular sheet in context only, click the **Generate File for This Hierarchy Only** button. This generates a .zip file for the particular hierarchy. Perform the following steps to either create a new tree or a new version for an existing tree for the particular segment.
- 3. Navigate to the Setup and Maintenance work area. Search for and select the **Upload Chart of Accounts** task. The Upload Enterprise Structures and Hierarchies process is launched.



4. Select the **Upload Hierarchy** option.



- 5. Select to either create a hierarchy or tree version as per your requirement.
- 6. Specify the required parameters.
- 7. Click **Choose File** and select the .zip file that you saved earlier.
- 8. Click Submit.

Related Topics

• Create Hierarchies in a Spreadsheet: Example

Creating One Chart of Accounts Structure with Many Instances: Example

In Oracle Fusion General Ledger, the chart of accounts model is framed around the concept of a chart of accounts structure, under which one or more chart of accounts structure instances can be created.

Scenario

Your company, InFusion Corporation, is a multinational conglomerate that operates in the United States (US) and the United Kingdom (UK). InFusion has purchased an Oracle Fusion enterprise resource planning (ERP) solution including Oracle Fusion General Ledger and all of the Oracle Fusion subledgers. You are chairing a committee to discuss creation of a model for your global financial reporting structure including your charts of accounts for both your US and UK operations.



InFusion Corporation

InFusion Corporation has 400 plus employees and revenue of \$120 million. Your product line includes all the components to build and maintain air quality monitoring (AQM) systems for homes and businesses.

Analysis

In Oracle Fusion General Ledger, the chart of accounts model is framed around the concept of a chart of accounts structure, under which one or more chart of accounts structure instances can be created.

Chart of Accounts Model

The chart of accounts structure provides the general outline of the chart of accounts and determines the number of segments, the type, the length, and the label (qualifier) of each segment. This forms the foundation of the chart of accounts definition object.

For each chart of accounts structure, it is possible to associate one or more chart of accounts structure instances. Chart of accounts structure instances under the same structure share a common configuration with the same segments, in the same order, and the same characteristics. Using one chart of accounts structure with multiple instances simplifies your accounting and reporting.

At the chart of accounts structure instance level, each segment is associated with a value set that conforms to the characteristic of that segment. For example, you assign a value set with the same segment type and length to each segment. You are using hierarchies with your chart of accounts segments. Each structure instance segment is assigned a tree code to indicate the source of the hierarchy information for the associated value set. The same value set can be used multiple times within the same or across different chart of accounts instances within the same structure or in different structures. This functionality reduces your segment value creation and maintenance across your charts of accounts.

The collective assignment of value sets to each of the segments forms one chart of accounts instance. At the chart of accounts structure instance level, you can select to enable dynamic insertion. Dynamic insertion allows the creation of account code combinations automatically the first time your users enter that new account combination. The alternative is to create them manually. By deciding to enable dynamic insertion, you save data entry time and prevent delays caused by the manual creation of new code combinations. Well defined cross validation rules help prevent the creation of inappropriate account code combinations.

Perform deployment after a new chart of accounts structure and structure instances are defined or any of their modifiable attributes are updated. Deployment validates and regenerates the necessary objects to enable your charts of accounts and chart of accounts structure instances. By unifying and standardizing you organization's chart of accounts, you are positioned to take full advantage of future functionality in Oracle Fusion General Ledger.

In summary, you are recommending to your company to unify the organization's chart of accounts in a single chart of accounts structure based on chart of accounts commonalities across ledgers. You have also decided to use the chart of accounts structure instance construct to serve different accounting and reporting requirements by using value sets specific to each of your entities.

Creating Chart of Accounts Structure and Instances: Examples

In Oracle Fusion General Ledger, the chart of accounts model is framed around the concept of a chart of accounts structure, under which one or more chart of accounts structure instances can be created. A chart of accounts structure defines the key attributes for your chart of accounts, such as the number of segments, the segment sequences, the segment names, segment prompts, segment labels, for example natural account and primary balancing, and default value sets.



The chart of accounts instance is exposed in the user interfaces and processes. By default, a chart of accounts instance inherits all the attributes of the chart of accounts structure, meaning that all instances of the same structure share a common shape and have the same segments in the same order. However, at the chart of accounts instance level, you can override the default value set assignments for your segments and assign a unique account hierarchy that determines the parent and child relationships between the value set values. At the chart of accounts instance level, determine if allow dynamic insertion is enabled to generate new account combinations dynamically instead of creating them manually.

Chart of Account Structure

You are creating a chart of accounts structure as you setup your chart of accounts for your enterprise, InFusion America, Inc. Follow these steps:

- 1. Navigator > Setup and Maintenance > Manage Chart of Accounts > Go To Task.
- 2. Select **General Ledger** from the Module list of values and click **Search**.
- 3. Click Manage Structures to open the Manage Key Flexfield Structures page.
- 4. Select the **General Ledger** row and click the **Create** to open the **Create Key Flexfield Structure** page.
- 5. Enter a unique Structure Code, INFUSION_AM_COA_STRUCTURE, and Name, InFusion America COA Structure. Provide an optional Description, InFusion America Inc. Chart of Accounts Structure.
- 6. Select the Delimiter to visually separate your segment values.
- **7.** Save.
- 8. To create a new segment, click the **Create** to open the **Create Key Flexfield Segment** page.
 - **a.** Enter the following parameters:

Parameter	Value
Segment Code	INFUSION_AM_CO
Name	InFusion America Company
Description	InFusion America Inc.
Sequence Number	1
Prompt	Company
Short Prompt	CO
Display Width	2
Column Name	Segment1
Default Value Set Code	INFUSION_ AM_COMPANY

- **b.** Select a segment label, **Primary Balancing Segment**, to indicate its purpose within your chart of accounts.
 - ✓ Note: Two segment labels are required: primary balancing segment and natural account segment. These labels are not used with each other or with other labels in a specific segment.
- c. Save and Close.



- d. Done.
- e. Define additional segments following the same process.

Chart of Account Instance

You are creating a chart of accounts instance as you setup your chart of accounts for your enterprise, InFusion America, Inc. Follow these steps:

- 1. Navigator > Setup and Maintenance > Manage Chart of Accounts > Go To Task.
- 2. Select **General Ledger** from the Module list of values and click **Search**.
- 3. Select the General Ledger row and click Manage Structure Instances to open the Manage Key Flexfield Structure Instance page.
- 4. Click the Create icon to open the Create Key Flexfield Structure Instance page.
- 5. Enter a unique Structure Instance Code, INFUSION_AM_COA_INSTANCE, and Name, InFusion America COA Instance. Provide an optional Description, InFusion America Inc. Chart of Accounts Structure Instance.
- **6.** Select **Dynamic combination creation allowed** to indicate that you want to dynamically generate account combinations.
- 7. Associate your instance with your Structure Name, InFusion America Structure.
 - Note: By default, an instance inherits the key attributes of the associated structure. Some attributes, such as the value set assigned to each the segment, can be modified.
- 8. Save.
- 9. Optionally, select the segment row and click **Edit** to modify instance segments.
- 10. Check Required, Displayed, and BI enabled check boxes.
 - Note: Check the Required and Displayed options for all segments including those intended for future use. The recommended best practice is to define one segment for future use and set a default value. This ensures room for expansion in your chart of accounts and that the extra segment is populated in the account combinations. Check the BI (Business Intelligence) enabled option to use key flexfield segments in Oracle Fusion Transactional Business Intelligence. The business intelligence check box is only valid when enabled on segments with segment labels. The second step is to populate the BI Object Name field for each of the segment labels in the Manage Segment Label page opened from the Manage Key Flexfields page.
- 11. OK.
- 12. Save and Close.
- **13.** Define additional instances following the same process.
 - Note: Alternatively, proceed directly with creating your value set values by selecting the corresponding Value Set Code in the Segment Instances table.
- 14. Done.
- 15. Deploy Flexfield.
- 16. OK.

Related Topics

Enabling Key Flexfield Segments for Business Intelligence: Points to Consider



Balancing Segments: Explained

Balancing segments ensure that all journals balance for each balancing segment value or combination of multiple balancing segment values. You can secure access to your primary balancing segment values only with data access sets. The General Ledger application automatically calculates and creates balancing lines as required in journal entries.

The three balancing segment labels are:

- Primary
- Second
- Third
- Note: The primary balancing segment label is required.

By enabling multiple balancing segments for your chart of accounts, you can produce financial statements for each unique combination of segment values across one, two, or three qualified balancing segments. This ability provides you greater insights into your operations as it affords you visibility along the critical fiscal dimensions you use to plan, monitor, and measure your financial performance.

The following explains processes that use balancing segments.

- Intercompany balancing: Adds lines to unbalanced journals using intercompany rules.
- Opening first period of the accounting year: Calculates retained earnings amounts at the level of granularity that
 totals revenue and expense account balances for multiple balancing segment value combinations. This applies to
 standard and average balances.
- Importing journals: Adds lines using the suspense account on unbalanced journals.
- Posting journals: Adds additional lines to unbalanced journals for the following enabled account types:
 - Suspense
 - Rounding
 - Net income
 - Retained earnings
 - Cumulative translation adjustments from replication of revaluation journals to reporting currencies and for multiple reporting currency account type specific conversion
- Posting prior period journals: Calculates any income statement impact and posts to the appropriate retained earnings account.
- Translating balances: Supports multiple balancing segments for the following accounts:
 - Retained earnings: Calculated translated retained earnings are post to the retained earnings accounts by balancing segment. Retained earnings accounts represent the summing of the translated revenue and expense accounts across multiple balancing segment values.
 - Cumulative translation adjustment: Amounts posted by balancing segment to these accounts represents currency fluctuation differences between ranges of accounts which use different rate types. For example, period end rates are used for asset and liability accounts and historical rates for equity accounts.
- Revaluing Balances: Supports multiple balancing segments when calculating gain or loss accounts.
- Creating Opening Balances: Initializes reporting currency balances by converting from the total primary currency. Any
 difference in the reporting currency amounts is offset by populating retained earnings accounts.



• Closing year end: Supports multiple balancing segments when calculating the income statement offset and closing account in the closing journals.

Multiple Balancing Segments: Points to Consider

Oracle Fusion General Ledger supports tracking financial results at a finer level of granularity than a single balancing segment. In addition to the required primary balancing segment for the chart of accounts, which is typically associated with the company dimension of a business organization, two additional segments of the chart of accounts can be optionally qualified as the second and third balancing segments respectively. Possible chart of accounts segments that can be tagged as these additional balancing segments include cost center or department, additional aspects of a business commonly used in measuring financial results.

Several points must be consider when using multiple balancing segments:

- Journal entry processing
- Implementation timing
- Change options
- Migration adjustments

Journal Entry Processing

Multiple balancing segments ensure that account balances come from journal entries where the debits equal the credits. The financial reports are properly generated for each unique instance of account value combinations across the balancing segments. Consider this option carefully as it provides more granular reporting but requires more processing resources.

Implementation Timing

When using optional second and third balancing segments, remember that these chart of accounts segment labels are set from the beginning of time. Ensure that balances are immediately maintained in accordance with the necessary balancing actions to produce consistent financial reporting for the wanted business dimensions. Multiple balancing segment ledgers that are not maintained from the beginning of time, require extensive manual balance adjustments to catch up and realign the balances.

Note: Do not set a segment already qualified as a natural account or intercompany segment as any of the three balancing segments. Validations are not performed when segment labels are assigned, so verify that all are assigned correctly before using your chart of accounts.

Change Options

Once a segment has been enabled and designated as a balancing segment, you must not change the segment. Do not disable the segment or remove the segment labels. These settings must be consistently maintained throughout the life of the chart of accounts to control the accuracy and integrity of the financial data.

Migration Adjustments

For charts of accounts migrated from Oracle E-Business Suite to Oracle Fusion General Ledger that uses a second and third balance segments, steps must be taken to ensure the proper transition. The required adjustments are extensive.

For ledgers associated with a migrated chart of accounts, the balances must be adjusted manually. The manual adjustment is to ensure that the second and third balancing segments are consistent as though these segment labels have been in place



since the beginning of entries for these ledgers. Recomputing and updating of the following processes is required to reflect the correct balancing for each account using the second and third balancing segments.

- Intercompany balancing
- Suspense posting
- · Rounding imbalance adjustments on posting
- Entered currency balancing
- Revaluation gains or losses
- Retained earnings calculations at the opening of each new fiscal year
- Cumulative translation adjustments during translation
- Note: All previously translated balances must also be purged. New translations must be run to properly account for translated retained earnings and cumulative translation adjustments with the correct level of balancing.

Related Topics

• How can I change segments in an existing chart of accounts structure?

Using Multiple Balancing Segments: Example

This simple example illustrates balancing along two balancing segments for a simple chart of accounts with three segments.

Scenario

Your company has a chart of accounts with two balancing segments and three segments, qualified as follows:

- · Company: Primary balancing segment
- Cost Center: Second balancing segment
- Account: Natural account segment

The following multiple company and cost center journal transfers advertising and phone expense from Company 1, Cost Center A to Company 2, Cost Center B.

Account	Debit	Credit
Company 1-Cost Center A-Advertising Expense Account	600	
Company 2-Cost Center B-Advertising Expense Account		600
Company 1-Cost Center A-Phone Expense Account	800	
Company 2-Cost Center B-Phone Expense Account		800



During the posting process, the last four lines are created to balance the entry across the primary and second balancing segments, company and cost center.

Account	Debit	Credit
Company 1-Cost Center A-Advertising Expense Account	600	
Company 2-Cost Center B-Advertising Expense Account		600
Company 1-Cost Center A-Phone Expense Account	800	
Company 2-Cost Center B-Phone Expense Account		800
Company 1-Cost Center A-Balancing Account		600
Company 2-Cost Center B-Balancing Account	600	
Company 1-Cost Center A-Balancing Account		800
Company 2-Cost Center B-Balancing Account	800	

FAQs for Manage Charts of Accounts Structures and Structure Instances

How can I use future accounting segments?

To plan for future growth in the business organization that requires additional segments in the chart of accounts. Extra segments can be added to the chart of accounts structure during your original implementation. All segments of the chart of accounts are required and have to be enabled. The unused segments can be assigned value sets that have a single value in the chart of accounts structure instance. The value is set as a default for that segment so that the extra segments are automatically populated when an account account combination is used.

Define Chart of Accounts for Enterprise Structures: Manage Chart of Accounts Value Sets and Value Set Values



Chart of Accounts Values Sets: Critical Choices

A value set is the collection of account values that are associated with a segment of a chart of accounts structure instance. When creating values sets, consider the following critical choices:

- Module Designation
- Validation Type
- Format Assignments
- Security Rules
- Values Definition

Module Designation

The module designation is used to tag value sets in Oracle Fusion Applications and sets the value sets apart during upgrades and other processes. Chart of accounts value sets upgraded from Oracle E-Business Suite Release 12 generically bear the module value of **Oracle Fusion Middleware**. When creating value sets for a chart of accounts, the module can be specified as **Oracle Fusion General Ledger** to distinctly identify its intended use in an accounting flexfield, basically a chart of accounts.

Validation Type

Assign one of the following validation types to chart of accounts value sets:

- **Independent**: The values are independently selected when filling out the segment in the account combination.
- **Table Validated**: The values are stored in an external table to facilitate maintenance and sharing of the reference data.

▲ Caution: You must use Independent validation only for the Accounting Key Flexfield value sets. Other validations prevent you from using the full chart of accounts functionality, such as data security, reporting, and account hierarchy integration. Dependent values sets are not supported.

Format Assignments

Value sets for chart of accounts must use the **Value Data Type** of **Character**. The **Value Subtype** is set to **Text**. These two setting support values that are both numbers and characters, which are typical in natural account segment values. Set the maximum length of the value set to correspond to the length of the chart of accounts segment to which it is assigned. Best practices recommend restricting values to **Upper Case Only** or **Numeric** values that are zero filled by default.

Security Rules

If flexfield data security rules are to be applied to the chart of accounts segment associated with the value set, the **Enable Security** check box must be checked for the assigned value set. In addition, assign a data security resource name to enable creation of a data security object automatically for the value set. The data security object is used in the definition of flexfield data security rules.

Value Definition

Once these basic characteristic are defined for the value set, values can be added to the set in the Manage Values page.

- Set the values to conform to the value set length and type.
- Enter the value, its description, and its attributes including the **Enable** check box, **Start Date**, and **End Date**.
- Assign the following attributes: Parent or Summary check box, Posting is allowed, and Budgeting is allowed.



Note: If the value set is used with a natural account segment, the value also requires you set the Natural Account Type, with one of the following values: Asset, Liability, Equity, Revenue, or Expense. Other attributes used are Third-Party Control Account, Reconciliation indicator, and Financial Category used with Oracle Transaction Business Intelligence reporting. Oracle Fusion General Ledger best practice is to define the values for the value set after the value set is assigned to a chart of accounts structure instance. Otherwise you are not able to define the mandatory value attributes, such as summary flag, posting allowed, and account type for natural account segment. The attributes must be added after the value set is assigned to a chart of accounts structure instance.

Creating a Value Set for Your Chart of Accounts: Example

Create your value sets before creating your chart of accounts. A value set can be shared by different charts of accounts or across different segments of the same chart of accounts.

Scenario

You are creating a company value set to be used in your chart of accounts for your enterprise, InFusion America, Inc. Follow these steps:

- 1. Navigator > Setup and Maintenance > Manage Chart of Accounts Value Sets > Go to Task.
- 2. Click the **Create** icon on the toolbar of the Search Results table. The **Create Value Set** page opens.
- 3. Enter a unique Value Set Code, InFusion America Company, and an optional Description, Company values for InFusion America Inc.
- 4. Select General Ledger from the list in the Module field.
- 5. Select **Independent** as Validation Type.
 - Note: You must use Independent validation only for the Accounting Key Flexfield value sets. Other validations prevent you from using the full chart of accounts functionality, such as data security, reporting, and account hierarchy integration. Dependent values sets are not supported.
- 6. Select Character as the Validation Data Type.
- 7. Save and Close.

Configuring Chart of Account Segment for Business Intelligence: Explained

To map the Oracle Fusion General Ledger Accounting Flexfield in Oracle Fusion Transaction Business Intelligence (BI) Repository file (RPD) for Oracle Fusion Financials, populate values in the Manage Key Flexfields user interface. These values enable the chart of accounts segments for Oracle Fusion Transactional BI. The values also provide the mapping with BI Object names that are used as dimensions for each of the chart of accounts segments.

Check each of the Chart of Accounts segments' BI enabled check box on all segments that you intend to map in the RPD:

- From your implementation project or the Setup and Maintenance page, query for Manage Key Flexfields > Go to Task.
- 2. Enter GL# in the **Key Flexfield Code**.
- 3. Search.



- 4. Click on Manage Structure Instances.
- 5. Search.
- 6. Click on the specific chart of accounts and Edit icon.
- 7. Click on the specific segment and the **Edit** icon.
- 8. Check the BI enabled check box.
- Save. This should be done for all segments in every Chart of Accounts Structure Instance that you intend to be mapped in the RPD.
- 10. Save and Close > Done.

Populate the **BI Object Name** for each of the **Segment Labels**. This name is the logical table name in the RPD which would be used as the dimension for the corresponding segment. Perform the following steps:

- From your implementation project or the Setup and Maintenance page, query for Manage Key Flexfields > Go to Task.
- 2. Enter GL# in the **Key Flexfield Code**.
- 3. Query for GL# as **Key Flexfield Code** in **Manage Key Flexfields** page.
- 4. Search.
- 5. Actions menu and click on Manage Segment Labels.
- 6. Populate the **BI Object Name** for all the segment labels that must be mapped in the RPD.

Segment Label Code	Bl Object Name
FA_COST_CTR	Dim - Cost Center
GL_BALANCING	Dim - Balancing Segment
GL_ACCOUNT	Dim - Natural Account Segment

7. Save.

- Note: For all the nonqualified segment labels, the BI Object Name should be populated with one of the following:
- Dim GL Segment1
- Dim GL Segment2
- Dim GL Segment3
- Dim GL Segment4
- Dim GL Segment5
- Dim GL Segment6
- Dim GL Segment7
- Dim GL Segment8
- Dim GL Segment9
- Dim GL Segment10

Deploy the flexfield using the **Deploy Flexfield** button from **Manage Key Flexfields** page. For more information about extending both key and descriptive flexfields into Oracle Fusion Transactional BI, refer to Oracle Fusion Transactional Business Intelligence Administrator's Guide.



Define Chart of Accounts for Enterprise Structures: Manage Accounting Calendars

Defining Accounting Calendars: Critical Choices

Define an accounting calendar to create your accounting year and the periods it contains. Specify common calendar options that the application uses to automatically generate a calendar with its periods. Specifying all the options makes defining a correct calendar easier and more intuitive with fewer errors. The choices you make when specifying the following options are critical, because it is difficult to change your accounting calendar after a period status is set to open or future enterable.

- Budgetary control only
- Start Date
- Period Frequency
- Adjusting Period Frequency
- Period Name Format
- Note: In Oracle Fusion, the common calendar types, monthly, weekly, 4-4-5, 4-5-4, 5-4-4, 4-week, quarterly, and yearly, are automatically generated. This functionality makes it easier to create and maintain accounting calendars. By using the period frequency option, you no longer have to go through the tedious task of defining each period manually.

Budgetary Control Only Check Box

Select the check box for Budgetary control only to use the calendar for budgetary control only. Budgetary Control refers to the group of system options and the validation process of determining which transactions are subject to validation against budgets and budget consumption to prevent overspending.

Start Date

If you plan to run translation, specify a calendar start date that is a full year before the start date of the year of the first translation period for your ledger. Translation cannot be run in the first period of a calendar. Consider how many years of history you are going to load from your previous system and back up the start date for those years plus one more. You cannot add previous years once the first calendar period has been opened.

Period Frequency

Use period frequency to set the interval for each subsequent period to occur, for example, monthly, quarterly, or yearly. If you select the period frequency of Other, by default, the application generates the period names, year, and quarter number. You specify the start and end dates. You must manually enter the period information. For example, select the period frequency of Other and enter 52 as the number of periods when you want to define a weekly calendar. For manually entered calendars, when you click the **Add Year** button, the application creates a blank year. Then, you must manually enter the periods for the new year. The online validation helps prevent erroneous entries.

If the year has been defined and validated, use the **Add Year** button to add the next year quickly. Accept or change the new rows as required. For example, with the Other frequency type calendar, dates may differ from what the application generates.



Note: In Oracle Fusion applications a calendar can only have one period frequency and period type. Therefore, if you have an existing calendar with more than one period type associated with it, during the upgrade from Oracle E-Business Suite, separate calendars are created based on each calendar name and period type combination.

Adjusting Period Frequency

Use the adjusting period frequency to control when the application creates adjusting periods. For example, some of the frequencies you select add one adjusting period at year end, two at year end, or one at the end of each quarter. The default is None which adds no adjusting periods. If you select the frequency of Other, the **Number of Adjusting Periods** field is displayed. Enter the number of desired adjusting periods and then, manually define them.

Period Name Format Region

In the Period Name Format region enter the following fields:

- **User-Defined Prefix**: An optional feature that allows you to enter your own prefix. For example, define a weekly calendar and then enter a prefix of Week, as the separator, and the period name format of Period numberYY fiscal year. The application creates the names of Week1-11, Week2-11, through Week52-11.
- **Format**: A predefined list of values filtered on the selected separator and only displays the options that match the selected separator.
- **Year**: The year displayed in the period names is based on the selected period name format and the dates the period covers or if the period crosses years, on the year of the start date of the period.
 - For example, April 10, 2010 to May 9, 2010 has the period name of Apr-10 and December 10, 2010 to January 9, 2011 has the name of Dec-10.
 - o If period frequency is Other, then the period format region is hidden. The application generates a temporary period name for calendars with period frequency of Other, using a fixed format of Period numberYY. You can override this format with your own customized period names.
- Note: For an accounting calendar that is associated with a ledger, changing period names or adding a year updates the accounting period dimension in the balances cubes.

Calendar Validation: How It Works with the Accounting Calendar

Calendar validation is automatic and prevents serious problems when you begin using the calendar. Once you set a calendar period status to open or future enterable, you cannot edit the period.

Settings That Affect Calendar Validation

The calendar validation runs automatically when you save the calendar.

How the Calendar Is Validated

The following table lists the validation checks performed when the accounting calendar is saved.

Validation Performed	Example of Data
Unique period number	2 assigned for two periods



Example of Data
Jan-11 entered twice
13 for a 12 period calendar with no adjusting periods
Jan 11
Jan '11
01-Jan-2011 to 31-Jan-2011 and 30-Jan-2011 to 28-Feb-2011
01-Jan-2011 to 28-Jan-2011 and 31-Jan-2011 to 28-Feb-2011
Periods 1 through 6 defined for a twelve month calendar
1, 3, 5
Period 1 covers 01-Jan-2011 to 31-Jan-2011 and period 2 covers 01-Mar-2011 to 31-Mar-2011, and period 3 covers 01-Feb-2011 to 28-Feb-2011.
1, 3, 4
1, 3, 2, 4
July 1, 2010 in a 2012 calendar

FAQs for Manage Accounting Calendars

How can I identify errors in my accounting calendar?

Oracle Fusion General Ledger identifies erroneous entries online as you enter a new calendar or change data on an existing calendar. The application also automatically validates the data when you save the calendar.

What's the difference between calendar and fiscal period naming?

The period naming format determines the year that is appended to the prefix for each period in the calendar. For the example, your accounting year has a set of twelve accounting period with:

- Start date of September 1, 2014.
- End date is August 31, 2015.
- Period's date range following the natural calendar month date range.



Calendar period naming format: Select the calendar period format to append the period's start date's year to the prefix. For the period covering September 1, 2014 to December 31, 2014, then 2014 or just 14, depending on the period format selected, is appended to each period's name. For the remaining periods covering January 1, 2015 to August 31, 2015, then 2015 or 15, is appended to each period's name.

Fiscal period naming format: Select the fiscal period format to always append the period's year assignment to the prefix. If the accounting periods in the set of twelve are all assigned the year of 2015, then 2015 or just 15, depending on the period format selected, is appended to the period name of all 12 periods.

When do I update an existing calendar?

Update an existing calendar before the new periods are needed as future periods, based on the future period setting in your accounting configuration. If a complete year has been defined and validated, use the **Add Year** button to add the next year quickly. Accept or change the new rows as required. For example, with the Other frequency type calendar, dates may differ from what the application generates.

What happens if I upgrade my calendar from Oracle E-Business Suite Release 12?

The migration script assigns a period frequency that most closely matches your Oracle E-Business Suite Release 12 calendar. When you use the Oracle Fusion applications Add Year functionality for the first time, you have an opportunity to review and change the period frequency. The Calendar Options page opens only for calendars upgraded from Release 12 to allow one time modification.

Make your changes to the period frequency, adjusting period frequency, and period name format, including the prefix and separator, as needed. Changes can not conflict with the existing upgraded calendar definition. Update the calendar name and description in the calendar header, as needed, for all calendars. Period details for a new year will be generated automatically based on the latest calendar options. You can also manually update the calendar. The modified calendar options affect future years only.

Define Accounting Configurations of Enterprise Structures: Manage Primary or Secondary Ledgers

Accounting Configuration Offerings: Overview

The Setup and Maintenance work area in the Oracle Fusion Applications is used to manage the configuration of legal entities, ledgers, and reporting currencies. To create a legal entity or ledger, first create an implementation project. This implementation project can be populated by either adding a financials related offering or one or more task lists.

Note: Setup tasks that are not related to the ledger or legal entity setup tasks are opened from either an implementation project or directly from the Setup and Maintenance work area.

The financial applications have two predefined implementations:

- The Oracle Fusion Accounting Hub offering: Used to add the Oracle Fusion General Ledger and Oracle Fusion Subledger Accounting application features to an existing enterprise resource planning (ERP) system to enhance the reporting and analysis.
- The Oracle Fusion Financials offering includes the Oracle Fusion General Ledger and Oracle Fusion Subledger Accounting application features and one or more subledger financial applications.



When adding an offering to an implementation project, customize the tasks displayed by adding additional tasks.

Related Topics

- What's an implementation project?
- What's a functional area?
- What's an offering?

Ledgers and Subledgers: Explained

Oracle Fusion Applications reflect the traditional segregation between the general ledger and associated subledgers. Detailed transactional information is captured in the subledgers and periodically imported and posted in summary or detail to the ledger.

A ledger determines the currency, chart of accounts, accounting calendar, ledger processing options, and accounting method for its associated subledgers. Each accounting setup requires a primary ledger and optionally, one or more secondary ledgers and reporting currencies. Reporting currencies are associated with either a primary or secondary ledger.

The number of ledgers and subledgers is unlimited and determined by your business structure and reporting requirements.

Single Ledger

If your subsidiaries all share the same ledger with the parent company or they share the same chart of accounts and calendar, and all reside on the same applications instance, you can consolidate financial results in Oracle Fusion General Ledger in a single ledger. Use Oracle Fusion Financial Reporting functionality to produce individual entity reports by balancing segments. General Ledger has three balancing segments that can be combined to provide detailed reporting for each legal entity and then rolled up to provide consolidated financial statements.

Multiple Ledgers

Accounting operations using multiple ledgers can include single or multiple applications instances. You need multiple ledgers if one of the following is true:

- You have companies that require different account structures to record information about transactions and balances.
 For example, one company may require a six-segment account, while another needs only a three-segment account structure.
- You have companies that use different accounting calendars. For example, although companies may share fiscal
 year calendars, your retail operations require a weekly calendar, and a monthly calendar is required for your
 corporate headquarters.
- You have companies that require different functional currencies. Consider the business activities and reporting
 requirements of each company. If you must present financial statements in another country and currency, consider
 the accounting principles to which you must adhere.

Subledgers

Oracle Fusion Subledgers capture detailed transactional information, such as supplier invoices, customer payments, and asset acquisitions. Oracle Fusion Subledger Accounting is an open and flexible application that defines the accounting rules, generates detailed journal entries for these subledger transactions, and posts these entries to the general ledger with flexible summarization options to provide a clear audit trail.



Ledgers: Points to Consider

Companies account for themselves in primary ledgers, and, if necessary, secondary ledgers and reporting currencies. Transactions from your subledgers are posted to your primary ledgers and possibly, secondary ledgers or reporting currencies based on balance, subledger, or journal level settings. Local and corporate compliance can be achieved through an optional secondary ledger. Provide an alternate accounting method, or in some cases, a different chart of accounts. Your subsidiary's primary and secondary ledgers can both be maintained in your local currency. You can convert your local currency to your parent's ledger currency to report your consolidated financial results using reporting currencies or translation.

Primary Ledgers

A primary ledger:

- Is the main record-keeping ledger.
- Records transactional balances by using a chart of accounts with a consistent calendar and currency, and accounting rules implemented in an accounting method..
- Is closely associated with the subledger transactions and provides context and accounting for them.

To determine the number of primary ledgers, your enterprise structure analysis must begin with your financial, legal, and management reporting requirements. For example, if your company has separate subsidiaries in several countries worldwide, enable reporting for each country's legal authorities by creating multiple primary ledgers that represent each country with the local currency, chart of accounts, calendar, and accounting method. Use reporting currencies linked to your country-specific primary ledgers to report to your parent company from your foreign subsidiaries. Other considerations that affect the number of primary ledgers required are:

- Corporate year end
- Ownership percentages
- Local government regulations and taxation
- Secondary ledgers

Secondary Ledgers

A secondary ledger:

- Is an optional ledger linked to a primary ledger for the purpose of tracking alternative accounting.
- Can differ from its primary ledger by using a different accounting method, chart of accounts, accounting calendar, currency, or processing options.

When you set up a secondary ledger using the Manage Secondary Ledger task, you select a data conversion level. The data conversion level determines what level of information is copied to the secondary ledger. You can select one of the following levels: **Balance**, **Journal**, **Subledger**, or **Adjustment Only**.

- **Balance**: When you run the Transfer Balances to Secondary Ledger process, balances are transferred from the primary ledger to the secondary ledger.
- Journal: When you post journals in the primary ledger, the posting process copies the journals to the secondary ledger for the sources and categories that you specify in the Journal Conversion Rules section on the Map Primary to Secondary Ledger page.



In the Journal Conversion Rules section, you can do one of the following:

- Accept the default setting of Yes for the journal source and category combination of Other, and then specify
 the source and category combinations to exclude from the conversion.
- Set the journal source and category combination of **Other** to **No**, and then specify the source and category combinations to include in the conversion.
- **Subledger**: When you generate accounting in the primary ledger, the Create Accounting process produces accounting for both the primary and secondary ledgers. When you post journals in the primary ledger, the posting process copies the journals to the secondary ledger for the sources and categories that you specify in the Journal Conversion Rules section on the Map Primary to Secondary Ledger page.
 - ▲ Caution: Ensure you have journal conversion rules that exclude your subledgers, otherwise your subledger data is copied to the secondary ledger twice, once by the Create Accounting process, and once by posting.
- Adjustment Only: This level is an incomplete accounting representation that holds only adjustments. The
 adjustments can be manual adjustments or automated adjustments from subledger accounting. This type of
 secondary ledger must share the same chart of accounts, accounting calendar, period type, and currency as the
 associated primary ledger.
- Tip: To obtain a complete secondary accounting representation that includes both transactional data and adjustments, use ledger sets to combine the ledgers when running reports.

Example

Your primary ledger uses US Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP) and you maintain a secondary ledger for International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) accounting requirements. You first decide to use the subledger conversion level for the IFRS secondary ledger. However, since most of the accounting between US GAAP and IFRS is identical, the adjustment only level is the better solution for the secondary ledger. The subledger level requires duplication of most subledger and general ledger journal entries and general ledger balances. The adjustment only level transfers only the adjustment journal entries and balances necessary to convert your US GAAP accounting to the IFRS accounting. Thus, requiring less processing resources.

Tip: To avoid difficult reconciliations, use the same currency for primary and secondary ledgers. Use reporting currencies or translations to generate the different currency views to comply with internal reporting needs and consolidations.

Reporting Currencies

Reporting currencies maintain and report accounting transactions in additional currencies. Consider the following before deciding to use reporting currencies.

- Each primary and secondary ledger is defined with a ledger currency that is used to record your business transactions and accounting data for that ledger.
- Best practices recommend that you maintain the ledger in the currency in which the majority of its transactions are denominated. For example, create, record, and close a transaction in the same currency to save processing and reconciliation time.
- Compliance, such as paying local transaction taxes, is also easier using a local currency.
- Many countries require that your accounting records be kept in their national currency.



If you maintain and report accounting records in different currencies, you do this by defining one or more reporting currencies for the ledger. When you set up a reporting currency using the Manage Reporting Currency task, you select a currency conversion level. The currency conversion level determines what level of information is copied to the reporting currency.

You can select one of the following levels: Balance, Journal, Subledger.

- **Balance**: When you run the Translate General Ledger Account Balances process, balances are transferred from the specified ledger to the reporting currency and converted.
- **Journal**: When you post journals, the posting process copies the journals to the reporting currency for the sources and categories that you specify in the Journal Conversion Rules section on the Create or Edit Reporting Currency pages.

In the Journal Conversion Rules section, you can do one of the following:

- Accept the default setting of Yes for the journal source and category combination of Other, and then specify
 the source and category combinations to exclude from the conversion.
- Set the journal source and category combination of **Other** to **No**, and then specify the source and category combinations to include in the conversion.
- **Subledger**: When you generate accounting in the primary ledger, the Create Accounting process produces accounting for both the primary ledger and the reporting currency. When you post the journals in the primary ledger, the posting process copies the journals to the reporting currency for the sources and categories that you specify in the Journal Conversion Rules section on the Create or Edit Reporting Currency pages.
 - ▲ Caution: Ensure you have journal conversion rules that exclude your subledgers, otherwise your subledger data is copied to the reporting currency twice, once by the Create Accounting process, and once by posting.
- Note: A full accounting representation of your primary ledger is maintained in any subledger level reporting currency. Secondary ledgers cannot use subledger level reporting currencies.

Do not use journal or subledger level reporting currencies if your organization translates your financial statements to your parent company's currency for consolidation purposes infrequently. Standard translation functionality meets this need. Consider using journal or subledger level reporting currencies when any of the following conditions exist.

- You operate in a country whose unstable currency makes it unsuitable for managing your business. As a
 consequence, you manage your business in a more stable currency while retaining the ability to report in the
 unstable local currency.
- You operate in a country that is part of the European Economic and Monetary Union (EMU), and you select to account and report in both the European Union currency and your National Currency Unit (NCU).
- Note: The second option is rare since most companies have moved beyond the initial conversion to the EMU currency. However, future decisions could add other countries to the EMU, and then, this option would again be used during the conversion stage.

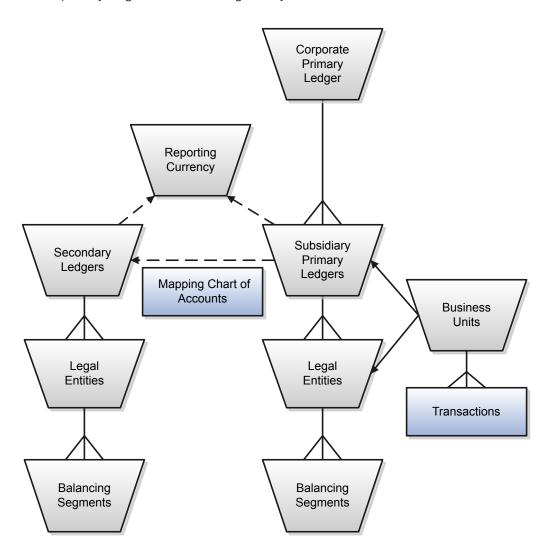
Financial Ledgers: How They Fit Together

Oracle Fusion Applications is an integrated suite of business applications that connects and automates the entire flow of the business process across both front and back office operations and addresses the needs of a global enterprise. The process



of designing the enterprise structure, including the accounting configuration, is the starting point for an implementation. This process often includes determining financial, legal, and management reporting requirements, setting up primary and secondary ledgers, making currency choices, and examining consolidation considerations.

This figure shows the enterprise structure components and their relationships to each other. Primary ledgers are connected to reporting currencies and secondary ledgers to provide complete reporting options. Legal entities are assigned to ledgers, both primary and secondary, and balancing segments are assigned to legal entities. Business units must be connected to both a primary ledger and a default legal entity. Business units can record transactions across legal entities.



Primary Ledgers

A primary ledger is the main record-keeping ledger. Create a primary ledger by combining a chart of accounts, accounting calendar, ledger currency, and accounting method. To determine the number of primary ledgers, your enterprise structure analysis must begin with determining financial, legal, and management reporting requirements. For example, if your company has separate subsidiaries in several countries worldwide, create multiple primary ledgers representing each country with the local currency, chart of accounts, calendar, and accounting method to enable reporting to each country's legal authorities.

If your company just has sales in different countries, with all results being managed by the corporate headquarters, create one primary ledger with multiple balancing segment values to represent each legal entity. Use secondary ledgers or reporting



currencies to meet your local reporting requirements, as needed. Limiting the number of primary ledgers simplifies reporting because consolidation is not required. Other consideration such as corporate year end, ownership considerations, and local government regulations, also affect the number of primary ledgers required.

Secondary Ledgers

A secondary ledger is an optional ledger linked to a primary ledger. A secondary ledger can differ from its related primary ledger in chart of accounts, accounting calendar, currency, accounting method, or ledger processing options. Reporting requirements, for example, that require a different accounting representation to comply with international or country-specific regulations, create the need for a secondary ledger.

Below are scenarios and required action for different components in primary and secondary ledgers:

- If the primary and secondary ledgers use different charts of accounts, the chart of accounts mapping is required to instruct the system how to propagate journals from the source chart of accounts to the target chart of accounts.
- If the primary and secondary ledgers use different accounting calendars, the accounting date and the general ledger
 date mapping table will be used to determine the corresponding non-adjusting period in the secondary ledger. The
 date mapping table also provides the correlation between dates and non-adjusting periods for each accounting
 calendar.
- If the primary ledger and secondary ledger use different ledger currencies, currency conversion rules are required to instruct the system on how to convert the transactions, journals, or balances from the source representation to the secondary ledger.

Note: Journal conversion rules, based on the journal source and category, are required to provide instructions on how to propagate journals and types of journals from the source ledger to the secondary ledger.

Reporting Currencies

Reporting currencies are the currency you use for financial, legal, and management reporting. If your reporting currency is not the same as your ledger currency, you can use the foreign currency translation process or reporting currencies functionality to convert your ledger account balances in your reporting currency. Currency conversion rules are required to instruct the system on how to convert the transactions, journals, or balances from the source representation to the reporting currency.

Legal Entities

Legal entities are discrete business units characterized by the legal environment in which they operate. The legal environment dictates how the legal entity should perform its financial, legal, and management reporting. Legal entities generally have the right to own property and the obligation to comply with labor laws for their country. They also have the responsibility to account for themselves and present financial statements and reports to company regulators, taxation authorities, and other stakeholders according to rules specified in the relevant legislation and applicable accounting standards. During setup, legal entities are assigned to the accounting configuration, which includes all ledgers, primary and secondary.

Balancing Segments

You assign primary balancing segment values to all legal entities before assigning values to the ledger. Then, assign specific primary balancing segment values to the primary and secondary ledgers to represent nonlegal entity related transactions such as adjustments. You can assign any primary balancing segment value that has not already been assigned to a legal entity. You are allowed to assign the same primary balancing segment values to more than one ledger. The assignment of primary balancing segment values to legal entities and ledgers is performed within the context of a single accounting setup. The Balancing Segment Value Assignments report is available to show all primary balancing segment values assigned to legal entities and ledgers across accounting setups to ensure the completeness and accuracy of their assignments. This report allows you to quickly identify these errors and view any unassigned values.



Business Units

A business unit is a unit of an enterprise that performs one or many business functions that can be rolled up in a management hierarchy. When a business function produces financial transactions, a business unit must be assigned a primary ledger, and a default legal entity. Each business unit can post transactions to a single primary ledger, but it can process transactions for many legal entities. Normally, it will have a manager, strategic objectives, a level of autonomy, and responsibility for its profit and loss. You define business units as separate task generally done after the accounting setups steps.

The business unit model:

- Allows for flexible implementation
- Provides a consistent entity for controlling and reporting on transactions
- Enables sharing of sets of reference data across applications

For example, if your company requires business unit managers to be responsible for managing all aspects of their part of the business, then consider using two balancing segments, company and business unit to enable the production of business unit level balance sheets and income statements.

Transactions are exclusive to business units. In other words, you can use business unit as a securing mechanism for transactions. For example, if you have an export business that you run differently from your domestic business, use business units to secure members of the export business from seeing the transactions of the domestic business.

Creating Primary Ledgers: Example

Create a primary ledger as your main record-keeping ledger. Like any other ledger, a primary ledger records transactional balances by using a chart of accounts with a calendar, currency, and accounting rules implemented in an accounting method. The primary ledger is closely associated with the subledger transactions and provides context and accounting for them.

Scenario

Your company, InFusion Corporation is implementing Oracle Fusion Applications. You have been assigned the task of creating a primary ledger for your InFusion America entity.

- 1. Navigator > Define Accounting Configurations > Manage Primary Ledgers > Go to Task.
- 2. Click the Create icon.
- 3. Enter the following values:

Field	Value
Name	InFusion America
Description	InFusion America primary ledger for recording transactions.
Chart of Accounts	InFusion America Chart of Accounts
Accounting Calendar	Standard Monthly
Currency	USD
Accounting Method	Standard Accrual



Field Valu

- 4. Click Save and Edit Task List to navigate back to the accounting configuration task list.
 - Note: You cannot change the chart of accounts, accounting calendar, or currency for your ledger after you save your ledger.

Define Accounting Configurations of Enterprise Structures: Specify Ledger Options

Specifying Ledger Options: Worked Example

This example demonstrates specifying the ledger options for your primary ledger. Your company, InFusion Corporation, is a multinational conglomerate that operates in the United States (US) and the United Kingdom (UK). InFusion has purchased an Oracle Fusion Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) solution including Oracle Fusion General Ledger and all of the Oracle Fusion subledgers.

After completing your InFusion America Primary Ledger, select **Specify Ledger Options** under the Define Accounting Configuration task list on the Functional Setup Manager page.

Note: Both primary and secondary ledgers are created in the same way and use the same user interface to enable their specific ledger options.

Reviewing General Region Options

- 1. Accept the Name and Description defaults for the ledger selected.
- 2. Review the **Currency** and **Chart of Accounts** for the specified ledger, which are automatically populated.

Setting Accounting Calendar Region Options

- 1. Review the **Accounting Calendar** that defaults from your ledger.
- 2. Select Jan-2011 as the **First Open Period** for your ledger.

Select a period after the first defined period in the ledger calendar to enable running translation. You cannot run translation in the first defined period of a ledger calendar. In this example, your calendar began with Jan-2010.

3. Enter 3 for the Number of Future Enterable Periods.

Any value between 0 and 999 periods can be specified to permit entering journals but not posting them in future periods. Minimize the number of open and future periods to prevent entry in the wrong period.

Selecting the Subledger Accounting Region Options

- 1. Accept the default **Accounting Method** from your ledger.
- 2. Select US American English as your Journal Language.



Completing the Period Close Region Options

1. Enter your Retained Earnings Account: 101-00-31330000-0000-0000-0000.

This account is required for general ledger to move the revenue and expense account balances to this account at the end of the accounting year.

2. Enter your Cumulative Translation Adjustment Account: 101-00-31350000-0000-0000-0000.

The Cumulative Translation Adjustment (CTA) account is required for ledgers running translation.

3. Do not enter a Default Period End Rate Type or Default Period Average Rate Type.

The values entered here are used as the default for balance level reporting currency processing. InFusion America Primary Ledger is using the subledger level reporting currency processing.

Specifying the Journal Processing Region Options

1. Specify the Balance options as outlined in the following table.

Option	Setting
Enable Suspense	General Ledger
Default Suspense Account	101-00-98199999-0000-0000-0000
Rounding Account	101-10-98189999-0000-0000-0000
Entered Currency Balancing Account	101-10-98179999-0000-0000-0000
Balancing Threshold Percent	10

2. Click all the following Entry options listed in the table.

Option	Description
Enable journal approval	Click to enable journal approval functionality. Approval rules must be created in the Oracle Fusion Approvals Management (AMX).
Notify when prior period journal	Notify the user when a prior period date is selected on a journal entry.
Allow mixed and statistical journals	Enter both monetary and statistical amounts on the same line in a journal entry.
Validate reference date	Requires a reference date in an open or future enterable period.

- 3. Click the **Separate journals by accounting date during journal import** for the Import option to create individual journal entries for each accounting date.
- 4. For the Reversal options, select InFusion America Accrual Set from the list of values in the Journal Reversal Criteria Set field and click the Launch AutoReverse after open period to reverse accrual journal entries automatically when a new period is opened.
- Click the Enable intercompany accounting for the Intercompany option to enable automatic balancing for primary, second, and third balancing segments) on intercompany journals and transactions.



To complete the intercompany accounting functionality, you must define intercompany rules.

Related Topics

- Journal Posting Process: How Single Currency Journals Are Balanced
- Journal Posting Process: How Multicurrency Journals Are Balanced

FAQs for Specify Ledger Options

What happens if I change the cumulative adjustment account?

To avoid data corruption, your cumulative adjustment account (CTA) can only be changed if you first perform the following set of steps:

- Purge all translated balances
- Change the CTA account
- Rerun translation

What happens if I change the retained earnings account?

To avoid data corruption, your retained earnings account can only be changed if you first perform the following set of steps:

- Enter and post journals to bring the ending balances for your income statement accounts to zero at the end of each accounting year
- Purge actual translated balances
- Update the retained earnings account
- · Reverse the journal entries use to bring the ending account balances to zero and rerun translation

Assigning Legal Entities and Balancing Segments: Examples

Optionally, assign legal entities and balancing segments to your accounting configuration.

Assign Legal Entities

Assign one or more legal entities to your configuration by following these steps:

- Navigator > Setup and Maintenance work area > Define Ledgers > Define Accounting Configurations >
 Assign Legal Entities task.
- 2. If scope is:
 - Not set: Select Scope link > Assign Legal Entities radio button > In the Primary Ledger drop down Select and Add > Apply and Go To Task > Select your ledger > Save and Close.
 - Set, click Go to Task
- 3. Click the Select and Add icon.
- **4.** Enter your legal entity.
- 5. Apply > Done.
- 6. Save and Close.



Assign Balancing Segments to Legal Entities

Assign balancing segment values to your legal entities by following these steps:

- Navigator > Setup and Maintenance work area > Define Ledgers > Define Accounting Configurations >
 Assign Balancing Segment Values to Legal Entities task.
- 2. If scope is:
 - Not set: Select Scope link > Assign Balancing Segment Values to Legal Entities radio button > In the Primary Ledger drop down Select and Add > Apply and Go To Task > Select your ledger > Save and Close.
 - Set, click Go to Task.
- 3. Click the Create icon.
- 4. Select the balancing segment value. Optionally, add a Start Date.
- **5. Save and Close** to close the create page.
- 6. Save and Close.

Assign Balancing Segments to Ledgers

Assign balancing segment values directly to your ledger by following these steps:

- Navigator > Setup and Maintenance work area > Define Ledgers > Define Accounting Configurations >
 Assign Balancing Segment Value to Ledger task.
- 2. If scope is:
 - Not set: Select Scope link > Assign Balancing Segment Value to Ledger radio button > In the Primary Ledger drop down Select and Add > Apply and Go To Task > Select your ledger > Save and Close.
 - Set, click Go to Task.
- 3. Select the balancing segment value.
- 4. Optionally enter a start date.
- 5. Save and Close.
- Note: The balancing segment values that are assigned to the ledger represent nonlegal entity transactions, such as adjustments. If you use legal entities, you must assign balancing segment values to all legal entities before assigning values to the ledger. The only available balancing segment values that can be assigned to ledgers are those not assigned to legal entities.

Define Accounting Configurations of Enterprise Structures: Manage Reporting Currencies

Reporting Currency Balances: How They Are Calculated

Reporting currency balances, set at the journal or subledger level, are updated when General Ledger journals are posted and converted to your reporting currencies. This process includes:

- General Ledger manual journals, periodic journals, and allocations.
- At the subledger level, journals from Oracle Fusion Subledger Accounting.



Other journals imported from sources other than your Oracle Fusion subledgers.

When you post a journal in a ledger that has one or more reporting currencies defined, the posting process:

- Creates journals converted to each of your reporting currencies.
- Includes them in the same batch as the original journal with a status of Posted.

Settings That Affect

Reporting currencies share a majority of the ledger options with their source ledger. For example, the reporting currency uses the same suspense account and retained earnings accounts as its source ledger. However, there are certain options that must be set specifically for reporting currencies, such as the currency conversion level. The currency conversion levels are Balance, Journal, and Subledger.

Note: Secondary Ledgers cannot use subledger level reporting currencies.

Multiple dependencies exist between a reporting currency and its source ledger. Therefore, complete your period opening tasks, daily journal or subledger level reporting currencies accounting tasks, and period closing tasks in the correct order. Some guidelines are presented in the table below.

Туре	Task
Period Opening Tasks	Open the accounting period in both your ledger and reporting currencies before you create or import journals for the period. Converted journals are only generated in your reporting currency if the period is open or future enterable.
Daily Tasks	Enter the daily conversion rates to convert your journals to each of your reporting currencies.
Period Closing Tasks	 Finish entering all regular and adjusting journals for the period in your ledger. Post all unposted journals in your ledger if not already done in the previous step. Post all unposted journals in your reporting currencies if not already done in the previous step. Run Revaluation in both your ledger and reporting currencies. Post the resulting revaluation batches in each ledger. As needed, translate balances in your ledger. Generate needed reports from both your ledger and reporting currencies. Close your accounting period in both your ledger and reporting currencies.

How Reporting Currencies Are Calculated

If you use reporting currencies at the journal or subledger level, journals are posted in your reporting currency when you:

- Create accounting.
- Post journal entries.
- Translate balances.

General Ledger and Subledger Accounting automatically generate journals in your reporting currencies where the entered currency amounts are converted to the reporting currency amounts. Other factors used in the calculation of reporting currency balances are listed:

Manual Journals: Enter a manual journal batch in your reporting currency at the journal or subledger level by using
the Create Journals page. Select the journal or subledger level reporting currency from the ledger's list of values.
Continue in the same manner as entering any other manual journal.



- Conversion Rounding: Use the reporting currency functionality to round converted and accounted amounts using the same rounding rules used throughout your Oracle Fusion Applications. The reporting currency functionality considers several factors that are a part of the currencies predefined in your applications, including:
 - Currency Precision: Number of digits to the right of the decimal point used in currency transactions.
 - Minimum Accountable Unit: Smallest denomination used in the currency. This might not correspond to the precision.
- Converted Journals: Generate and post automatically journals in your reporting currencies when you post the original journals in the source ledger for the following types of journals:
 - Manual journals
 - Periodic and allocation journals
 - Unposted journals from non-Oracle subledger applications
 - Unposted journals from any Oracle Fusion subledger that does not support reporting currency transfer and import
 - Optionally, revaluation journals
- Unconverted Journals: Rely on the subledger accounting functionality to converted and transfer Oracle Fusion subledger journals for both the original journal and the reporting currency journal to the General Ledger for import and posting. The reporting currency conversion for these journals is not performed by the General Ledger.
- Approving Journals: Use the journal approval feature to process reporting currency journals through your organization's approval hierarchy. You can enable journal approval functionality separately in your source ledger and reporting currencies.
- Document Numbers: Accept the default document numbers assigned by the General Ledger application to your journal when you enter a journal in your ledger. The converted journal in the reporting currency is assigned the same document number. However, if you enter a journal in the reporting currency, the document number assigned to the journal is determined by the reporting currency.
- Sequential Numbering: Enable sequential numbering to maintain the same numbering in your reporting currency and source ledger for journals, other than those journals for Oracle Fusion subledgers. Do not create separate sequences for your reporting currencies. If you do, the sequence defined for the reporting currencies is used. The sequences can cause the document numbers not to be in sync between the ledger and reporting currencies.
 - Note: General Ledger enters a document number automatically when you save your journal if:
 - o The Sequential Numbering profile option is set to Always Used or Partially Used.
 - Automatic document numbering sequence is defined.

If you use manual numbering, you can enter a unique document number.

- Revaluation: Run periodically revaluation in your ledger and reporting currencies as necessary to satisfy the accounting regulations of the country in which your organization operates.
- Account Inquiries: Perform inquires in the reporting currency. You can:
 - o Drill down to the journal detail that comprises the reporting currency balance.
 - Drill down to see the source ledger currency journal amounts from any automatically converted journal that was created when the original journal posted.



- Note: Be careful when changing amounts in a reporting currency, since the changes are not reflected in your source ledger. Making journal entry changes to a reporting currency makes it more difficult to reconcile your reporting currency to your source ledger. In general, enter or change your journals in your source ledger, and then allow posting to update the reporting currency.
- Note: If you use journal or subledger level reporting currencies, statistical journals are generated for your reporting currencies, but the journals are not converted.

Define Business Units: Manage Business Units

Business Units: Explained

A business unit is a unit of an enterprise that performs one or many business functions that can be rolled up in a management hierarchy. A business unit can process transactions on behalf of many legal entities. Normally, it has a manager, strategic objectives, a level of autonomy, and responsibility for its profit and loss. Roll business units up into divisions if you structure your chart of accounts with this type of hierarchy.

In Oracle Fusion Applications you do the following:

- Assign your business units to one primary ledger. For example, if a business unit is processing payables invoices, then it must post to a particular ledger. This assignment is required for your business units with business functions that produce financial transactions.
- Use a business unit as a securing mechanism for transactions. For example, if you run your export business separately from your domestic sales business, then secure the export business data to prevent access by the domestic sales employees. To accomplish this security, set up the export business and domestic sales business as two separate business units.

The Oracle Fusion Applications business unit model provides the following advantages:

- Enables flexible implementation
- Provides consistent entity that controls and reports on transactions
- Shares sets of reference data across applications

Business units process transactions using reference data sets that reflect your business rules and policies and can differ from country to country. With Oracle Fusion Application functionality, you can share reference data, such as payment terms and transaction types, across business units, or you can have each business unit manage its own set depending on the level at which you want to enforce common policies.

In countries where gapless and chronological sequencing of documents is required for subledger transactions, define your business units in alignment with your legal entities to ensure the uniqueness of sequencing.

In summary, use business units for:

- Management reporting
- Transaction processing
- Transactional data security
- Reference data sharing and definition



Brief Overview of Business Unit Security

A number of Oracle Fusion Applications use business units to implement data security. You assign roles like Accounts Payable Manager to users to permit them to perform specific functions, and you assign business units for each role to users to give them access to data in those business units. For example, users which have been assigned a Payables role for a particular business unit, can perform the function of payables invoicing on the data in that business unit. Roles can be assigned to users manually using the Security Console, or automatically using provisioning rules. Business Units can be assigned to users using the Manage Data Access for Users task in Setup and Maintenance.

Define Business Units: Assign Business Unit Business Function

Business Functions: Explained

A business unit can perform many business functions in Oracle Fusion Applications.

Business Functions

A business function represents a business process, or an activity that can be performed by people working within a business unit and describes how a business unit is used. The following business functions exist in Oracle Fusion applications:

- Billing and revenue management
- Collections management
- Customer contract management
- Customer payments
- Expense management
- Incentive compensation
- Marketing
- Materials management
- Inventory management
- Order fulfillment orchestration
- Payables invoicing
- Payables payments
- Procurement
- Procurement contract management
- Project accounting
- Receiving
- Requisitioning
- Sales

Although there is no relationship implemented in Oracle Fusion Applications, a business function logically indicates a presence of a department in the business unit with people performing tasks associated with these business functions. A business



unit can have many departments performing various business functions. Optionally, you can define a hierarchy of divisions, business units, and departments as a tree over HCM organization units to represent your enterprise structure.

Note: This hierarchy definition is not required in the setup of your applications, but is a recommended best practice.

Your enterprise procedures can require a manager of a business unit to have responsibility for their profit and loss statement. In such cases, any segment that allows the identification of associated revenue and costs can be used as a profit center identification. The segment can be qualified as a cost center segment.

However, there are cases where a business unit is performing only general and administrative functions, in which case your manager's financial goals are limited to cost containment or recovering of service costs. For example, if a shared service center at the corporate office provides services for more commercially-oriented business units, it does not show a profit and therefore, only tracks its costs.

In other cases, where your managers have a responsibility for the assets of the business unit, a balance sheet can be produced. The recommended best practice to produce a balance sheet is to setup the business unit as a balancing segment in the chart of accounts. The business unit balancing segment can roll up to divisions or other entities to represent your enterprise structure.

When a business function produces financial transactions, a business unit must be assigned to a primary ledger, and a default legal entity. Each business unit can post transactions to a single primary ledger, but it can process transactions for many legal entities.

The following business functions generate financial transactions and will require a primary ledger and a default legal entity:

- Billing and revenue management
- · Collections management
- Customer payments
- Expense management
- Materials management
- Payables invoicing
- Project accounting
- Receiving
- Requisitioning

Business Unit Hierarchy: Example

For example, your InFusion America Company provides:

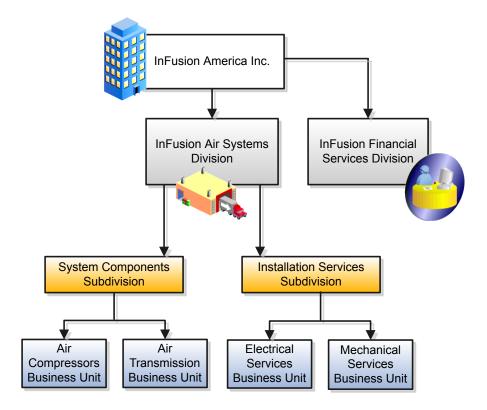
- Air quality monitoring systems through your division InFusion Air Systems
- Customer financing through your division InFusion Financial Services

The InFusion Air Systems division further segments your business into the System Components and Installation Services subdivisions. Your subdivisions are divided by business units:

System Components by products: Air Compressors and Air Transmission



Installation Services by services: Electrical and Mechanical



Oracle Fusion applications facilitates independent balance sheet rollups for legal and management reporting by offering up to three balancing segments. Hierarchies created using the management segment can provide the divisional results. For example, it is possible to define management segment values to correspond to business units, and arrange them in a hierarchy where the higher nodes correspond to divisions and subdivisions, as in the Infusion US Division example above.

Define Customers: Define Source Systems

Source Systems: Explained

This topic explains source systems and how to set up a source system.

You can set up source systems to enable users to identify the source of the data they are importing. You can specify whether the source system is a spoke system, such as a legacy system, or a purchased system, such as data from a third party provider. You can also specify what types of entities the source system contains. For example, you can specify that a source system will contain customer data.

You can configure the following for a source system:

- Source system code, name, and description
- Source system type



Enable for Items, Trading Community Members, Order Orchestration and Planning, and Assets

Source System Code, Name, and Description

You can create a source system code to uniquely identify the source system. Source system codes are used by the application to create references between source IDs and the Oracle Sales Cloud database IDs.

Note: Ensure you update the source system code before you create the source system.

Source System Type

You must set up a source system as either a spoke system or a purchased system.

Enable for Items, Trading Community Members, Order Orchestration and Planning, and Assets

You can select one or more of the following entity types to import from the source system into the Oracle Sales Cloud database:

- Items
- Trading Community Members
- Order Orchestration and Planning
- Assets

You must enable the correct entity types because each import UI filters source systems based on their entity type. For example, if you set up a source system for Trading Community Members, Items, and Assets, then the source system can be selected as a data source only in this UI and not in different UI.

Source System Entities: Explained

Source system entities are entities that you can import using a specified source system, such as addresses and parties.

When you import data from a source system, all the entities in the source system data are also imported. You can select multiple source references in the Manage Source System Entities task to allow multiple source system records to map to a single record.

FAQs for Define Customers: Define Source Systems

What happens if I allow multiple source system references?

When you import data from a source system, you can merge multiple or duplicate source system records and create one record in the Oracle Sales Cloud. This is referred to as allowing multiple source system reference.

If you do not allow multiple source system references, then for every source system record, a duplicate record is created in Oracle Sales Cloud.



Define Customers: Import Person and Organization

Data Import Objects: Explained

Data import objects are business entities, such as competitors, partners, or resource teams that can be imported into the registry. You select the business entity or data import object when creating a data import batch.

Data import process

The data import batch process changes depending on the import object selected. The following sets of business objects have the same import process flow:

- Customer, reference, competitor, and custom party: You can check for duplicates, or deduplicate the batch, before
 importing the batch. You can deduplicate within the import batch as well as between the import batch and the
 registry.
- 2. Employee resource, resource team, partner, and partner contact: You cannot deduplicate within the import batch or registry data.

When creating the data import batch, you can:

- · Preview data before it is import.
- · Specify if addresses will be cleansed before import.
- Set how many errors are allowed before the import is terminated.

Define Suppliers

Create a Supplier and Supplier Site

Creating suppliers and supplier sites is an essential part of the procurement process. A supplier is modeled as a global entity. It is not created within a business unit or any other organizational context. A procurement business unit establishes a relationship with a supplier through the creation of a site which maintains internal controls for how to procure to pay transactions are executed with the supplier.

- 1. Within the application, navigate to the Create Supplier dialog box by clicking the Create Supplier task.
- 2. On the Create Supplier dialog box, enter:
 - Name
 - Tax Country
 - Tax Registration Number
- 3. Click Create.
- 4. On the Edit Supplier page, Profile tab, enter:
 - Supplier Type
- 5. On the Edit Supplier page, Addresses tabs click the **Create** icon.



- 6. On the Create Address page, enter:
 - Address Name
 - Country
 - Address Line 1
 - City
 - County
 - State
 - Postal Code
 - Language
 - Address Purpose

Select all applicable boxes. At a minimum select Purchasing.

7. Click Save and Close.

Repeat address creation for all addresses you do business with for this supplier.

- 8. With your supplier selected open the Sites tab and click the **Create** icon.
- 9. On the Create Site page, enter:
 - Address Name

Select the address for this supplier site.

- 10. Click Save.
- 11. Click the Receiving subtab and enter:
 - Receipt Routing
- **12.** Click the Site Assignments subtab and click **Autocreate Assignments.** This may only be appropriate for your first site. Other sites may require manual creation.
- 13. Click Save and Close.
- 14. With your supplier selected open the Contacts tab and click the **Create** icon.
- 15. On the Create Contact page, enter:
 - First Name
 - Last Name
 - E-mail
 - Select Administrative contact check box
- 16. Click the Create icon.
- 17. In the Contact Addresses region, click the Select and Add icon:
 - Select the contact address.
 - Click Apply.
 - o Click OK.
- 18. In the User Account region, click the Create user account check box. Accept all the applicable roles for this contact.
- 19. Click Save and Close.
- 20. Click Save and Close.



Supplier Numbering: Explained

The Procurement Application Administrator is responsible for supplier numbering setup. Suppliers created through the Create Supplier task flow, through the supplier registration process, or supplier import are automatically numbered using a numeric sequence. The starting supplier number is defined in the Specify Supplier Numbering setup page (the predefined default number is 1). The supplier number then increments automatically as numbers are assigned during supplier creation.

Additionally, the next supplier number can be updated at any time, not just during initial setup, if for example there's ever a need to skip a range of supplier numbers. The application validates that the number is not already used.

Related Topics

• Supplier Import Process: Explained

Define Procurement Agents

Configure procurement agents to enable access to information such as purchasing documents, suppliers, approved supplier list entries, and business intelligence spend data.

- 1. Navigate to the Manage Procurement Agents task and click the Go To Task icon.
- 2. The Manage Procurement Agents page opens. Click the **Create** icon.
- 3. The Create Procurement Agents page opens: Select your Procurement BU.
- 4. Enter the userid of the agent into the Agent field.
- 5. Select your Requisitioning BU.
- 6. In the Agent Access region, enable your choice of access rights for this agent:
 - a. Manage Requisitions
 - b. Manage Purchase Orders
 - c. Manage Purchase Agreements

Enable access to blanket purchase agreements and contract agreements.

d. Manage Negotiations

Enable access to Sourcing negotiations, if implemented by your organization.

- 7. Verify that Allowed is checked for all Actions that you intend for this agent:
 - a. Manage Catalog Content

Enable access to catalog content. This action allows an agent to add or update blanket purchase agreement line information as part of the collaborative catalog authoring

b. Manage Suppliers

Enable access to create and update supplier information.

c. Manage Approved Supplier List Entries

Enable access to create and update approved supplier lists.

- 8. Click Save and Close.
- 9. Click Done.



Note: For more details on Define Procurement Agents, see the Define Purchasing Configuration chapter of the "Oracle Fusion Applications Procurement Implementation Guide."

Create Procurement Agent: Critical Choices

Use the Manage Procurement Agents task to create or edit a procurement agent. With this task you can define an agent's access to procurement functionality within a procurement business unit.

The following predefined roles are controlled by procurement agent access configuration:

- Buyer
- Catalog Administrator
- Category Manager
- Procurement Contracts Administrator
- Procurement Manager
- Supplier Administrator
- Supplier Manager
- Supplier Qualification

Procurement BU

Assign the agent to one or more procurement business units (BU).

Action

Enable the agent to access one or more procurement actions for each procurement business unit.

- Manage Requisitions: Enable access to purchase requisitions.
- Manage Purchase Orders: Enable access to purchase orders.
- Manage Purchase Agreements: Enable access to blanket purchase agreements and contract agreements.
- Manage Negotiations: Enable access to Sourcing negotiations, if implemented by your organization.
- Manage Catalog Content: Enable access to catalog content. This includes local catalogs, punchout catalogs, content zones, smart forms, information templates, and collaborative authoring.
- Manage Suppliers: Enable access to create and update supplier information.
- Manage Supplier Qualifications: Enable access to initiatives, qualifications, and assessments, if Supplier Qualification is implemented by your organization.
- Manage Approved Supplier List Entries: Enable access to create and update approved supplier lists.
- Analyze Spend: Used by the business intelligence functionality to enable access to view invoice spend information.

Access to Other Agents' Documents

Assign an access level to documents owned by other procurement agents for each procurement business unit. Note that an agent can perform all actions on their own documents as long as they have procurement BU access.

- None: The agent cannot access documents owned by other agents.
- View: Permits the agent to search and view other agents' documents.



- Modify: Permits the agent to view, modify, delete, and withdraw other agents' documents.
- Full: Permits the agent full control of other agents' documents. This includes the view, modify, delete, withdraw, freeze, hold, close, cancel, and finally close actions.

Related Topics

Procurement Agent Security: Explained

Setting Up Supplier for Contract Manufacturing: Explained

In contract manufacturing, the contract manufacturer is modeled as a regular supplier. The original equipment manufacturer (OEM) must define the following to set up the supplier:

- Contract manufacturer must be defined as a Supplier. To do this, use the Navigator to select the Suppliers work area, Manage Suppliers task.
- Each contract manufacturer's manufacturing site must be defined as a supplier site. You must assign a procurement business unit to each site. This is the organization authorized to provide procurement services for the site.

For general details about supplier setup and setup steps common to all SCM offerings, refer to Oracle SCM Cloud Implementing Common Features for Oracle SCM Cloud.

Define Workforce Structures: Manage Locations

Locations: Explained

A location identifies physical addresses of a workforce structure, such as a department or a job. You create and manage locations using the Manage Locations task in the Workforce Structures work area.

You can also create locations to enter the addresses of external organizations that you want to maintain, such as employment agencies, tax authorities, and insurance or benefits carriers.

The locations that you create exist as separate structures that you can use for reporting purposes, and in rules that determine employee eligibility for various types of compensation and benefits. You enter information about a location only once. Subsequently, when you set up other workforce structures you select the location from a list.

Location Sets

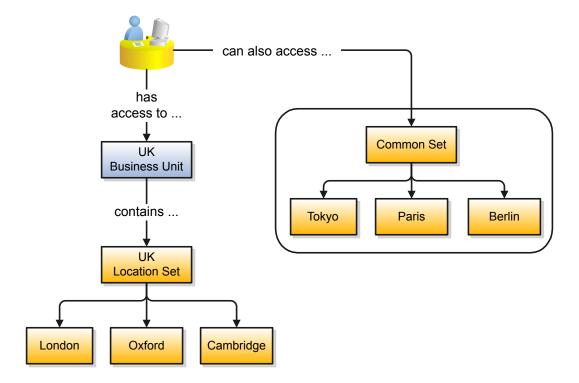
When you create a location, you must associate it with a set. Only those users who have access to the set's business unit can access the location set and other associated workforce structure sets, such as those that contain departments and jobs.

Note the following:

- You can also associate the location to the common set so that users across your enterprise can access the location irrespective of their business unit.
- When users search for locations, they can see the locations that they have access to along with the locations in the common set.



The following figure shows how locations sets restrict access to users.



Uploading Locations Using a Spreadsheet

If you have a list of locations already defined for your enterprise, you can upload them from a spreadsheet.

To use this option:

- Download a spreadsheet template
- Add your location information to the spreadsheet
- Upload directly to your enterprise configuration

You can upload the spreadsheet multiple times to accommodate revisions.

Related Topics

Uploading Workforce Structures Using a Spreadsheet: Explained

Define Workforce Structures: FAQs for Manage Locations

Why can't I see my location in the search results?

You can search for approved locations only. Also, if you created a location in Oracle Fusion Trading Community Model, then you can't access that location from Oracle Fusion Global Human Resources. For use in Oracle Fusion HCM, you must recreate the location from the Manage Locations page.



How can I associate a location with an inventory organization?

From the Oracle Fusion Global Human Resources, go to the Manage Locations page. Use the Manage Locations task in the Workforce Structures work area.

To appear on the Create or Edit Location pages, your inventory organization must be effective on today's date and must exist in the location set that you selected.

What happens if I select an inventory organization when I am creating or editing a location?

The location is available for selection in purchase documents of that inventory organization in Oracle Fusion Inventory Management. If you don't select an inventory organization, then the location is available in purchase documents across all inventory organizations.

What happens if I select a geographic hierarchy node when I'm creating or editing a location?

The calendar events that you created for the geographic node start to apply for the location and may impact the availability of worker assignments at that location. You manage locations using the Manage Locations task in the Workforce Structures work area.

The geographical hierarchy nodes available for selection on the Locations page display from a predefined geographic hierarchy.

Related Topics

Worker Availability: How It Is Determined

What happens if I inactivate a location?

Starting from the effective date that you entered, you can no longer associate the location with other workforce structures, assignments, or applications. If the location is already in use, it will continue to be available to the components that currently use it.

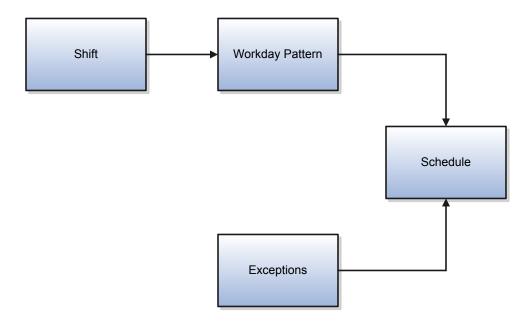
Define Facilities: Manage Facility Shifts, Workday Patterns, and Schedules

Schedule Components: How They Fit Together

Schedules are comprised of workday patterns and exceptions. Workday patterns are comprised of shifts. You can also create exceptions, nonworking days, to the schedules.



Begin by creating shifts and then assigning those shifts to workday patterns. Next, create a schedule that is a collection of workday patterns and any exception dates.



Shift

A shift is a period of time, typically expressed in hours, and it can be defined by a start time and an end time, or a duration. A shift can be for a work period or an off period. You can create time, duration, and elapsed shifts.



Workday Pattern

A workday pattern is a collection of shifts for a specific number of days. You can create time, duration, and elapsed workday patterns.

Exception

An exception is a record of a date that overrides the availability of a resource to which a schedule has been assigned. For example, a resource is assigned a schedule that includes December 25 as a working day. An exception can be created for December 25 and applied to that schedule to override resource availability for that date. Exceptions can also be for a date time period such as 9 a.m. to 11 a.m. on December 25th.

Schedule

A schedule is defined by a start date, an end date, and a sequence of workday patterns to be followed between those dates. A schedule can also contain exception dates that override the availability of resources to which the schedule is assigned. Quarter types such as 4-4-5, 4-5-4 are supported.

Managing Shifts: Examples

A shift is a period of time, typically expressed in hours, that is used to build workday patterns. Workday patterns are used to build schedules. There are multiple types of shifts you can create. The following scenarios illustrate each type.

Managing Time Shifts

Next month you are adding a second shift for your manufacturing operations. This new shift will start right after your regular first shift. You can create a time shift that starts at 4:00 p.m. and ends at 12:00 a.m. There are restrictions in updating existing shifts and patterns. Shifts and patterns cannot be updated if the change affects a schedule, that is they are associated to a schedule. If a shift is created but not assigned to a pattern (or assigned to a pattern but the pattern is not assigned to a schedule) it can be updated. If a pattern is created and not assigned to a schedule it can be updated.

Managing Time Shifts with Punch Details

Your division has decided that the employees in the office must clock in and out for lunch starting next week. All employees will take the same lunch hour. Add punch shift details to the existing shift so that employees punch in at 8:00 a.m.; they punch out for lunch from 11:30 a.m. to 12:30 p.m.; they punch back in at 12:30 p.m.; and they punch out for the day at 5:00 p.m.

Managing Time Shifts with Flexible Details

Jorge Sanchez is a contractor who is starting work in your department next week. His hours will be flexible, so you need to create a new time shift with flexible details that he can use to record his time. He will have a flexible start time from 7:00 a.m. to 9:00 a.m. and a flexible end time from 4:00 p.m. to 6:00 p.m. His core work hours will be from 9:00 a.m. to 4:00 p.m.

Managing Duration Shifts

One of the divisions in your organization does not use fixed start and end times for its daily shifts; the division only records the total duration of the shift and indicates if resources are available or not during that time. All of the employees in the division are available for 24 hours straight, and then they are not available for the next 24 hours. You should create a duration shift that indicates that resources are available for 24 hours, and create a second duration shift that indicates that resources are not available for 24 hours.



Managing Elapsed Shifts

The employees in the Human Resources department all work 8 hours a day, but the start and end times vary by employee. Some employees start at early as 6:00 a.m., while others don't start until 9:00 a.m. Create an elapsed shift with a duration of 8 hours, where all employees are assumed to be available for the number of hours in the shift at any time during the day.

Managing Workday Patterns: Examples

A workday pattern is a collection of shifts for a specific number of days. There are multiple types of workday patterns you can create. The following scenarios illustrate each type.

Managing Time Workday Patterns

Your department works a Monday through Friday workweek with 8 hour shifts each day. Time patterns always have time shifts. That is, the shift will have start time and end time. You can create a time workday pattern with a length of 7 days and details of an 8 hour time shift for days 1 through 5. Days 6 and 7 are considered nonworking days.

Managing Duration Workday Patterns

A new group of employees starts next month, and each employee will work a schedule where he or she is available for 10 hours, and then not available for the next 16 hours, and then available for 10 hours again, and so on. This pattern starts on midnight of the first day of the next month. Create a duration workday pattern with a 10-hour available duration shift, followed by a 16-hour not available duration shift. Do not specify the pattern length or start and end days, and the pattern will repeat for the length of the schedule to which it is associated.

Managing Elapsed Workday Patterns

In the summer, several divisions in your organization work only 4 hours on Fridays. They work extended hours on Wednesdays and Thursdays to cover the 4 hours they will not work on Fridays. Create an elapsed workday pattern with a length of 7 days. Days 1 and 2 will have an 8-hour shift assigned, while days 3 and 4 will have a 10-hour shift assigned. Finally, day 5 will have a 4-hour shift assigned. As in the time workday pattern, days 6 and 7 are considered nonworking days.

Define Facilities: Manage Inventory Organizations

Inventory Organizations: Explained

An inventory organization is a logical or physical entity in the enterprise that is used to store definitions of items or store and transact items.

You select the following usages in the inventory organization's properties:

- Item management
- · Item and inventory management

Item Management

Inventory organizations used for item management, which are the same as item organizations, store only definitions of items. Use inventory organizations for item management when the storage or movement of inventory does not need to be



physically or financially tracked. For example, in a retail implementation you can create an inventory organization for item management to store the names of items that are listed by and sold through each retail outlet, while a different system tracks physical inventory and transactions. If it is necessary in the future, you can change an inventory organization's usage from item management to item and inventory management in the inventory organization's properties.

Item and Inventory Management

Inventory organizations used for item and inventory management store and transact items, in addition to item definitions. An inventory organization used for item and inventory management is associated with one business unit, one legal entity, and one primary ledger. Use inventory organizations for item and inventory management when the storage or movement of inventory needs to be physically and financially tracked. Inventory organizations used for item and inventory management can represent facilities such as manufacturing centers, warehouses, or distribution centers. You cannot change an inventory organization's use from item and inventory management to item management.

Related Topics

• What's an item master organization?

Inventory Organization: Critical Choices

In Oracle Fusion, storage facilities, warehouses, and distribution centers are implemented as inventory organizations.

Inventory organizations are:

- Managed by a business unit, with the materials management business function enabled.
- Mapped to a legal entity and a primary ledger.

Two types of inventory organizations exist.

- Manufacturing facilities
- Storage facilities

Storage and manufacturing facilities are related to other organizational entities through a business unit that stores, manufactures, and distributes goods through many factories, warehouses, and distribution centers. The material parameters are set for both the facilities, enabling movement of material in the organization. This business unit has the business function of Materials Management enabled. Oracle Fusion Applications permit many inventory organizations to be assigned to one business unit.

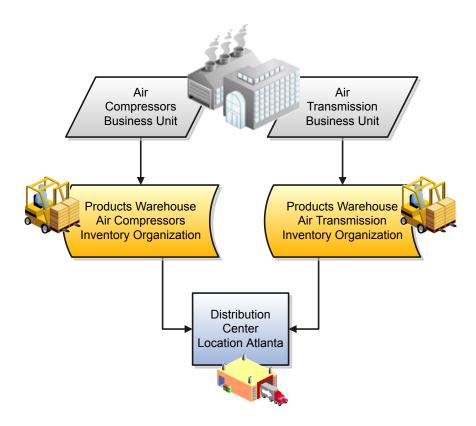
Note: Currently, Oracle Fusion Applications do not include manufacturing capabilities, so set up your manufacturing facilities outside of Oracle Fusion applications.

Distribution Center as an Inventory Organization

A distribution center can store inventory that is the responsibility of different business units. In this situation, assign an inventory organization to each business unit as a representation of the inventory in the distribution center. The multiple inventory organizations representing the inventory are defined with the same location to show that they are a part of the same distribution center.



In the following figure the two business units, Air Compressors and Air Transmission, share one distribution center in Atlanta. The two inventory organizations, Air Compressors and Air Transmission represent the inventory for each business unit in the Atlanta distribution center and are both assigned the Atlanta location.



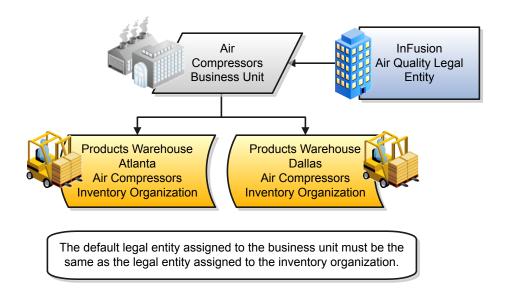
Legal Entities Own Inventory Organizations

A legal entity owns the inventory located in a storage or manufacturing facility. This ownership is assigned through the relationship of the inventory organization representing the inventory and the legal entity assigned to the inventory organization. The legal entity assigned to the inventory organization shares the same primary ledger as the inventory organization's business unit.

The inventory is tracked in the inventory organization owned by the legal entity of which the business unit is part. All transactions are accounted for in the primary ledger of the legal entity that owns the inventory.



The figure below illustrates the inventory owned by InFusion Air Quality legal entity. The InFusion Air Quality legal entity is associated with the Air Compressors business unit, which is associated with the two Air Compressors inventory organizations. Therefore, InFusion Air Quality legal entity owns the entire inventory in both the Dallas and Atlanta locations.



Facility Schedules Are Associated with Inventory Organizations

A prerequisite to defining an inventory organization is to define a facility schedule. Oracle Fusion Applications permit you to associate an inventory organization with a schedule.

Facility schedules permit creating workday calendars for inventory organizations that are used in the Oracle Fusion Supply Chain Management product family. For example, use workday calendars in the scheduling of cycle counts and calculating transit time.

Inventory Organization Prerequisites: Points to Consider

You can create a new inventory organization, or select an existing organization to define as an inventory organization.

Before creating inventory organizations:

- · Set up inventory organization dependencies
- Plan inventory organization parameters

Setting Up Inventory Organization Dependencies

When you create an inventory organization, you must associate it to dependencies, such as business units and legal entities. For this reason, create these dependencies before creating an inventory organization.

Planning Inventory Organization Parameters

Before creating an inventory organization, plan the inventory organization's parameters

Consider the following when planning to configure an inventory organization's parameters

Which schedule to use



- · Which inventory organization to serve as the item master organization
- Whether to configure locator control and if so, the level at which to enforce the locator control
- How you want to configure movement request settings such as pick slip batch size and replenishment movement request grouping

Consider the size of your operation, your usage of subinventories, and the type of labor or equipment required when considering whether you want to use organization- or subinventory-level replenishment movement request grouping.

How you want to configure lot, serial, and packing unit generation settings

To make appropriate choices for these settings, you should be familiar with:

- Your company's guidelines for creating lot names, serial numbers, and packing unit numbers
- Whether your company requires you to assign the same lot number to multiple items in the same organization, or a specific lot number to only one item in the same organization
- Whether your company requires you to place purchase order or shipping order material under lot control
- How you want to configure item sourcing details, such as the picking rule to use, and whether to specify the inventory organization as a logistics services organization

Rounding the Reorder Quantity: How It Affects Min-Max Planning Reorder Calculations

When you specify to round reorder quantities, min-max planning reorders for item subinventories are automatically rounded up or down.

Settings That Affect Rounding the Reorder Quantity

Reorder quantities for an item subinventory are calculated based on:

- The setting that you select for the Round Order Quantity parameter on the Manage Inventory Organization Parameters page, General tab, of the inventory organization containing the item subinventory
- The value that you specify for the Fixed Lot Multiple text box on the Add Item to Subinventory window

How Rounding the Reorder Quantity Affects Min-Max Planning Reorder Quantity Calculations

If you enable rounding the reorder quantity for the inventory organization, and specify the fixed lot multiple for the item subinventory, the reorder quantity is rounded up. If you disable rounding the reorder quantity for the inventory organization, and specify the fixed lot multiple for the item subinventory, the reorder quantity is rounded down.

Note: To round reorder quantities, you must specify a fixed lot multiple.

Example: Rounding the Reorder Quantity

Assume that the reorder quantity is 24. If you enable rounding the reorder quantity and specify 10 for the fixed lot multiple, the reorder quantity is rounded up to 30. If you disable rounding the reorder quantity and keep the fixed lot multiple at 10, the reorder quantity is rounded down to 20.



Selecting Lot Number Uniqueness Control: Critical Choices

Select one of the following lot number uniqueness control options to apply to the items in your inventory organization:

- No uniqueness control
- Across items

No Uniqueness Control

You can assign the same lot number to multiple items in the same inventory organization and across inventory organizations. The following table provides an example of how lot numbers are generated when uniqueness control is not applied, both within and across inventory organizations.

Within Inventory Organization	Across Inventory Organizations
Item AS100 (printer) / Lot LN100	Item AS100 (printer) / Lot LN100
Item AS101 (laptop computer) / Lot LN100	Item AS101 (laptop computer) / Lot LN100

Across Items

You can only assign a unique lot number to a single item in one inventory organization. If the same item is also in a different inventory organization, you must assign that item a unique lot number. The following table provides an example of how lot numbers are generated when uniqueness control is applied across items, both within and across inventory organizations.

Within Inventory Organization	Across Inventory Organizations
Item AS100 (printer) / Lot LN100	Item AS100 (printer) / Lot LN300
Item AS101 (laptop computer) / Lot LN200	Item AS101 (laptop computer) / Lot LN400

Setting Up Supplier for Contract Manufacturing: Explained

In contract manufacturing, the contract manufacturer is modeled as a regular supplier. The original equipment manufacturer (OEM) must define the following to set up the supplier:

- Contract manufacturer must be defined as a Supplier. To do this, use the Navigator to select the Suppliers work area, Manage Suppliers task.
- Each contract manufacturer's manufacturing site must be defined as a supplier site. You must assign a procurement business unit to each site. This is the organization authorized to provide procurement services for the site.

For general details about supplier setup and setup steps common to all SCM offerings, refer to Oracle SCM Cloud Implementing Common Features for Oracle SCM Cloud.



FAQs for Manage Inventory Organizations

What happens if I select the Supplier item sourcing type for replenishment? Items are replenished from an external supplier.

What happens if I create an inventory organization as a logistics services organization?

The inventory organization is not costed, and shipment lines from different logistics service provider customers cannot be packed in the same packing unit.

Define Facilities: Manage Item Organizations

Item Organization: Explained

An item organization defines an item when inventory balances are not stored and inventory storage or inventory movement is not reflected in the Oracle Fusion Applications. For example, you would use an item organization in a retail scenario, if you need to know the items that are listed by and sold through each retail outlet even though inventory and transactions are recorded in another system. In Oracle Sales Cloud, item organizations are used to define sales catalogs.

Note:

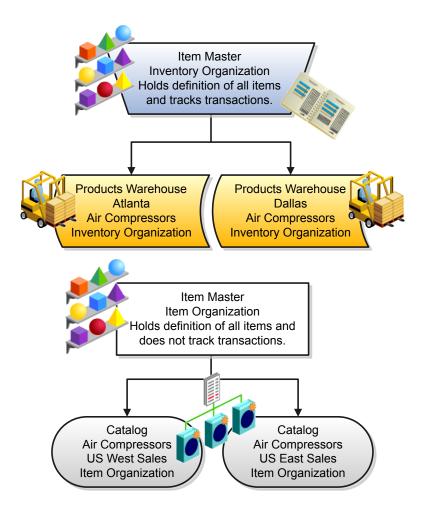
- Items belong to an item organization.
- Item attributes that are associated with financial and accounting information are hidden from the item if it exists within the item organization.
- Item organizations can be changed by administrators to an inventory organization by updating the necessary
 attributes. There is no difference in the way items are treated in these two types of organizations except that
 there cannot be any financial transactions in the downstream applications for items that are assigned to an item
 organization.

Item Master Organization: Explained

An item master organization lists and describes items that are shared across several inventory organizations or item organizations.



The following example shows the choice between inventory organizations that track inventory transactions, stored in two warehouses, and item organizations that just track items, listed in two sales catalogs.



For the most efficient processing, you should:

- Have a single item master.
- Include an item and its definition of form, fit, and function only once in the item master.
- Separate the item master organization from organizations that store and transact items.
- Note: Oracle Fusion permits multiple item masters, however, use this capability cautiously. If you acquire a company, there may be value in keeping the old item master for a transition period. If you manage your subsidiaries as separate businesses, there may be reduced value in a single item master.





6 Define Security

Define Security: Overview

Oracle Enterprise Resource Planning Cloud (Oracle ERP Cloud) and Oracle Supply Chain Management Cloud (Oracle SCM Cloud) are secure as delivered; they limit access to one initial setup user. To enable application users to access application functions and data, you perform tasks in these task lists, as appropriate:

- Define Security for Financials
- Define Security for Procurement
- Define Users and Security for Product Management
- Define Security for Project Execution Management
- Define Security for Project Financial Management
- Define Security for Supply Chain Management

This topic introduces the tasks in these task lists. For more information on ERP and SCM security setup and task instructions, see these guides:

- Oracle Enterprise Resource Planning Cloud: Securing Oracle ERP Cloud.
- Oracle Supply Chain Management Cloud: Securing Oracle SCM Cloud.
- Note: You can perform most tasks in these task lists both during implementation, and later as requirements emerge.

Manage Job Roles

The Oracle ERP Cloud and Oracle SCM Cloud security reference implementations provide many predefined job roles. You can perform the Manage Job Roles task to:

- Review the role hierarchy and other properties of a job or abstract role.
- Create custom job and abstract roles.
- View the roles assigned to a user.
- View the users who have a specific role.

A user with the IT Security Manager or Application Implementation Consultant job role performs the Manage Job Roles task.

Manage Duties

The Oracle ERP Cloud and Oracle SCM Cloud security reference implementations provide many predefined duty roles. You can perform the Manage Duties task to:

- Review the duties of a job or abstract role.
- Manage the duties of a custom job or abstract role.



· Create custom duty roles.

A user with the IT Security Manager job role performs the Manage Duties task.

Define Data Security

You can manage Oracle ERP Cloud and Oracle SCM Cloud application data by performing tasks in these task lists:

- Define Data Security for Financials
- Define Data Security for Procurement
- Define Data Security for Product Management
- Define Data Security for Project Financial Management
- Define Data Security for Supply Chain Management

You can perform the tasks in these task lists to:

- Manage data access sets that secure ledgers.
- Manage Human Capital Management (HCM) security profiles that facilitate data role assignment for application users.
- Manage data security policies that determine grants of entitlement to a user or role on an object or attribute group.

A user with the IT Security Manager job role performs the tasks in the Define Data Security task lists.

Manage Role Provisioning Rules

You create role mappings to control the provisioning of all types of roles to application users by performing this task. For example, you can create a role mapping to provision the Accounts Payable Specialist role automatically to users that meet criteria specific to accounts payable users.

A user with the IT Security Manager job role performs the Manage Role Provisioning Rules task.

Manage Oracle Social Network Objects

You can determine which business objects in Oracle ERP Cloud are available for social collaboration by performing this task. For example, use this task to enable discussion among Oracle Social Network users about requisitions, purchase orders, invoices, payments, receipts, and other transactions.

A user with the IT Security Manager or Application Implementation Consultant job role performs the Manage Oracle Social Network Objects task.

Note: You can perform this task after you set up and configure Oracle Social Network. If you do not use Oracle Social Network, you can skip this task.



Securing Oracle SCM Cloud: Highlights

Oracle SCM Cloud is secure as delivered. Securing Oracle SCM Cloud application involves completing the security-related tasks during implementation. You must ensure function security as well as data security for an application.

Implementing Security-Related Tasks

The following guide provides more information about how to implement the various security aspects for Oracle SCM Cloud applications:

Oracle SCM Cloud: Securing Oracle SCM Cloud





7 Define Transactional Business Intelligence Configuration

Define Transactional Business Intelligence Configuration: Overview

Use the Define Transactional Business Intelligence task list in the Setup and Maintenance work area to complete configuration of business intelligence in your application. Some tasks in this task list are performed during Oracle Applications Cloud provisioning and require no further action from you. The Define Transactional Business Intelligence Configuration task list includes the following tasks:

- Optimize Transactional Business Intelligence Repository
 - Trim unused projects from the business intelligence repository based on configured Oracle Applications Cloud offerings. This optimization is automated during the provisioning process and requires no further action from you.
- Manage Transactional Business Intelligence Connections
 - Review data source connections in the physical layer of the business intelligence repository. Connections are set up and reviewed during the provisioning process, and this task requires no further action from you.
- Manage Security for Transactional Business Intelligence
 - Review security for business intelligence users. The default security configuration can be modified. Refer to the security documentation for your cloud services to review or change the default user security model.
- Configure Key Flexfields for Transactional Business Intelligence
 - Define the key flexfield segments and validation for use as classification keys. You must define these key flexfields for Oracle Fusion Transactional Business Intelligence to operate correctly.
- Configure Descriptive Flexfields for Transactional Business Intelligence
 - Define validation and display properties of descriptive flexfields, which are used to add custom attributes to entities. You enable and import flexfields for use in analyses.
- Import Essbase Cubes into Transactional Business Intelligence Repository for Financials General Ledger
 - Import Essbase cubes into the business intelligence repository. You must perform this task if you're using Oracle Fusion General Ledger.
- Manage User Currency Preferences in Transactional Business Intelligence
 - Manage user currency preferences, which control regional currency settings, currency used in reports, and corporate currency.

Related Topics

- Essbase Rule File and Cubes: Overview
- Configuring Flexfields for Use in Analyses: Overview



- Configuring Descriptive Flexfields for Transactional Business Intelligence: Overview
- Importing Flexfield Changes: Overview
- Setting Currency Preferences for Analytics



8 Define Approval Management

Approval Management: Highlights

Use approval management to define policies that apply to approval workflows. For example, to reflect your own corporate policies, you can specify levels of approval for expense reports over a particular amount and determine how the approvals are routed.

Approval management:

- Controls workflows for business objects such as expense reports.
- Enables you to define complex, multistage task routing rules.
- Integrates with the setup in Human Capital Management (HCM) to derive approvers based on the supervisory hierarchy.

To define approval management, use the Define Approval Management task list in the Setup and Maintenance work area. The task list includes setup tasks for managing workflow task configurations and approval groups.

Task Configuration

Manage rule sets and rules that control approval flows.

- To configure a predefined approval policy, select the predefined rule set and click the Edit Task icon.
- To disable a predefined rule set, select the Ignore participant check box for that rule set.
- To edit the rules within a predefined rule set, you can insert, update, or delete while in edit mode.
- You can configure a specific rule to automatically approve a task without sending it to any approver.
 - Modify the routing for that rule so that it is sent to the initiator (which means the requestor is the approver).
 - Set the Auto Action Enabled option to True.
 - Enter APPROVE in the Auto Action field.

Approval Groups

Each approval group includes a set of users that you configure to act on tasks in a certain pattern. Tasks can be defined to get routed to an approval group instead of an individual user.

- You can nest approval groups within approval groups.
- You have two options for defining the group:
 - Static: Select the specific users to include in the group.
 - Dynamic: Provide the logic to use to determine the users in the group.



Customization

You can also customize predefined approval workflows, for example to add post-approval activities or additional stages (not available for Oracle Cloud implementations).

Refer to the Oracle Fusion Applications Extensibility Guide for Developers.

See: Customizing and Extending SOA Components

Other Workflow Setup

Disabling and Enabling Workflow Notifications: Procedure

When a workflow task is assigned to users, they get notifications through email and, depending on setup, through other channels also, such as instant messaging. Workflow tasks are managed in the Worklist: Notifications and Approvals work area and configured in the Setup and Maintenance work area using the Manage Task Configurations task. If you have the BPM Workflow System Admin Role (BPMWorkflowAdmin) role, you can disable or enable these notifications for all users. For example, you can disable notifications during testing, to avoid sending test notifications to users, and then enable notifications when ready.

When you disable notifications:

- Email notifications that are not for workflow are still sent to users.
- New workflow notifications won't appear in the global header.
- Users can still find their workflow tasks in the Worklist: Notifications and Approvals work area.

Setting Notification Mode

To disable or enable workflow notifications:

- 1. Click the **Notifications** icon in the global header.
- 2. Click More Details and select the domain that you want to disable or enable notifications for.
- 3. Click your user name and select **Administration**.
- 4. On the Administration tab, under Application Preferences, select a value from the **Notification Mode** list:
 - All: Email and any other configured notification channels are enabled. This is the default value.
 - None: All notifications are disabled, including email.
 - Email: Only email notifications are enabled.
- 5. Click Save.
- **6.** Repeat these steps for other domains as needed, for example all domains if you want to disable or enable notifications for the entire application.



Synchronizing Notifications in the Global Header with Workflow Tasks: Points to Consider

When a workflow task is assigned to users, they get an email as well as a notification in the global header. They can also find all of their workflow tasks in the Worklist: Notifications and Approvals work area. The notifications in the global header don't immediately reflect changes to the task status due to actions taken elsewhere, for example through email. Use the Synchronize Notifications in Global Header scheduled process to update the notifications with the latest task statuses, which are always reflected in the Worklist: Notifications and Approvals work area.

Scheduling the Process

In the Scheduled Processes work area, submit the Synchronize Notifications in Global Header process with a defined schedule. For example, schedule the process to run every two hours.

Effects of the Synchronization

After the scheduled process runs, notifications in the global header might move from the Pending Notifications list to the All Notifications list. For example:

- 1. A notification is pending a user's approval.
- 2. The user approves the task using the Worklist: Notifications and Approvals work area. The task status changes, but the notification in the global header is still in the Pending Notifications list.
- 3. After synchronization, the notification moves to the All Notifications list because the user has changed the task status to Approved, and the notification is no longer pending action.

The scheduled process doesn't update the title of notifications in the global header. Similar to email subjects, the notification titles are static.

Related Topics

Submitting Scheduled Processes and Process Sets: Procedure

Determining When Workflow Tasks Are Automatically Dismissed or Withdrawn: Points to Consider

Only workflow tasks with a final status, such as Completed or Withdrawn, can be purged and removed from users' worklists. Tasks go from the Assigned status to the Completed status when the final assignee approves or rejects the tasks, or, with **for your information** (FYI) tasks, when assignees explicitly dismiss the tasks. If assignees don't take actions that result in a final task status, within a certain period of time, then the tasks are automatically dismissed (FYI tasks) or withdrawn (all other tasks).

When Tasks are Eligible for Automatic Dismissal or Withdrawal

The FYI Notifications Expiration Period profile option determines when FYI tasks are eligible for automatic dismissal. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the Manage Applications Core Administrator Profile Values or Manage Administrator Profile Values task to set the profile option.

- Leave the profile option with the default value of 7, or replace it with a different number.
- The profile value represents the number of days after the FYI task is created.



When assignees don't read or dismiss an FYI task within the specified number of days after the task was created, the task is then eligible to be automatically dismissed.

All other tasks are eligible for automatic withdrawal when assignees don't take action to send the task to a final status within six months after the task was created.

When Eligible Tasks Are Automatically Dismissed or Withdrawn

Different processes run to automatically dismiss eligible FYI tasks or withdraw all other eligible tasks.

- **FYI Tasks:** The process runs every three days, starting the first day of each month. For example, it runs on May 1, 4, 7, and so on, and again on June 1 and every three days after. So, if you leave the FYI Notifications Expiration Period profile value at 7, then depending on when the process runs, an FYI task can be automatically dismissed within seven to ten days after it's created. The process changes the FYI task status from Assigned to Completed.
- All Other Tasks: The process runs every three days, starting the second day of each month. For example, it runs on May 2, 5, 8, and so on, and again on June 2 and every three days after. The process changes the status of eligible tasks to Withdrawn.

Related Topics

• Setting Profile Option Values: Procedure

Setting Up the Worklist Region on My Dashboard: Points to Consider

Worklist: Notifications and Approvals is one of the predefined regions users can add to My Dashboard (**Navigator - My Dashboard**), which is blank by default. This region contains workflow tasks. To set up this Worklist region, select a value for the Welcome Dashboard Worklist Timeout Interval (ATK_HOME_PAGE_WORKLIST_TIMEOUT) profile option. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the Manage Application Toolkit Administrator Profile Values or Manage Administrator Profile Values task to set this profile option.

Profile Value Considerations

When users open My Dashboard and it contains the Worklist: Notifications and Approvals region, data for the region is retrieved. The profile option determines how long to continue retrieving before timing out and displaying no data.

- If you don't set a value for this profile option, which is blank by default, then the region doesn't time out.
- Retrieving data for the Worklist region affects the performance of My Dashboard as a whole. So, select a value for this profile option if your users have the Worklist region on My Dashboard and notice performance issues.

After the timeout, users can refresh the region to try retrieving the data again.

Related Topics

Setting Profile Option Values: Procedure



9 Define Help Configuration

Setting Up Help: Overview

Applications Help works without you having to set anything up. You can do the optional setup, mainly if you want to customize help. Select the help features you want, perform tasks in the Define Help Configuration task list, and customize help.

Help Feature Choices

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, select help feature choices on the Features page when you configure your offerings. Feature choices determine:

- What's available in Applications Help
- What you can configure to set up help

The first feature choice for help is Local Installation of Help, and you must leave it selected. Other feature choices are:

- Access to Internet-Based Help Features
- Help Customization
- Custom Help Security

Define Help Configuration Task List

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use these tasks in the Define Help Configuration task list to configure Applications Help for all users:

- Set Help Options:
 - Determine if certain features of Applications Help are available to users.
 - Control how aspects of Applications Help work.
- Assign Help Text Administration Duty: Contact your security administrator to determine who can customize help.
- Manage Help Security Groups: Set up security to limit access to certain help files.

Help Customization

After you configure help, you can review the predefined help and see if you want to add or customize any content. You can also customize help text that appears on the page, for example hints.

Related Topics

Features: Explained



- Help File Customization: Overview
- Customizing Help That Appears on the Page: Highlights

Set Help Options

Setting Up Access to Web Sites from Applications Help: Procedure

You can determine the Web sites that users can access from Applications Help.

Setting Up Access to External Web Sites

Follow these steps:

- 1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, open the Features page for your offering.
- 2. Leave the **Location Installation of Help** feature choice selected.
- Select the Access to Internet-Based Help Features feature choice to allow access to Web sites from Applications Help. For example, some help files link to guides on the Oracle Help Center; this access is necessary for those links to work.
- 4. Select other feature choices as needed, and click **Done**.
- 5. Open the Set Help Options task.
- 6. In the Web Sites Available from Help Site section, select the sites to link to from the Navigator menu in Applications Help.
- 7. Save your work.

Setting Up Help Customization: Procedure

Users with the appropriate roles can customize predefined help or add their own files to help. To enable and set up help customization, do the following steps in the Setup and Maintenance work area, in the specified order.

Selecting Feature Choices

Perform these steps:

- 1. On the Features page for your offering, leave the Local Installation of Help feature choice selected.
- 2. Select the Help Customization feature choice.
- 3. Select the Custom Help Security feature choice if you want certain help files to be available only to a restricted set of users.
 - ▲ Caution: Don't select this feature choice if you don't have this requirement, because the feature can affect performance.
- 4. Save your work.

Setting Help Options

Perform these steps:

Open the Set Help Options task in the Setup and Maintenance work area.



2. Optionally set options in these sections:

o Help Site Customization:

- Determine how users can identify custom files in Applications Help.
- Upload your own image to use as the background picture on the help home page. Select an image that's white along the entire left border, like you see in the default image.
- Oracle User Productivity Kit: Add a link in the Navigator in Applications Help to your custom User Productivity Kit library.
- **Privacy Statement:** Add a link to your own privacy statement. To see this link, users click their user name in the global area of Applications Help.
- 3. Save your work.

Providing Users Access to Help Customization

Only users with job roles containing the ATK_CUSTOMIZE_HELP_TOPICS_PRIV privilege can customize help. The Assign Help Text Administration Duty task is a reminder for you to follow up with your security administrator. Make sure that users who want to customize help have the access to do so.

Setting Up Help File Security

If you selected the Custom Help Security feature choice, then go to the Manage Help Security Groups task and select job roles to include in help security groups.

When you later customize a help file, you can select a group to determine which job roles have access to the file.

FAQs for Set Help Options

Why can't I see certain sections on the Set Help Options page?

What's available on the page depends on the help feature choices that you select in the Setup and Maintenance work area. This table describes the correlation between feature choices and specific sections on the Set Help Options page.

Help Feature Choice	Section on Set Help Options Page
Local Installation of Help	None, but without selecting this feature choice, you can't select the other help feature choices
Access to Internet-Based Help Features	Web Sites Available from Help Site
Help Customization	Help Site Customization
	Oracle User Productivity Kit
	Privacy Statement
Custom Help Security	None

When do I link to the Oracle User Productivity Kit library from Applications Help?

If you license Oracle User Productivity Kit and have custom User Productivity Kit content to share with your users. Topics that you add as custom help files in Applications Help are available only in the See It mode. However, in the library, users



can see the same topic in other modes. If you have User Productivity Kit versions earlier than 3.6.1, then you can't add User Productivity Kit topics as custom help. So the link to the library is the only way users can get custom User Productivity Kit content from Applications Help.

What's the URL for my Oracle User Productivity Kit library?

The full path from the Web server where you're hosting your Oracle User Productivity Kit content to the index.html file that opens the table of contents for the library. For example, http://<your domain>.com/MyContent/PlayerPackage/index.html.

In this example, you or your administrator published one player package that contains all the content to be linked to from Applications Help, including the index.html file, and placed the PlayerPackage folder in a folder called MyContent on the Web server.

FAQs for Assign Help Text Administration Duty

Who can add and manage custom help?

Users with the Customize Help Topics (ATK_CUSTOMIZE_HELP_TOPICS_PRIV) privilege can customize:

- Help in Applications Help and help windows
- Pages in the Getting Started work area

This privilege is assigned by default to the administrators for product families. Your security administrator can define which users have job roles with this privilege.

Manage Help Security Groups

Creating Help Security Groups: Worked Example

This example shows how to create a help security group, which contains a set of job roles. You can later assign the help security group to particular help files so that only users with any of the included job roles have access to the help.

The following table summarizes key decisions for this scenario.

Decisions to Consider	In This Example
What type of users do you need to limit help access to?	Human resources (HR) specialists
Is there a specific time period for which this access is needed?	No, the help files should always be viewed only by the HR specialists
Where do you want this group to appear in the list of values for help security groups?	First

Define a help security group and assign a job role to the group.



Prerequisites

- 1. Open the Features page for your offerings in the Setup and Maintenance work area.
- 2. Make sure that the Location Installation of Help feature choice is selected.

Creating the Help Security Group

- 1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the Manage Help Security Groups task.
- 2. On the Manage Help Security Groups page, add a new row.
- 3. Complete the fields, as shown in this table. Leave the start and end dates blank.

Field	Value
Help Security Group	HR
Meaning	HR Only
Description	Viewing by HR specialists only
Display Sequence	1

- 4. Click Save.
- 5. With your new help security group selected, go to the Associated Roles section and add a new row.
- 6. Select PER_HUMAN_RESOURCE_SPECIALIST as the role name.
- 7. Click Save and Close.

To assign your new help security group to help files, you must create or edit help using the Manage Custom Help page, not help windows.

Related Topics

How can I restrict access to specific help files?





10 Define Application Toolkit Configuration

Define Application Toolkit Configuration: Overview

Oracle Fusion Application Toolkit (ATK) provides many features that are available to users of all product families. These features include Applications Help, the Reports and Analytics pane, and the Watchlist. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the Define Application Toolkit Configuration task list to set up some of these components. Use the Define Help Configuration task list to set up Applications Help.

Note: The Define Application Toolkit Configuration task list is available in implementation projects only if the Application Toolkit Component Maintenance feature choice is selected.

Tasks

The Define Application Toolkit Configuration task list contains these tasks:

- Map Reports to Work Areas: Determine what's available in the Reports and Analytics pane for specific work areas.
- Set Watchlist Options: Define settings that affect what's displayed in the Watchlist and how often items are refreshed.
- Manage Application Toolkit Administrator Profile Values: Set profile options to affect how some Application Toolkit features work.

Related Topics

- Setting Up the Worklist Region on My Dashboard: Points to Consider
- Setting Up Help: Overview

Map Reports to Work Areas

Setting Up the Reports and Analytics Pane: Procedure

You can find the Reports and Analytics pane in many work areas, and the analytics and reports you see in the pane depends on the work area. You can define what's available for a specific work area, by mapping reports from the business intelligence (BI) catalog to that work area. In this mapping context, reports refer to both analytics and reports. Your changes apply to all users who have access to the work area you're mapping.

Mapping Reports from Your Work Area

To map reports to the work area that you're in:

1. Click the **Edit Settings** icon in the Reports and Analytics pane.



You see all the reports that are currently mapped to your work area.

- 2. Click Select and Add.
- 3. Find the report in the catalog and select it.
- 4. Click OK.
- 5. To remove any mapping, select the report and click **Remove**.
- 6. Save your work.

Mapping Reports to Any Work Area

To map reports to any work area that you have access to:

- 1. Go to the Setup and Maintenance work area and open the Map Reports to Work Areas task.
- 2. Select the application of the work area you want to map to.
- 3. Select the work area.
- 4. Click **Search** and see all the reports that are currently mapped to that work area.
- 5. Click Select and Add.
- **6.** Find the report in the catalog and select it.
- 7. Click OK.
- 8. To remove any mapping, select the report and click **Remove**.
 - Tip: Click **Synchronize** to remove all mappings to any reports that are no longer in the catalog. You synchronize all work areas, not just the one you're mapping.
- 9. Save your work.

Related Topics

Reports and Analytics Pane: Explained

Setting Reports Up for Scheduling in the Reports and Analytics Pane: Procedure

You can set up reports as scheduled processes, which means users can submit them from the Scheduled Processes and other work areas. If you want users to also submit these scheduled processes from the Reports and Analytics pane, then you must configure properties for the corresponding reports.

Enabling a Report for Scheduling

To enable scheduling in the Reports and Analytics pane:

- 1. Select the report in the business intelligence catalog and click **Edit**.
- 2. Click Properties.
- 3. On the General tab in the Properties dialog box, enter the following fields:

Field	Value
Enterprise Scheduler Job Package Name	The path for the job definition, for example: / oracle/ apps/ ess/ <pre>cproduct family>/ <pre>cproduct>/</pre></pre>



Related Topics

- · Setting Reports Up to Run as Scheduled Processes: Points to Consider
- Accessing Report Components to Customize: Points to Consider

FAQs for Map Reports to Work Areas

Why can't I see reports when mapping reports to work areas for the Reports and Analytics pane?

Either no reports are currently mapped to the work area you select on the Map Reports to Work Areas page, or you don't have access to the reports that are mapped.

Similarly, when you're selecting a report to map, you can see only the reports that you have access to. Ask your administrator to either:

- Assign you roles that have access to the reports you want to map to work areas.
- Grant the Reports and Analytics Region Administration Duty to someone who already has access to those reports.

Why can't I see reports when I edit settings for the Reports and Analytics pane?

In the Edit Settings window, you might not see a currently mapped report because you don't have access to it.

Similarly, when you're selecting a report to map, you can see only the reports that you have access to. Ask your administrator to either:

- Assign you roles that have access to the reports you want to map to work areas.
- Grant the Reports and Analytics Region Administration Duty to someone who already has access to those reports.

Set Watchlist Options

Disabling and Enabling Watchlist Categories and Items: Points to Consider

You can disable or enable predefined Watchlist categories and items for all users. Use the Set Watchlist Options task in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

Ultimately, what users see in their own Watchlist would be the categories and predefined items that you enable in the Set Watchlist Options page:

Plus any saved searches that the user is using as Watchlist items



- Minus any categories or items that the user decides to hide using Watchlist preferences
- · Minus any items with no results found, if the user decides to hide such items using Watchlist preferences

Any Category or Item

When you disable any category or item, you also disable the processes that calculate the Watchlist item counts. These processes include creating data caches, performing security checks, calling services across domains, running queries, and so on.

Predefined Watchlist Items

An item with the Predefined type represents the actual predefined Watchlist item that appears in the Watchlist. If you disable this type of Watchlist item, then:

- The item isn't available for users to display in their Watchlist.
- The item is removed from any Watchlist where it's currently displayed.

If you disable a Watchlist category, then the category is not available for users to include in their Watchlist. All Watchlist items within the category are also disabled.

User-Created Saved Search Watchlist Items

A Watchlist item with the User-Created Saved Search type doesn't appear in the Watchlist. It controls the display of the **Manage Watchlist** button on pages with saved searches. If you disable this type of Watchlist item, then:

- The **Manage Watchlist** option isn't available on the corresponding page, so users can't use their own saved searches as Watchlist items.
- Any user-defined saved searches (from that page) already used as Watchlist items are removed from the users' Watchlist. The saved searches are still available for searching, but not for the Watchlist.

Watchlist Category

If you disable a Watchlist category, then:

- The category isn't available for users to include in their Watchlist.
- · All Watchlist items within the category are also disabled.

Related Topics

- Creating Watchlist Items: Procedure
- Displaying and Hiding Watchlist Items: Procedure

Refresh Intervals for Watchlist Items: Explained

All Watchlist items have a predefined refresh interval, which controls how often the query that calculates the count for a Watchlist item can run. Use the Set Watchlist Options task in the Setup and Maintenance work area to edit the interval values.

How the Refresh Works

The count for any Watchlist item gets refreshed as follows.

• When users open the Watchlist in the global area for the first time after signing in, the item is refreshed if five minutes have passed since its last refresh in an earlier session.



· When users open the Watchlist again, the item is refreshed only if the time since its last refresh is equal to or greater than the refresh interval.

User-Created Saved Search Watchlist Items

What you enter as the refresh interval for a Watchlist item of type User-Created Saved Search applies to all Watchlist items based on saved searches that users create for that item. For example, you set the refresh interval for the Corporate Card Transactions item to five minutes. Multiple users create saved searches for corporate card transactions and use those saved searches as Watchlist items in their own Watchlist. All of these Watchlist items would have a refresh interval of five minutes.

Related Topics

• Creating Watchlist Items: Procedure

FAQs for Set Watchlist Options

How can I change predefined Watchlist category and item names?

Edit the standard lookup type that stores the predefined Watchlist category and item names.

- 1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the Manage Standard Lookups task.
- 2. Find the lookup type for the Watchlist category you want to edit. Lookup types for predefined categories end with WATCHLIST, for example EXM EXPENSES WATCHLIST.
- 3. Edit the lookup type meaning to change the category name.
- 4. To change item names, edit lookup code meanings.
- 5. Save your work.

Related Topics

Lookups: Explained

Manage Application Toolkit Administrator Profile Values

Setting Up the Mapping Service for Contextual Addresses: Points to Consider

A contextual address is marked with an orange triangle that users can click to display the address on a map. The Mapping Service for Contextual Addresses profile option determines the mapping service to use to display the map. Use the Manage Administrator Profile Values or Manage Application Toolkit Administrator Profile Values task in the Setup and Maintenance work area to set the profile option value.

Profile Option Default

By default, the Mapping Service for Contextual Addresses profile option has no value.

Caution: Until you enter a valid value for this profile option, users get an error when they try to open a map for any contextual address.



Profile Option Value

After you find and select the Mapping Service for Contextual Addresses profile option, enter a mapping service URL in the Profile Value column, for example:

- http://maps.google.com/maps?output=embed&q=
- http://maps.yahoo.com/maps_result.php?q1=
- http://maps.live.com/default.aspx?where1=
- http://bing.com/maps/?v=2&encType=1&where1=

You can include parameters in the URL. For example, to avoid a locator box in Google Maps, add &iwloc=& to the URL. So, you would enter http://maps.google.com/maps?iwloc=&&output=embed&g= as the profile value.

Related Topics

Setting Profile Option Values: Procedure

Setting Up the Worklist Region on My Dashboard: Points to Consider

Worklist: Notifications and Approvals is one of the predefined regions users can add to My Dashboard (**Navigator - My Dashboard**), which is blank by default. This region contains workflow tasks. To set up this Worklist region, select a value for the Welcome Dashboard Worklist Timeout Interval (ATK_HOME_PAGE_WORKLIST_TIMEOUT) profile option. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, use the Manage Application Toolkit Administrator Profile Values or Manage Administrator Profile Values task to set this profile option.

Profile Value Considerations

When users open My Dashboard and it contains the Worklist: Notifications and Approvals region, data for the region is retrieved. The profile option determines how long to continue retrieving before timing out and displaying no data.

- If you don't set a value for this profile option, which is blank by default, then the region doesn't time out.
- Retrieving data for the Worklist region affects the performance of My Dashboard as a whole. So, select a value for this profile option if your users have the Worklist region on My Dashboard and notice performance issues.

After the timeout, users can refresh the region to try retrieving the data again.

Related Topics

• Setting Profile Option Values: Procedure



11 Maintain Common Reference Objects

Maintain Common Reference Objects: Overview

The Maintain Common Reference Objects task list contains tasks that support implementation of common functionality, such as data security, reference data sets, or general preferences.

Use this task list to manage common reference objects that are defined centrally and shared across applications. You can search for and access this task list in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

To make the Maintain Common Reference Objects task list available in your implementation project, go to **Setup and Maintenance - Configure Offerings**, and for a specific offering, select the Maintain Common Reference Objects feature choice.

Related Topics

Moving Common Reference Objects: Overview

Why can't I edit setup data?

The configuration of your setup data may be protected. Application developers mark some configurations as protected, indicating that you can't edit them.

Some examples of configurations that may be protected are:

- Descriptive flexfields
- Extensible flexfield contexts
- Extensible flexfield pages
- Value sets
- Tree structures

Define Application Taxonomy

Application Taxonomy: Highlights

Oracle application components and functions are organized in a hierarchy, ranging from product lines to logical business areas. The hierarchy represents a breakdown of products into units based on how applications are installed and supported.

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, search for the Manage Taxonomy Hierarchy task and view the hierarchy on the Manage Taxonomy Hierarchy page.

A detailed introduction to application taxonomy is provided in the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer's Guide.



Hierarchy

The application taxonomy hierarchy contains various levels and types of nodes, or modules.

See: Characteristics of the Level Categories

See: Benefits of a Logical Hierarchy

Usage

• Use application taxonomy to understand relationships among applications and between an application and its files. This information is helpful in managing various phases of the product life cycle.

See: How to Manage the Life cycle

Modules in Application Taxonomy: Explained

The top level of the hierarchy is product line, followed by the product family, application, and logical business area. There can be multiple levels of logical business areas, with one or more nested within a parent logical business area. A module is a node at any of these levels. Each level is briefly described here.

- Product Line: A collection of product under a single brand name, for example, Oracle Fusion.
- Product Family: A collection of products associated with a functional area that may or may not be licensed together
 as a single unit, for example Financials.
- Application: A single product within a product family, containing closely related features for a specific business solution, for example General Ledger.
- Logical Business Area: A collection of business object definitions organized into a logical grouping. It contains the model objects, services, and UI components for those business objects. Logical business areas have their own hierarchy levels and in some cases can be up to two or three levels deep.

Managing Modules in Application Taxonomy: Points to Consider

In the application taxonomy hierarchy, when you create a module, it becomes a child of the currently selected node. Once created, you cannot delete the module or move it elsewhere in the hierarchy.

From the Manage Taxonomy Hierarchy page, navigate to the Create Child Module or Edit Module page to manage the modules. As you create or edit modules, consider the following points regarding specific fields.

Identifiers

Module ID is the unique primary key for nodes in the taxonomy table. When you create a module, a unique read-only ID is automatically generated. The module contains two other identifiers: Module key and alternative ID. The module key is a string identifier, for example AP for the Oracle Fusion Payables application. The alternative ID is a numeric identifier, for example 1 for the Oracle Fusion product line. These additional identifiers are provided for the product line, product family, and application modules. However, you can optionally add them for logical business areas and new custom modules.

Note: Don't change the module key or alternative ID for predefined modules.



The product code is relevant only to application and logical business area modules. You can leave the field blank for other module types. The product code for applications is the short name that can be displayed in lists of application values. For example, FND for Oracle Fusion Middleware Extensions for Oracle Application.

Names

Module name is the logical name for the module. The name must be unique among nodes within the hierarchy level with the same parent, but Oracle recommends keeping it unique in the entire hierarchy. The user name and description can appear to users in other parts of Oracle Applications Cloud.

Usage Types

Though you can update the usage type to reflect the current state of the module, just doing so does not affect the actual state. For example, setting a module as installed doesn't mean the module is actually installed if the installation itself didn't take place. Installation refers to operations related to laying down all the components required to create an Oracle Applications Cloud environment. Deployment is the process that starts the managed servers and clusters and facilitates the actual use of product offerings. A licensed module is available for installation and deployment, and a deployed module is considered actively used when actually used by users.

Seed Data

If seed data is allowed, then data residing in flexfields and lookups can be extracted for the module using seed data loaders. By default, extract is allowed for all predefined modules of type application and logical business area.

Associations

You can associate a logical domain to modules of the type Product Family, as well as one or more enterprise applications to modules of type Application. This association represents the relationship between the taxonomy modules and the corresponding domain and enterprise applications stored in the Oracle Applications Cloud Functional Core (ASK) tables.

Define Reference Data Sharing

Reference Data Sharing: Explained

Reference data sharing facilitates sharing of configuration data such as jobs and payment terms, across organizational divisions or business units. You define reference data sets and determine how common data is shared or partitioned across business entities to avoid duplication and reduce maintenance effort. Depending on the requirement (specific or common), each business unit can maintain its data at a central location, using a set of values either specific to it or shared by other business units.

A common reference data set is available as the default set, which can be assigned to several business units sharing the same reference data. For commonly used data such as currencies, you can use the common reference data set and assign it to multiple business units in various countries that use the same currency. In cases where the default set can't be assigned to an entity, you can create specific sets. The data set visible on the transactional page depends on the sharing method used to share reference data.

For example, XYZ Corporation uses the same grades throughout the entire organization. Instead of different business units setting up and using the same grades, XYZ Corporation decides to create a set called Grades, which contains the grades. All business units in the organization have the Grades set so that the grades can be shared and used.



Note: For specific information about configuring reference data sharing for a particular object or product, refer to the relevant product documentation.

Related Topics

- Reference Data Sets: Explained
- Reference Data Sets and Sharing Methods: Explained
- Assigning Reference Data Sets to Reference Objects: Points to Consider

Reference Data Sets: Explained

Reference data sets are logical groups of reference data that various transactional entities can use depending on the business context. You can get started using either the common reference data set or the enterprise set depending on your implementation requirement. You can also create and maintain custom reference data sets, while continuing to use the common reference data set.

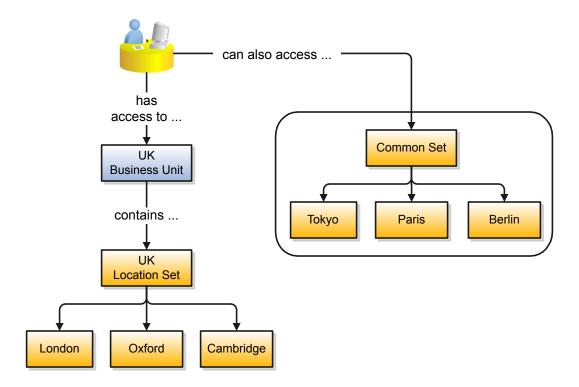
Consider the following scenario. Your enterprise can decide that only some aspects of corporate policy should affect all business units. The remaining aspects are at the discretion of the business unit manager to implement. This enables your enterprise to balance autonomy and control for each business unit. For example, your enterprise holds business unit managers accountable for their profit and loss, but manages working capital requirements at a corporate level. Then, you can let managers define their own sales methods, but define payment terms centrally. As a result, each business unit has its own reference data set for sales methods and one central reference data set for payment terms assigned to all business units.

Partitioning

Partitioning reference data and creating data sets provide you the flexibility to handle the reference data to fulfill your business requirements. You can share modular information and data processing options among business units with ease. You can create separate sets and subsets for each business unit. Alternatively, you can create common sets or subsets to enable sharing reference data between several business units, without duplicating the reference data.



The following figure illustrates the reference data sharing method (assignment to one set only, with common values). The user can access the data assigned to a specific set in a particular business unit, as well as access the data assigned to the common set.



Related Topics

- Reference Data Sets and Sharing Methods: Explained
- Defining Default Reference Data Sets: Points to Consider
- Assigning Reference Data Sets to Reference Objects: Points to Consider

Reference Data Sets and Sharing Methods: Explained

Oracle Fusion Applications reference data sharing feature is also known as SetID. The reference data sharing functionality supports operations in multiple ledgers, business units, and warehouses. As a result, there is a reduction in the administrative burden and the time to implement new business units. For example, you can share sales methods, or transaction types across business units. You may also share certain other data across asset books, cost organizations, or project units.

The reference data sharing features use reference data sets to which reference data is assigned. The reference data sets group assigned reference data. The sets can be understood as buckets of reference data assigned to multiple business units or other application components.

Reference Data Sets

You begin this part of your implementation by creating and assigning reference data to sets. Make changes carefully as changes to a particular set affect all business units or application components using that set. You can assign a separate



set to each business unit for the type of object that is being shared. For example, assign separate sets for payment terms, transaction types, and sales methods to your business units.

Your enterprise can determine that certain aspects of your corporate policy can affect all business units. The remaining aspects are at the discretion of the business unit manager to implement. This allows your enterprise to balance autonomy and control for each business unit. For example, your enterprise holds business unit managers accountable for their profit and loss, but manages working capital requirements at a corporate level. In such a case, you can let managers define their own sales methods, but define payment terms centrally. In this example:

- Each business unit has its own reference data set for sales methods.
- One central reference data set for payment terms is assigned to all business units.

The reference data sharing is especially valuable for lowering the cost of setting up new business units. For example, your enterprise operates in the hospitality industry. You are adding a new business unit to track your new spa services. The hospitality divisional reference data set can be assigned to the new business unit to quickly set up data for this entity component. You can establish other business unit reference data in a business unit-specific reference data set as needed.

Reference Data Sharing Methods

Variations exist in the methods used to share data in reference data sets across different types of objects. The following list identifies the methods:

- Assignment to one set only, no common values allowed. This method is the simplest form of sharing reference
 data that allows assigning a reference data object instance to one and only one set. For example, Asset Prorate
 Conventions are defined and assigned to only one reference data set. This set can be shared across multiple asset
 books, but all the values are contained only in this one set.
- Assignment to one set only, with common values. This method is the most commonly used method of sharing
 reference data that allows defining reference data object instance across all sets. For example, Receivables
 Transaction Types are assigned to a common set that is available to all the business units. You need not explicitly
 assign the transaction types to each business unit. In addition, you can assign a business unit-specific set of
 transaction types. At transaction entry, the list of values for transaction types includes the following:
 - Transaction types from the set assigned to the business unit.
 - Transaction types assigned to the common set that is shared across all business units.
- Assignment to multiple sets, no common values allowed. The method of sharing reference data that allows a
 reference data object instance to be assigned to multiple sets. For instance, Payables Payment Terms use this
 method. It means that each payment term can be assigned to one or more than one set. For example, you assign
 the payment term Net 30 to several sets, but assign Net 15 to a set specific only to your business unit. At transaction
 entry, the list of values for payment terms consists of only the set that is assigned to the transaction's business unit.
- Note: Oracle Fusion Applications contains a reference data set called Enterprise. Define any reference data that affects your entire enterprise in this set.

Related Topics

- Items and Supplier Site Reference Data Sharing: Explained
- What reference data objects can be shared across cost organizations?
- What reference data objects can be shared across project units?
- What reference data objects can be shared across business units?
- What reference data objects can be shared across asset books?



Assigning Reference Data Sets to Reference Objects: Points to Consider

You can assign the reference data sets to reference objects using the Manage Reference Data Set Assignments page. For multiple assignments, you can classify different types of reference data sets into groups and assign them to the reference entity objects. The assignment takes into consideration the determinant type, determinant, and reference group, if any.

Determinant Types

The partitioned reference data is shared using a business context setting called the determinant type. A determinant type is the point of reference used in the data assignment process. The following table lists the determinant types used in the reference data assignment.

Туре	Description
Asset Book	Information about the acquisition, depreciation, and retirement of an asset that belongs to a ledger or a business unit.
Business Unit	The departments or organizations within an enterprise.
Cost Organization	The organization used for cost accounting and reporting on various inventory and cost centers within an enterprise.
Project Unit	A logical organization within an enterprise that is responsible for enforcing consistent project management practices.
Reference Data Set	References to other shared reference data sets.

Determinant

The determinant (also called determinant value) is a value that corresponds to the selected determinant type. The determinant is one of the criteria for selecting the appropriate reference data set.

Reference Groups

A transactional entity may have multiple reference entities (generally considered to be setup data). However, all reference entities are treated alike because of similarity in implementing business policies and legal rules. Such reference entities in your application are grouped into logical units called reference groups. For example, all tables and views that define Sales Order Type details might be a part of the same reference group. Reference groups are predefined in the reference groups table.

Define ISO Reference Data



Defining Currencies: Points to Consider

When creating or editing currencies, consider these points relevant to entering the currency code, date range, or symbol for the currency.

Currency Codes

You can't change a currency code after you enable the currency, even if you later disable that currency.

Date Ranges

You can enter transactions denominated in the currency only for the dates within the specified range. If you don't enter a start date, then the currency is valid immediately. If you don't enter an end date, then the currency is valid indefinitely.

Symbols

Some applications support displaying currency symbols. You may enter the symbol associated with a currency so that it appears along with the amount.

Related Topics

- What's the difference between precision, extended precision, and minimum accountable unit for a currency?
- What's a statistical unit currency type?
- Euro Currency Derivation: Explained

Euro Currency Derivation: Explained

Use the Derivation Type, Derivation Factor, and Derivation Effective Date fields to define the relationship between the official currency (Euro) of the European Monetary Union (EMU) and the national currencies of EMU member states. For each EMU currency, you define its Euro-to-EMU fixed conversion rate and the effective starting date. If you have to use a different currency for Euro, you can disable the predefined currency and create a new one.

Derivation Type

The **Euro currency** derivation type is used only for the Euro, and the **Euro derived** derivation type identifies national currencies of EMU member states. All other currencies don't have derivation types.

Derivation Factor

The derivation factor is the fixed conversion rate by which you multiply one Euro to derive the equivalent EMU currency amount. The Euro currency itself must not have a derivation factor.

Derivation Effective Date

The derivation effective date is the date on which the relationship between the EMU currency and the Euro begins.

Natural Languages: Points to Consider

Natural languages are all the languages that humans use, written and spoken. If a language is enabled, then users can associate it with entities, for example as languages spoken by sales representatives. When managing natural languages, consider tasks to perform and best practices for entering particular values.



Tasks

Once you add a language, it can't be deleted, but just disabled. You can optionally associate natural languages with International Organization for Standardization (ISO) languages and territories, just for reference.

Values

When you create a natural language, use the alpha-2 ISO code as the language code, or, if not available, then alpha-3. If the language is not an ISO language, then use **x-** as a prefix for the code, for example **x-ja** for a Japanese dialect. Use the **sgn** code of ISO-639-2 for sign languages, followed by territory code, for example **sgn-US** for American Sign Language. You can also use Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) language tags.

The natural language description must be the language name with territory name in parenthesis where needed, for example **English (Australia)** and **English (Canada)**.

FAQs for Define ISO Reference Data

When do I create or edit territories?

The predefined territories are countries from the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) 3166 standard. Edit territory descriptions to determine how they are displayed in lists of country values in an application. You don't have to edit territory names or codes unless there is a specific requirement. Create territories if new countries emerge and the application isn't yet patched with the latest ISO country values.

Note: The National Language Support (NLS) territory codes are territory identifiers used in the application. Don't edit the codes unless you must change the association between ISO and the application territory.

When do I create or edit industries?

To meet a specific business need, you may edit industry names or descriptions of industries except for those belonging to the North American Industry Classification System (NAICS). Edit the industry descriptions also to determine how they appear in an application.

You may also create industries that contain customizations not included in the NAICS standards.

When do Lassociate industries with territories?

To meet specific business needs, you can associate industries with territories. For example, administrators can customize a page in different ways for different sets of users of the same industry, but residing in different countries.

When do I create or enable currencies?

Create or enable any currency for displaying monetary amounts, assigning currency to ledgers, entering transactions, recording balances, or for any reporting purpose. All currencies listed in the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) 4217 standard are supported.

The default currency is set to United States Dollar (USD).

Related Topics

• Defining Currencies: Points to Consider



What's the difference between precision, extended precision, and minimum accountable unit for a currency?

Precision refers to the number of digits placed to the right of the decimal point used in regular currency transactions. For example, USD would have 2 as the precision value for transactional amounts, such as \$1.00.

Extended precision is the number of digits placed to the right of the decimal point and must be greater than or equal to the precision value. For calculations requiring greater precision, you can enter an extended precision value such as 3 or 4. That would result in the currency appearing as \$1.279 or \$1.2793.

Minimum accountable unit is the smallest denomination for the currency. For example, for USD that would be .01 for a cent.

In Setup and Maintenance work area, search for the Manage Currencies task to set these values for a currency.

What's a statistical unit currency type?

The statistical unit currency type denotes the Statistical (STAT) currency used to record financial statistics in the financial reports, allocation formulas, and other calculations.

When do I create or edit ISO languages?

Edit the names and descriptions of International Organization for Standardization (ISO) languages to determine how they appear in the application. The ISO languages are a part of the ISO 639 standard. If any change to the ISO standard doesn't reflect in the application, you can update the ISO alpha-2 code or add languages to provide up-to-date information.

When do I edit languages?

Installed languages automatically appear on the Manage Languages page. This page also displays all languages that are available for installation and translation. Each dialect is treated as a separate language.

Generally, you don't need to edit any of the detailed fields unless absolutely necessary.

When do I create or edit time zones?

Though all standard time zones are provided, enable only a subset for use in lists of time zone values. You can add time zones if new zones became standard and the application isn't yet patched with the latest values.

Manage Audit Policies

Managing Audit Policies: Explained

Auditing is used to monitor user activity and all configuration, security, and data changes that have been made to an application. Auditing involves recording and retrieving information pertaining to the creation, modification, and removal of business objects. All actions performed on the business objects and the modified values are also recorded. The audit information is stored without any intervention of the user or any explicit user action.

Use audit policies to select specific business objects and attributes to be audited. The decision to create policies usually depends on the type of information to be audited and to the level of detail required for reporting.

Enabling Audit Functionality

For Oracle Applications Cloud, you must configure the business objects and select the attributes before enabling audit. If you enable audit without configuring the business objects, auditing remains inactive. By default, auditing is disabled for all



applications. To enable and manage audit, ensure that you have a role with the assigned privilege Manage Audit Policies (FND_MANAGE_AUDIT_POLICIES_PRIV). For appropriate assignment of roles and privileges, check with your security administrator.

To enable auditing for Oracle Fusion Middleware products, select one of the levels at which auditing is required for that product. The audit levels are predefined and contain the metadata and events to be audited. For more information, see Audit Events for Oracle Applications Cloud Middleware (Doc ID 2114143.1) on My Oracle Support at https://support.oracle.com.

If you don't want an application to be audited, you can stop the audit process by setting the Audit Level option to None.

Related Topics

• Audit Events for Oracle Applications Cloud Middleware

Configuring Audit Business Object Attributes: Points to Consider

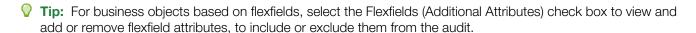
Audit enables tracking the change history of particular attributes of a business object. However, those objects and their attributes must be selected for audit and auditing must be enabled for that application. Your configuration settings determine which attributes to audit for a given object, and when the audit starts and ends. Auditing takes into account all the operations performed on an object and its attributes, such as create, update, and delete. To configure audit business object attributes, navigate to the Manage Audit Policies page in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

Selecting an Application

To set up auditing, you must select a web application that contains the required business objects that can be audited. From the list of business objects, select those business objects that you want to audit. Selecting a business object also displays its attributes that are enabled for auditing.

Selecting Attributes

For each selected business object to be audited, select the corresponding attributes to include in the audit. All attributes that belong to that object are by default selected for audit and appear on the user interface. However, you can add or remove attributes from the list. When you remove an attribute from the list, you stop auditing it even when the parent object is selected for audit. So, if you want an attribute to be audited, you must add it to the list. If the object selected in an audit hierarchy is also a part of several other audit hierarchies, the attribute configuration for that object is applicable to all the hierarchies in that application.



Starting and Stopping Audit

The business object is ready for audit after you select its attributes and save the configuration changes. However, to start auditing, the audit level for Oracle Applications Cloud must be set to **Auditing** on the Manage Audit Policies page.

To stop auditing an object, you can deselect the entire object and save the configuration. As a result, all its selected attributes are automatically deselected and are not audited. To continue to audit the business object with select attributes, deselect those attributes that are not to be audited. When users view the audit history for an application, they can specify the period for which they want the results. Therefore, make a note of when you start and stop auditing an application.

For example, users intend to view the audit history of an object for the previous week, but auditing for that object was stopped last month. They wouldn't get any audit results for that week, because during the entire month that object wasn't



audited. Even if you enable audit for that object today, users can't get the wanted results because audit data until today isn't available.

Configuring Audit: Highlights

To set up auditing for Oracle Applications Cloud, use the Manage Audit Policies page in the Setup and Maintenance work area. To set up auditing for Oracle Fusion Middleware products, select the level of auditing mapped to a predefined set of metadata and the events that have to be audited. Information about configuring audit for Oracle Fusion Middleware products is provided in Oracle Fusion Middleware guides.

You can also create a configuration file and deploy it to audit a specific Oracle Fusion Middleware product. The configuration details for Oracle Fusion Middleware products are available as audit-specific assets that you can use to create the config.xml configuration file. To get a list of audit-specific assets, see Audit Events for Oracle Applications Cloud Middleware (Doc ID 2114143.1) on My Oracle Support at https://support.oracle.com.

Oracle Fusion Middleware Products

 Configure business objects to enable auditing in Oracle Fusion Middleware products. Refer to the Oracle Fusion Middleware Security and Administrator's Guide for Web Services.

See: Auditing Web Services

Oracle Fusion Security Products

• Configure business objects to enable auditing in Oracle Fusion security products. Refer to Oracle Fusion Middleware Application Security Guide.

See: Oracle Fusion Middleware Audit Framework Reference

Related Topics

Audit Events for Oracle Applications Cloud Middleware

Audit Impersonation: Explained

Users can temporarily designate other users to impersonate their profiles and perform application tasks on their behalf. By default, all impersonations are audited. In the global area, click your user name and from the Settings and Actions menu, select **Set Preferences**.

At run time, audit setup tracks and stores information about all attributes, whether auditing is enabled for an attribute or not. As a result, impersonation auditing is also active even when auditing is disabled for an application. The audit history captures the impersonator information in addition to the actual user information. Therefore, while viewing audit history, users can retrieve the audited information, filtered by an impersonated user.

To assign or modify impersonations, in the Tasks pane on the Preferences page, click **Proxies**. You can search for the users who can be impersonated and switch the access to that user.

Note: The associated profile option Audit Impersonation Transaction Enabled is enabled by default. To disable it, set its profile value to **No**.



Related Topics

Proxies: Explained

Manage Oracle Social Network Objects

Managing Oracle Social Network Objects: Explained

Use the Manage Oracle Social Network Objects task for managing the Oracle Social Network Objects. The integration of Oracle Social Network with applications and business processes brings key attributes from the applications to share, socialize, and update information. This helps in making better business decisions based on additional information that you obtain and analyze within your social network environment.

Use the Manage Oracle Social Network Objects page to set up and define:

- The business objects and attributes to enable
- The enablement method for social network integration with Oracle Applications Cloud

To open the Manage Oracle Social Network Objects page, start in the **Setup and Maintenance Overview** page and search for the Manage Oracle Social Network Objects task.

Use Oracle Social Network to:

- · Discuss projects and plans in public forums
- Maintain:
 - Membership groups
 - Activity feeds of the people you select
- Facilitate:
 - One-on-one Conversations
 - Reviews
 - Document sharing
- Note: Oracle Social Network is currently available in Cloud implementations only.

An important aspect of managing Oracle Social Network objects is enabling business objects for integration.

Enabling Business Objects for Integration

A business object can't be shared within social network until a functional administrator or implementor:

- Accesses the Manage Oracle Social Network Objects page in Oracle Applications Cloud
- Enables the business object for social network integration



Enabling Social Networking on Objects: Critical Choices

You can determine whether information about a business object, such as benefit plans or sales accounts, displays in Oracle Social Network. If you enable an object for sharing, you allow users to collaborate on the object through social networking. You can choose whether all instances of an object are shared, or only at the user's discretion. You can also choose which attributes are shared, such as names, details, and who made the last update.

In addition to a wide range of predefined objects, you can share:

- Custom objects and attributes created in Application Composer
- Custom fields created in descriptive flexfields

Use the Manage Oracle Social Network Objects task in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

After you click **Enable Object**, select one of the following enablement options:

- Manual
- Automatic
- No

Manual

If you select this option, which is recommended, you let users decide whether to share each instance of the object with the social network. Once shared, all updates to the enabled attributes of the instance appear on the social network. If the instance is deleted, that information is also shared.

Click **Enable All** to enable all objects for all applications. Enable All automatically applies the Manual option, which means that the user can choose whether to share an object instance.

Automatic

With this option, news about all instances of the object appears on the social network, including:

- Every newly created instance
- All subsequent updates to the enabled attributes
- Deletion of any instances

No

With this option, which is the default value, no news about the object appears on the social network.

Note: When you click Disable Object, the enabled setting of the selected business object is automatically changed to No.

After you enable a business object, you must enable one or more attributes of the object. Only the enabled attributes are shared. The Status column in the Business Objects table indicates which enabled business objects don't yet have an enabled attribute. For these objects, only the following information appear on the social network:

- Internal bookkeeping information, when creating or updating an instance of the object.
- News that an instance is deleted.



Update Translations: Explained

The Update Translations process sends attribute labels and business object names to Oracle Social Network for use in the user interface.

In social network, the attribute or business object labels appear in the language of your locale. If you change the locale in social network, then the attribute or business object labels appear in the updated language. However, the data appears in the language in which it was originally sent to social network. If you have previously sent an instance of the business object to social network, then the instance data isn't updated. Clicking **Update Translations** on the Manage Oracle Social Network Objects page sends translations for business objects with the enablement option as **Manual** or **Automatic**.

Synchronize Business Objects: Explained

Use **Synchronize** on the Manage Oracle Social Network Objects page to synchronize business objects. This resends the definitions of business objects having the enablement option as **Manual** or **Automatic** to Oracle Social Network.

Use the Synchronize button at the:

- Business Objects table level: To resend the definitions of a selected business object to social network. This
 button is enabled only when you select a row for a business object with the enablement option as Manual or
 Automatic.
- Manage Oracle Social Network Objects page level: To resend the definitions of all business objects with the
 enablement option as Manual or Automatic to social network.
- Note: If you had modified any business object enabled for social network and not saved your changes, then on clicking **Synchronize**, a warning message appears. This message informs you that you have not saved your changes, and you can select one of the following options:
 - Save and Synchronize: To save the modified business objects, and synchronize the unmodified business objects.
 - **Synchronize**: To ignore any unsaved business objects, and only synchronize the unmodified business objects.
 - Cancel: To cancel the synchronization task.

FAQs for Manage Oracle Social Network Objects

What happens if I update translations?

When you update translations, you send translations for business objects with the enablement option as **Manual** or **Automatic** to Oracle Social Network.

On updating translations, you also:

- Synchronize the newly translated text from Oracle Applications Cloud so that it can be used within social network.
 This means you can:
 - Install and enable a new language.
 - o Take a language patch at any time.



Send attribute labels and business object names to social network for use in its user interface.

How can I update translations?

Use **Update Translations** on the Manage Oracle Social Network Objects page for subsequent updates to labels and attributes.

Use the **Update Translations** button at the:

- **Business Objects table level**: To send translations for a selected business object to Oracle Social Network. This button is enabled only when you select a row for a business object with the enablement option as Manual or Automatic.
- Manage Oracle Social Network Objects page level: To send translations for all business objects with the enablement option as Manual or Automatic to social network.
- Note: When you save the enablement of a business object to social network, it sends the translations as well. Hence, you need not click **Update Translations** after saving the enablement.

When do I update translations?

Run the **Update Translations** process only after you install a new language pack of Oracle Applications Cloud.

Updating translations synchronizes the newly translated text to Oracle Social Network for integration with Oracle Applications Cloud.

Note: When you save the enablement of a business object to social network, it sends the translations as well. Hence, you need not click **Update Translations** after saving the enablement.

What happens if I synchronize business objects?

When you synchronize business objects, you resend the definitions of business objects having the enablement option as **Manual** or **Automatic** to Oracle Social Network.

When do I synchronize business objects?

Run the Synchronize process after you use customization sets to import the setup from the Manage Oracle Social Network Objects page in another environment.

You can also run the process whenever you want to synchronize the settings of business objects with social network without making changes in the Manage Oracle Social Network Objects page.

Related Topics

Using Customization Migration to Move Customizations: Points to Consider

Manage Applications Core Common Reference Objects



Manage Applications Core Messages

Common Messages: Points to Consider

Message names that begin with FND_CMN are common messages. Each common message can appear in multiple places in any product family across Oracle Fusion Applications. For example, the FND_CMN_NEW_SRCH message can be used for any search to indicate that no results were found. Common messages of type error or warning are part of the message dictionary.

Creating and Editing Common Messages

You can create custom common messages for use in multiple places. However, ensure that you follow the predefined naming convention and numbering series associated with the application or module.

Note: Don't use FND_CMN as the prefix for your custom messages because all the predefined common messages begin with it.

Common messages can be used in any application. Therefore, consider the ramifications if you edit any aspect of the message, including incident and logging settings. Changes would be reflected in all instances where the message is used. For example, if you change the message text, ensure that the text is generic and applies to the entire site of Oracle Fusion Applications implementation.

Manage Applications Core Administrator Profile Values

Profile Options and Related General Preferences: How They Work Together

The general preferences such as Language, Territory, or Date Format that you access from the global area have corresponding predefined profile options.

General Preferences

When users define their preferred Date Format, Language, or Currency, they are setting the value of a profile option at the user level.

Profile Options

When users don't specify anything as their preferences, the Site level profile option takes effect.

Setting Up for General Troubleshooting: Points to Consider

To help the help desk troubleshoot issues that users encounter in the application, users can record the issue while they reproduce it. Some advanced users might also need detailed information in the About This Page dialog box. Setting up for troubleshooting involves making sure that users have the right access, and determining how many users can record at the same time.

Access

Check with your security administrator that the appropriate users are assigned roles that inherit the following privileges:

- Record and View Issue (FND_RECORD_AND_VIEW_ISSUE_PRIV): To create a basic recording
- Set Issue Recording Advanced Options (FND_SET_ISSUE_RECORDING_ADVANCED_OPTIONS_PRIV): To set advanced options before starting the recording



• View Version Information (FND_VIEW_VERSION_INFORMATION_PRIV): To see the versions that technical components of the application are on

Number of Users

Recordings are stored on servers, and by default, up to five users can record at the same time on each server. For performance reasons, you can set the Maximum Number of Users Allowed to Record Issues (ORA_FND_RECORD_ISSUE_MAX_USERS) profile option to a number lower than five.

Related Topics

- Recording Issues to Troubleshoot: Procedure
- How can I view the version information of an application?
- Setting Profile Option Values: Procedure

Managing Profile Option Values for CORS Headers: Points to Consider

You can set profile option values for the CORS headers using the Manage Administrator Profile Values task in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

CORS Headers

This table lists the CORS headers that you can set profile option values for.

CORS Header	Profile Option Name (Profile Option Code)	Profile Option Values
Access-Control-Allow-Origin	Allowed Domains (ORACLE. ADF. VIEW. ALLOWEDORIGINS)	 Valid values for allowed origins: URL of the specific origin, for example, http://www.mydomain.com Comma-separated list of origins, for example, http://www.mydomain.com, http://adc6160507.us.oracle.com, http://software.dzhuvinov.com * to allow access to resources from all origins Empty (no value set) to prevent access to resources from any origin Note: You must set a value for this header to enable CORS.
Access-Control-Max-Age	CORS: Access-Control-Max-Age (CORS_ACCESS_CONTROL_MAX_AGE)	Default value for caching preflight request is 3600 seconds.
Access-Control-Allow-Methods	CORS: Access-Control-Allow-Methods (CORS_ACCESS_CONTROL_ALLOW_METHODS)	Default values for allowed methods are OPTIONS, HEAD, GET, POST, PUT, PATCH, DELETE.
Access-Control-Allow-Headers	CORS: Access-Control-Allow-Headers (CORS_ACCESS_CONTROL_ALLOW_ HEADERS)	Default values for allowed headers are Accept, Accept-Encoding, Cache- Control, Content-MD5, Content-Type, If-Match, If-None-Match,Origin, User-



CORS Header	Profile Option Name (Profile Option Code)	Profile Option Values Agent, X-HTTP-Method-Override, X- Requested-By.
		Note: You must include Authorization, with a comma as the delimiter, to the list of allowed headers. For example: Accept, Accept- Encoding, Cache-Control, Authorization
Access-Control-Allow-Credentials	CORS: Access-Control-Allow-Credentials (CORS_ ACCESS_ CONTROL_ ALLOW_ CREDENTIALS)	 True to enable sending credentials with the request False, which is the default value, to disable sending credentials with the request

Related Topics

- Setting Profile Option Values: Procedure
- CORS: Explained

How can I enable the privacy statement?

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, open the Manage Applications Core Administrator Profile Values task and search for the **Privacy Statement URL** profile option. In the profile values section, update the **Profile Value** text box with the full URL of the web page containing the privacy content.

In the global area, click your user name and from the Settings and Actions menu, select **About This Page.**. Click **Privacy Statement** to view the linked web page.

How can I make message components visible only to specific users?

Use the Manage Administrator Profile Values task to determine the visibility of the message components. For the **Message Mode** profile option, set the profile value to either User or Administrator. Based on the set value, the administrator or user actions and details appear for the intended audience.

However, the message components are visible to the audience based on their predefined access rights. Anyone having a user level access can't view the Administrator message components. If you set the profile value to the administrators of a specific product, the message components are visible only to that specific audience.

Note: If you don't set any value to the profile option, the visibility of the message component is determined by the default profile option settings.

Related Topics

Setting Profile Option Values: Procedure

Define Global Search



Setting Up the Global Search: Overview

You have many options for setting up the global search, from enabling or disabling it completely to controlling what appears in the autosuggest. For most of the steps, use setup tasks in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

Enabling Global Search

A predefined set of business objects, for example help files in Applications Help, are available for global search. These objects are grouped into categories. The search gives you results from indexed data, for example the help files with text that matches your search term.

Enabling global search includes setting up the predefined objects and categories, and starting a schedule to refresh the index so that users get the latest results.

- 1. Check with your help desk to make sure that objects, categories, and schedules are already set up.
 - If you're not using an Oracle Cloud implementation, you need to do this setup yourself. For details about enabling search for predefined objects, categories, and indexes, see the Oracle Fusion Applications Administrator's Guide.
- 2. Set the Global Search Enabled (FUSION_APPS_SEARCH_ENABLED) profile option to Yes at the Site level.
 - o Otherwise, the search field isn't available in the global area for any user.
 - o After you set the profile option, users must sign out and sign back in to see the global search.
- Note: Enabling global search is the only mandatory setup. You can skip the rest of the steps below, and just use the default configuration for the global search.

Defining Global Search

Use these tasks in the following tasks lists to control how the global search works:

- Define Global Search task list
 - Manage Global Search Configurations: Define configurations that capture a collection of settings, and determine which configurations are enabled or used as default. Each configuration applies to the global search on all or specific applications or pages.
 - Manage Suggestion Groups: Define suggestion groups, which represent categories of suggestions in the autosuggest.
- Manage Applications Core Common Reference Objects task list
 - Manage Applications Core Alternate Words: Define alternates for search terms that users enter, so that
 the search can also find matches based on the alternate terms.

Retaining Recent Items

You can set the Recent Items Retention (FND_PURGE_RECENT_ITEMS) profile option to determine how long to retain recent items for the global search autosuggest. A page that the user opened can appear in the user's autosuggest until the specified number of days passes. Aside from the autosuggest, this profile option also applies to the recent items tracked under **Favorites and Recent Items** in the global area.



Related Topics

Setting Profile Option Values: Procedure

Manage Global Search Configurations

Setting Global Search Configurations as Enabled or Default: Examples

Each global search configuration contains settings for the global search, and a configuration can apply to specific pages or applications. Use the Manage Global Search Configurations page to enable or disable configurations, and select the one to use as the default. The following scenarios explain which configurations actually apply to the global search, depending on the configurations that you enable or set as default.

Predefined Default

The predefined Default configuration is always enabled and set as a default. This configuration is the working default unless a custom global search configuration is also set as a default. In this scenario, you don't enable any other configuration, so this Default configuration applies to the global search on all pages, in all applications.

Custom Default

You create a custom global search configuration that applies to page A and application B. Later, you set your configuration as the default. Only this custom configuration and the predefined Default configuration are enabled. Both are set as default.

The result is that:

- Your custom configuration overrides the predefined Default one and becomes the working default.
- Even though you defined your custom configuration to apply to page A and application B, it now actually applies to all pages and all applications. This is because your configuration is the working default, and no other configuration is enabled.

Specific Pages or Applications

You're using either the predefined Default configuration or a custom configuration as the default. You also enable:

- Configuration 1: Applies to application A
- Configuration 2: Applies to application B and a few pages in application A

The result is that:

- Configuration 1 applies to all pages in application A, except the few pages that use configuration 2.
- Configuration 2 applies to all pages in application B, plus the few pages in application A.
- The default configuration applies to all other applications and pages.

Creating Global Search Configurations: Procedure

Predefined global search configurations control how the global search behaves and looks. You can't edit these configurations, but you can duplicate them and edit the copies, or create your own from scratch.

Creating a Configuration

Follow these steps:

1. Open the Setup and Maintenance work area, and go to the Manage Global Search Configurations task.



- 2. Click Create, or select a row and click Duplicate.
 - Note: You can't delete a configuration after you create it, but you can disable it.
- 3. For the short name (identifier for your configuration), enter an alphanumeric code with uppercase letters and no spaces.
- **4.** Enter a user-friendly name and description for the configuration.
- 5. Select the **Default** check box if you want to use your configuration as the default instead of the predefined Default configuration. If another custom configuration was already set as the default, then your configuration becomes the new custom default.
- 6. Select a product family if the configuration is for applications or pages within a specific family. Otherwise, select **Common**.
- 7. If you're creating a duplicate, click **Save and Close**. To go on to the next steps and define more settings, select your configuration and click **Edit**.
- 8. Enter a module within the product family you selected. If you selected the Common family, then select the **Oracle Middleware Extensions for Applications** module.
- 9. Use the tabs to define your configuration:
 - Autosuggest: Determine what's available to users in the global search autosuggest, as well as how the autosuggest looks and behaves.
 - Search Field: Control the search field in the global area and in the search results dialog box.
 - Search Results: Enable or disable saved and recent searches, select the search categories available to users, and define settings for filters.
 - Pages: Indicate the applications or pages that this global search configuration applies to.
- 10. Save your work.

Setting Up the Autosuggest for the Global Search: Procedure

Use global search configurations to determine what's available to users in the autosuggest. You select the suggestion groups to include in configurations. The configurations also determine how the autosuggest looks and behaves.

Prerequisite

Open the Autosuggest tab in the Create or Edit Global Search Configuration page.

Defining the Content

To select suggestion groups and determine how they're displayed in the autosuggest:

- 1. In the Suggestion Group section on the Autosuggest tab, move the groups you want to include into the **Selected Groups** pane.
 - The **Enabled** column in the Available Groups pane indicates if the group is defined (on the Manage Suggestion Groups page) to be displayed by default or not in the autosuggest.
- 2. In the **Enabled** column in the Selected Groups pane, select one of the following values. The **Displayed by Default** column shows the resulting behavior in the autosuggest, based on what you select in the **Enabled** column.

Note:

- **Inherit:** In the autosuggest, the group is displayed or hidden by default depending on what's defined for the group.
- Yes: The group is displayed by default, no matter what's defined for the group.



- **No:** The group is hidden by default, no matter what's defined for the group.
- Order the selected groups as you want them to appear in the autosuggest.
- 4. Above the Suggestion Groups section, select the Enable personalization of search groups check box if you want to allow users to override your configuration. Users can hide, show, and reorder suggestion groups for their autosuggest.
- Tip: Click the Manage Suggestion Groups button at any time to edit or create suggestion groups. When you return to the Autosuggest tab, click Refresh to reflect the changes you made to suggestion groups.

Defining the Appearance

Optionally define settings in the Appearance section on the Autosuggest tab:

- Show Suggestion Group Headings: Select this option to display suggestion group headings (text and icon) in the autosuggest. Even if you do so, if a group is defined on the Manage Suggestion Groups page to not show headings, then its heading won't be displayed.
- Show Icons: Select this option to display icons next to suggestions in the autosuggest.
- No Suggestions Message: Enter the message that appears when no suggestions match the user's search term. If
 you leave this field blank, then no autosuggest or anything at all appears when there are no matches.

Defining the Behavior

Optionally define settings in the Behavior section on the Autosuggest tab:

- Show Top Suggestions: Enable this option to display suggestions in the autosuggest as soon as the user clicks in the search field, even without entering a search term. For example, the last few pages the user opened would appear as suggestions under the Recent Items group.
- **Minimum Characters for Autosuggest:** Enter the number of characters that users must enter in the search field before matching suggestions appear in the autosuggest.
- Maximum Number of Suggestions: Enter the maximum number of suggestions to be displayed across all suggestion groups. This total is distributed as equally as possible among the groups.

Disabling Saved Searches and Recent Searches for the Global Search: Points to Consider

Global search configurations determine if saved searches and recent searches are enabled in the global search. Consider the following points when you use disable either. In the Create or Edit Global Search Configuration page, open the Search Results tab and use the Saved and Recent Searches section.

Disabling Saved Searches

If you disable saved searches:

- You disable the Save button in the search results dialog box, so users can't create or edit saved searches for global search.
- You're not disabling the Saved Searches suggestion group. Users can still see any applicable saved searches in the global search autosuggest.

Disabling Recent Searches

If you disable recent searches:

The application isn't saving recent searches.



• You're not disabling the Recent Searches suggestion group. Users can still see in the autosuggest any applicable searches that they recently ran before you disabled recent searches.

Setting Up Filters for the Global Search: Procedure

To determine how users can filter their search results, define the appropriate settings when you create or edit global search configurations. You can set up search categories so that users can limit the scope of their search to begin with, or refine their search results.

Prerequisite

Open the Search Results tab on the Create or Edit Global Search Configuration page.

Setting Up Categories to Narrow Search Scope

To let users select the categories to search on before running the search:

- 1. In the Filters section, enable personalization of search categories.
- 2. In the Search Categories section, select the categories that users can search on. If you don't select any, then every category is available to users.

Setting Up Categories as Search Result Filters

To let users filter search results based on category:

- 1. In the Filters section, select the check boxes to show subcategories, facets, or both. Categories are always displayed. Subcategories are an additional level of filters below categories, and facets are a level below categories.
- 2. Select a filter display style so that the list of all available category names are displayed:
 - o Inline: In the Filters pane in the search results
 - LOV: In a Categories dialog box that users can open from the Filters pane
- 3. In the Search Categories section, select the categories to use as filters. This is the same set of categories to be used for personalization. If you don't select any, then every category is available to users.

Setting Other Options for Filters

You can also use the Filters section to:

- Show Hit Counts: Show the number of search results that match each filter value
- Enable Clear All Filters: Allow users to clear all filters with one click of a button

In the Last Updated Date Filters section, select the criteria to use as filters, based on the last update date. If you don't select any, then every date filter is available to users.

Specifying the Pages or Applications That a Global Search Configuration Applies To: Procedure

As part of defining your global search configuration, you can specify the pages or applications (or both) that your configuration applies to. If you want your configuration to apply to all pages in all applications, then skip these steps.

Prerequisites

If you want the global search configuration to apply to specific applications, you need to find the application short name.

- 1. Open the Setup and Maintenance work area and go to the Manage Taxonomy Hierarchy task.
- 2. Expand the Oracle Fusion node.
- 3. Select the row (with the Application module type) for your application, and click **Edit Module**.



4. In the Application Details section, see the **Application Short Name** column and note down the value to use as the application short name.

Adding Pages or Applications

Follow these steps:

- 1. On the Create or Edit Global Search Configurations page, open the Pages tab.
- 2. Click the **Create** icon
- 3. In the **View Type** column, indicate if the configuration applies to a specific page or application.
- **4.** Enter a view ID to identify the page or application:
 - Tip: You can use % as a wildcard for the page or application value, such as **Example**% for all pages that start with **Example**.
 - Page: Enter the last part of the URL you get when you open that page. For example, enter ExamplePage from the URL http://exampleServer/homePage/faces/ExamplePage.
 - o Application: Enter the application short name with a wildcard at the end, for example номерадерря.
- 5. Add more pages or applications as needed.

Manage Suggestion Groups

Suggestion Groups for the Global Search: Explained

A suggestion group is a category of suggestions that users see in the autosuggest for the global search. For example, if the user enters Report in the search field, then the Navigator suggestion group in the autosuggest shows any Navigator menu names with Report.

Managing Suggestion Groups

Each suggestion group can have a heading, for example Recent Items, as well as an icon that appears before the heading text. The icon helps users identify what the group is all about.

You can manage suggestion groups to:

- Show or hide the group by default in the autosuggest
- Enter the heading text
- Define if the heading text appears in the autosuggest or not
- Identify the image file to use as the icon
- Tip: You can copy predefined suggestion groups and edit them to create customized versions.

To manage suggestion groups, open the Setup and Maintenance work area and use either the:

- Manage Suggestion Groups task
- Autosuggest tab when you create or edit global search configurations using the Manage Global Search Configurations task



Using in Global Search Configurations

Just because a suggestion group is defined to be displayed by default doesn't necessarily mean that it in fact appears in the autosuggest. Global search configurations determine which groups are included for the autosuggest, whether icons appear for the headings, and so on.

You can use a suggestion group in many or all global search configurations. And ultimately, if personalizing suggestion groups is enabled, then users can show, hide, and reorder the suggestion groups included in the global search configuration.

Changing the Heading Text and Icon for Suggestion Groups: Worked Example

This example shows how to change the icon and text for a suggestion group heading in the global search autosuggest. In this example, you start out with the predefined Default global search configuration enabled, and no custom configurations.

The following table summarizes key decisions for this scenario.

Decisions to Consider	In This Example
Which predefined suggestion group do you want to change?	Recent Items
What do you want the new heading text to be?	Recently Visited Pages
Which image do you want to use as the icon?	A .png file (16 by 16 pixels) that's used on your company Web site
Do you want the new suggestion group to appear in the autosuggest by default?	Yes
Which pages should the changes apply to?	All pages

To use a new icon and heading text for the suggestion group:

- Make a copy of the predefined Recent Items suggestion group.
- Update global search configurations to use the custom suggestion group.

Duplicating the Predefined Suggestion Group

- 1. Open the Setup and Maintenance work area, and go to the Manage Suggestion Groups task.
- 2. Select the Recent Items group and click **Duplicate**.
- **3.** In the new row, enter **RECENTCUSTOM** as the short name.
- 4. Change the display name to **Custom Recent Items**.
- 5. Change the description to **Custom version of Recent Items**.
- 6. With your new row still selected, click Edit.
- 7. In the Heading section, enter **Recently Visited Pages** in the **Text** field.
- 8. In the **Icon** field, enter the full URL to your .png file.
- 9. Click Save and Close.

Updating Global Search Configurations

- 1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, go to the Manage Global Search Configurations task.
- 2. Select the Default configuration and click **Duplicate**.
- 3. Fill out the row for your new configuration, selecting the **Default** check box.
- 4. With the row still selected, click the **Edit** icon.



- 5. In the Autosuggest tab, click the **Refresh** button in the Suggestion Group section if you don't see your custom suggestion group.
- 6. Move the Custom Recent Items group into the Selected Groups list, and move the Recent Items group out.
- 7. In the **Enabled** column for the Custom Recent Items Group, select **Yes**.
- 8. In the Appearance section, make sure that headings are set to be displayed.
- 9. Click Save and Close.

Creating Suggestion Groups for the Global Search: Procedure

For the autosuggest in the global search, you can create new suggestion groups that determine suggestions in a way that's different from the predefined groups. Creating such suggestion groups involves developer tasks and is not applicable to Oracle Cloud implementations. After the code for the group is ready, you define the new suggestion group in the Create Suggestion Group page.

Note: You can't delete a suggestion group after you create it.

Prerequisites

Before you define the new suggestion group:

- Your developer writes code for the new suggestion group and provides you values for some of the suggestion group settings. For more information on implementing autosuggest, see the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer's Guide.
- If you want to display an icon for the group in the autosuggest, make sure that the graphics file:
 - o Can be accessed using a URL.
 - o Is 16 by 16 pixels or smaller.

Creating Suggestion Groups

Follow these steps:

- 1. Open the Setup and Maintenance work area and open the Manage Suggestion Groups task.
- 2. Click Create.
- 3. For the short name (identifier for your group), enter a unique alphanumeric code with uppercase letters and no spaces.
- 4. Enter a display name for the group, which can be different from the heading that appears in autosuggest.
- 5. Enter a description.
- 6. Determine if the suggestion group should be displayed by default in the autosuggest.
- 7. Select a product family if the group is for business objects from a specific family. Otherwise, use **Common**.
- **8.** Select a module within the product family. If the product family is Common, then use the Oracle Middleware Extensions for Applications module.
- 9. In the **Data Source** field, enter the value your developer provides to determine the records to display in this suggestion group.
- 10. In the Context Code and Object Type fields, enter the value your developer provides, if any.
- 11. In the Heading section, determine if the heading (text and icon) is visible in the autosuggest.
- 12. Enter the exact text to appear as the heading of this group in the autosuggest.
- **13.** To display an icon, enter in the **Icon** field the full URL to the image file, or a relative URL that your developer provides if the file is stored with other application artifacts.
- 14. Save your changes.



- Note: Global search configurations:
- Determine which suggestion groups are actually available for the global search.
- Determine whether each included group is visible by default or not in the autosuggest.
- Can hide suggestion group headings in the autosuggest, even if the group is defined to show headings.

Managing Alternate Words for Global Search: Points to Consider

Use the Manage Applications Core Alternate Words task in the Setup and Maintenance work area to maintain a list of search terms that users might use for the global search. For each user keyword, define a possible alternate to also search on. Consider various reasons for defining these word pairs, and also decide whether to automatically search on both terms or not

Reasons for Word Pairs

This table provides some reasons and examples for managing alternate words.

Purpose	What You Enter	User Input Keyword Example	Alternate Keyword Example
Correct user typos	A possible typo as the user input keyword, and the correctly spelled term as the alternate keyword	Oracel	Oracle
Account for abbreviations and acronyms	An abbreviation or acronym and what it stands for	BI	business intelligence
Account for common variations in spelling	Two different ways to spell the same term	email	e-mail
Enable matches on synonyms	A pair of terms that are functionally similar	hyperlink	link
Help new users who are not familiar with what things are called in the application	The term that your users might search on as the user input keyword, and the equivalent in the application as the alternate keyword	concurrent program	scheduled process

Note: You don't have to account for plurals or case sensitivity. For example, if you have **email** as a user input word, you don't have to also add **Email** or **emails** as an input word.

Automatically Search Both Terms

For each pair of terms, use the Automatically Search Both check box to determine what happens when the user enters the input word and starts the search:

• Yes: The search runs and displays results based on both terms.



Before you select this check box, carefully consider possible impact. For example, would users get a lot of unnecessary search results, making it harder to find what they want?

• **No:** The user sees a message and can decide to continue searching on just the input term, or to search on just the alternate term instead.





12 Define WebLogic Communication Services Configuration

Oracle Sales Cloud CTI: Highlights

Oracle Sales Cloud Computer Telephony Integration (CTI) integrates with your telephony environment and must be manually enabled in your deployment. This topic highlights what is required to set up the CTI feature and to implement logging of the calls made using the CTI feature.

CTI is a feature of the customer contact process. You initiate phone communication to customers and employees with a click of your mouse, leveraging your customer contact information and the application context. The CTI feature uses Oracle WebLogic Communication Services to enable communications. Applications that provide the CTI functionality do so primarily through contextual actions.

Additionally, CTI utilizes Oracle Sales Cloud tasks as an optional transaction logging feature that will track information about the call such as the customer, call participants, a time stamp noting the start time of the call, the direction of the communication, in or outbound, and the resolution code.

Terms used in setting up these communications include:

- PSTN: Public switched telephone network is the network of the world's public circuit-switched telephone networks.
- SIP: Session initiation protocol, an open signaling protocol standard that is used to set up phone calls
- TPCC: Third Party Call Control enables an application to control the telephony network to set up calls automatically.
- Oracle WebLogic Communication Services. Offers the TPCC service to Oracle applications and sets up the calls using SIP integration with the telephony network.

The setup task list Define WebLogic Communication Services Configuration includes four tasks required for the correct configuration and implementation of CTI. One optional task, separate from the setup task list, is required for implementing task logging.

You can find information about implementing CTI in the Oracle Sales Cloud Administrator's Guide. Detailed information about configuring and maintaining WebLogic Communication Services is found in the Oracle WebLogic Communication Services Administrator's Guide

Configure and Deploy WebLogic Server

• Deploy WebLogic Communication Services: After the Oracle WebLogic communication server is deployed, this manual task activates the server.

See: Oracle WebLogic Communication Services Administrator's Guide

Integrate Communications Services

Integrate WebLogic Communication Services with Telephony Network: This manual task integrates communications
within the telephony environment. Oracle WebLogic Communication Services must be configured to interface with
the specific characteristics of the telephony network.

See: Managing Oracle WebLogic Communication Services for CTI Functionality



Specify the Domain and Address

Register a URL for the telephony gateway or soft switch for SIP domain: This task defines the Server protocol, defaulted to http, the external server host address, and external server port address. The Associated Modules section is not required for setup. You can also perform this as a manual task using Topology Manager to configure the address of the SIP Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN) gateway or SIP soft switch serving the users within that domain. This address is needed by CTI to correctly form the SIP addresses required by WebLogic Communication Services. See the link to Configuring PSTN Gateway Address Using Topology Manager: Worked Example.

Enable Click-to-Dial

• After configuring the server and defining the SIP domain, perform the Enable Click-to-Dial task. This task sets the value of the profile option Enable Click-to-Dial to Yes.

Call Logging Using Tasks

To initiate the task based logging for CTI, set the profile option Call Interaction Logging Enabled to Yes'

Configuring PSTN Gateway Address Using Topology Manager: Worked Example

This example demonstrates how, during the implementation of the **Register URL for the telephony gateway or soft switch for SIP domain** task, you must manually configure the PSTN gateway address by registering HzCTDPstnGatewayApp to a given environment using Oracle Fusion Topology Registration

These steps configure the address of the SIP Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN) gateway or SIP soft switch serving the users within that domain. This address is needed by Click-to-Dial to correctly form the SIP addresses required by WebLogic Communication Services. For example: sip:+1650-555-1212@pstn_gateway.oracle.com;user=phone where pstn gateway.oracle.com is the SIP domain. The SIP domain can also be expressed in the format 10.1.1.1 (IP address).

Configuring PSTN Using the Topology Manager

To configure PSTN:

- Sign in to Oracle Sales Cloud as a user that has application implementation consultant and WebLogic Services administration roles.
- 2. In Setup and Maintenance, click Register Enterprise Applications from the regional area under **Topology Registration.**
- 3. On the Register Enterprise Applications page, click the plus icon to add an enterprise application. An Add Enterprise Application dialog box appears.
- Enter the new application information: Click Search in the Enterprise Application list field. Enter HzCTDPstnGatewayApp in the name field and click Search.
- 5. Click OK.
- **6.** Enter the other fields in the Add Enterprise Application dialog box.



Field	Value
Name	HzCTDPstnGatewayApp
Server Protocol	SIP This field is ignored by Click-to-Dial. Oracle WebLogic Communication Service (OWLCS) always uses the SIP protocol.
External Server Host	10.143.167.91 (Used as an example) A host name can be used instead of an IP address.
External Server Port	0 (Used as an example) This field is ignored by Click-to-Dial.

7. Click Save and Close.





13 Define Custom Enterprise Scheduler Jobs

Home Page Setup

How can I see which applications a Manage Custom Enterprise Scheduler Jobs task includes?

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, see the task's description in the help window for the task, if any. To open the help window, click the help icon next to the task name, on pages such as the Manage Task Lists and Tasks page.



- Click **Show Help** in the global area if you don't see help icons at all on the page.
- Make sure to show the Help column in the table.

You can also:

- 1. Open the work area landing page, the Offerings page.
- 2. Select an offering that contains the specific Manage Custom Enterprise Scheduler Jobs task.
- 3. Open the Setup Task Lists and Tasks file for the offering, in PDF, HTML, or Excel.

Managing Job Definitions: Highlights

Users run scheduled processes based on Oracle Enterprise Scheduler jobs to process data and, in some cases, to provide report output. A job definition contains the metadata that determines what the job does and what options are available to users. You can create and edit job definitions in the Setup and Maintenance work area, using the Manage Custom Enterprise Scheduler Jobs task for your application.

Viewing Job Definitions

- Use the Manage Job Definitions tab to access predefined and custom job definitions.
- The Name column shows an asterisk for predefined job definitions.

Creating Job Definitions

- You or a technical administrator can create jobs based on Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher reports, Java, PL/SQL, or any other supported technology.
- Every predefined or custom job must have a job definition.
- For Oracle Cloud implementations, you can create custom job definitions only for custom jobs based on reports.
- The Enable submission from Enterprise Manager check box is not applicable to Oracle Cloud implementations.



- o If you don't select this check box, then the job can't be run from Enterprise Manager.
- If you select this check box, then you can define parameters for your job definition only in Enterprise Manager.
 Save the rest of your work on the job definition, and then go to Enterprise Manager if you need to define parameters.

Editing Job Definitions

- · You can edit all aspects of custom job definitions.
- For predefined job definitions, you can:
 - Determine if user properties are read-only or not.
 - Edit what are described as job properties in the Oracle Fusion Applications Extensibility Guide for Developers.

See: Customizing Existing Oracle Enterprise Scheduler Job Properties

Managing List of Values Sources: Highlights

A list of values source for Oracle Enterprise Scheduler job definitions determines where a list of values comes from and what the specific values are. Use these lists for parameters and application defined properties, for example a list of countries that users can choose from for a Country parameter.

Note: Since you can't edit parameters for predefined job definitions, list of values sources are only for parameters in custom job definitions.

Accessing List of Values Sources

- Access list of values sources in the Setup and Maintenance work area, using the Manage Custom Enterprise Scheduler Jobs task for your application.
- Open the Manage List of Values Sources tab.

Creating and Editing List of Values Sources

- Search for list of values sources to edit or delete, or to make sure a particular source doesn't already exist before
 you create it.
- Create list of values sources to register them for use in job definitions.

Managing Job Sets: Highlights

A job set identifies the Oracle Enterprise Scheduler jobs to include in a single process set that users can submit instead of running the jobs separately. The job set definition also determines if the jobs run in serial or parallel, or based on other predetermined logic.



Job Set Content

- A job set can contain any number of individual jobs as well as other job sets.
- There can also be multiple levels of nested job sets within a single job set. For example, a job set can include three jobs and two job sets, one of which contains another job set.

Creating and Editing Job Sets

- Access job set definitions in the Setup and Maintenance work area, using the Manage Custom Enterprise Scheduler Jobs task for your application.
- Open the Manage Job Sets tab.





14 Define Applications Core Configuration

Define Applications Core Configuration: Overview

The Define Applications Core Configurations task list contains the Oracle Middleware Extensions for Oracle Application (Applications Core) tasks that support implementation of common functionality such as lookups, profile options, document sequences, and so on.

Use this task list to manage configuration objects that are defined centrally and shared across applications, in addition to tasks classified under the Maintain Common Reference Objects task list. You can search for this task list in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

Related Topics

• Maintain Common Reference Objects: Overview

Define Lookups

Lookups: Explained

Lookups are lists of values in applications. You define a list of values as a lookup type consisting of a set of lookup codes, each code's translated meaning, and optionally a tag. End users see the list of translated meanings as the available values for an object.

Lookups provide a means of validation and lists of values where valid values appear on a list with no duplicate values. For example, an application might store the values Y and N in a column in a table, but when displaying those values in the user interface, Yes or No (or their translated equivalents) should be available for end users to select. For example, the two lookup codes Y and N are defined in the REQUIRED_INDICATOR lookup type.

In another example, a lookup type for marital status has lookup codes for users to specify married, single, or available legal partnerships.

Lookup Type	Lookup Code	Meaning	Tag
MAR_STATUS	М	Married	
	S	Single	
	R	Registered Partner	+NL
	DP	Domestic Partner	-FR, AU
	·	·	·



In this case, tags are used for localizing the codes. All legislations list Married and Single. Only the Dutch legislation lists Registered Partner. And all legislations except France and Australia also list Domestic Partner.

When managing lookups, you need to understand the following.

- Using lookups in applications
- Customization levels
- Accessing lookups
- Enabling lookups
- The three kinds of lookups: standard, common, and set enabled

Using Lookups in Applications

Use lookups to provide validation or a list of values for a user input field in a user interface.

An example of a lookup used for validation is a flexfield segment using a table-validated value set with values from a lookup type. An example of a lookup in a list of values is a profile option's available values from which users select one to set the profile option. Invoice Approval Status gives the option of including payables invoices of different approval statuses in a report. The lookup code values include All, so that users can report by all statuses: Approved, Resubmitted for approval, Pending or rejected, and Rejected.

Customization Level

The customization level of a lookup type determines whether the lookups in that lookup type can be edited. This applies data security to lookups.

Some lookup types are locked so no new codes and other changes can be added during implementation or later, as needed. Depending on the customization level of a lookup type, you may be able to change the codes or their meanings. Some lookups are designated as extensible, so new lookup codes can be created during implementation, but the meanings of predefined lookup codes cannot be modified. Some predefined lookup codes can be changed during implementation or later, as needed.

The customization levels are user, extensible, and system. The following table shows which lookup management tasks are allowed at each customization level.

Allowed Task	User	Extensible	System
Deleting a lookup type	Yes	No	No
Inserting new codes	Yes	Yes	No
Updating start date, end date, and enabled fields	Yes	Yes, only if the code is not predefined data	No
Deleting codes	Yes	Yes, only if the code is not predefined data	No
Updating tags	Yes	No	No
Updating module	Yes	No	No



Predefined data means LAST_UPDATED_BY = SEED_DATA_FROM_APPLICATION.

If a product depends on a lookup, the customization level must be system or extensible to prevent deletion.

Once the customization level is set for a lookup type, it can't be modified. The customization level for lookup types created using the Define Lookups page is by default set at the User level.

Standard, Common, and Set-Enabled Lookups

The available kinds of lookups are as follows.

Lookup	Description
Standard	Lists the available codes and translated meanings
Set enabled	Additionally associates a reference data set with the lookup codes
Common	Legacy lookups

Standard lookups are the simplest form of lookup types consisting only of codes and their translated meaning. They differ from common lookups only in being defined in the standard lookup view.

Common lookups exist for reasons of backward compatibility and differ from standard lookups only in being defined in the common lookup view.

Set enabled lookup types store lookup codes that are enabled for reference data sharing. At runtime, a set-enabled lookup code is visible because the value of the determinant identifies a reference data set in which the lookup code is present.

Accessing Lookups

Standard, set-enabled, and common lookups are defined in the Standard, Set-enabled, and Common views, respectively. Applications development may define lookups in an application view to restrict the UI pages where they may appear.

In lookups management tasks, lookups may be associated with a module in the application taxonomy to provide criteria for narrowing a search or limiting the number of lookups accessed by a product specific task such as Manage Purchasing Lookups.

Enabling Lookups

A lookup type is reusable for attributes stored in multiple tables.

Enable lookups based on the following.

- Selecting an Enabled check box
- Specifying an enabled start date, end date, or both
- Specifying a reference data setdeterminant

If you make changes to a lookup, users must sign out and back in before the changes take effect. When defining a list of values for display rather than validation, limit the number of enabled lookup codes to a usable length.

For more information on the predefined lookups and lookup codes, open the Setup and Maintenance work area, and use the tasks in the Define Lookups task list.



Translating Lookups

You can translate the lookups that you defined to the preferred language(s) without changing the language session of the application. Use the translation option available on the lookup code table. By default, for each lookup, all the allowed language rows in the translator dialog box appear in the source language (the current session language). When you edit a particular language entry, you can modify the translated meaning and description to the language in which you want the lookup to appear. Once the updates are made, the end-users can view the lookup in the translated text.

Note: You can add the translation for only as many languages as are permitted by the administrator. The functionality to limit the number of languages displayed on the dialog box is controlled through the Translation Editor Languages profile option. It can be set at the SITE or USER level. If nothing is specified, all active languages are displayed.

Related Topics

Modules in Application Taxonomy: Explained

Managing a Standard Lookup: Example

Creating a new standard lookup involves creating or selecting a lookup type containing the lookup code. The task also involves determining appropriate values for the lookup codes and their meanings. You can only create or edit lookup codes for a particular lookup type if its customization level supports it.

Creating a Lookup Type Called COLORS

Your enterprise needs a list of values for status to be used on various objects such as processes or users. The lookups are colors, so the lookup type you create is COLORS.

Lookup type parameters	Value
Lookup type name	COLORS
Meaning	Status
Description	Status by color
Module	Oracle Fusion Middleware Extensions for Oracle Application

The lookup codes you define for the COLORS lookup type are, BLUE, RED, GREEN, and YELLOW.

Lookup Code	Meaning	Enabled	Display Sequence
BLUE	Urgent	No	4
RED	Stop	Yes	1
GREEN	Proceed	Yes	3



Lookup Code	Meaning	Enabled	Display Sequence
YELLOW	Caution	Yes	2

The Resulting Data Entry List of Values

The enabled lookup codes appear in the list of values for the COLORS lookup type. You must select one of them to complete the activity.

The meanings and the codes are listed here. They appear in the order of the defined display sequence.

Displayed Value	Hidden ID
Stop	RED
Caution	YELLOW
Proceed	GREEN

Analysis

The BLUE lookup code was not enabled and does not appear in the list of values. The display sequence of values in the list of values is alphabetic, unless you enter a number manually to determine the order of appearance. Number 1 indicates the first value that appears in the list. Only lookups that are enabled and active between start and end dates, are visible.

The Transaction Table

When users enter one of the values from the list of values for the lookup type COLORS, the transaction table records the lookup code. In this example, the code is stored in the Status column

Transaction number	User name	Status
1	Jane	RED
2	Bob	YELLOW
3	Alice	BLUE

The status for one user is BLUE because at the time they entered a value, BLUE was enabled. Disabling a lookup code does not affect transaction records in which that code is stored. Data querying and reporting have access to disabled lookup codes in transaction tables.



Managing Set-Enabled Lookups: Examples

Creating a new set-enabled lookup is similar to creating a standard lookup with the addition of specifying a reference data setdeterminant for the lookup codes. You can only create or edit lookup codes for a particular lookup type if its customization level supports it.

The reference data set for a set-enabled lookup code is part of its foreign key. This is unlike other set-enabled entities. Use the Manage Set Assignments task to define and manage reference data set assignments.

Selecting a Reference Group for a Set-Enabled Lookup Type

Specify a reference group for a set-enabled lookup type to indicate which reference data set assignments are available for its lookup codes. For example a COLORS lookup type might be set-enabled for a Countries reference group that includes the US and EU reference data set assignments.

Selecting a Reference Data Set for a Set-Enabled Lookup

The reference data set determines which lookup code is included in the list of values. If a COLORS lookup type contains a RED, YELLOW, ORANGE, and GREEN lookup code, you can enable one RED lookup as coming from the US reference data set and another RED lookup as coming from the EU reference data set with different meanings.

Reference Data Set	Lookup Code	Lookup Meaning
US	RED	Red
US	YELLOW	Yellow
US	GREEN	Green
EU	RED	Rouge
EU	ORANGE	Orange

Some lookup codes may be unique to one or another reference data set as the ORANGE lookup is to the EU reference data set in this example.

In another example, a lookup type called HOLD_REASON provides a list of reasons for applying a hold to a contract renewal. Reference data sets determine which codes are included in the Hold Reason list of values.

Reference Data Set	Lookup Code	Lookup Meaning
US	SEC	SEC Compliance Review
US	DIR	Needs Director's Approval
US	VP	Needs Vice President's Approval



Reference Data Set	Lookup Code	Lookup Meaning
CHINA	CSRC	Pending China Securities Regulatory Commission Review
CHINA	PR	Needs President's Approval
COMMON	REQUESTED	Customer Request

As per the above example, when end-users place a contract on hold in the US business unit, the three reason codes in the US set are available. When placing a contract on hold in the China business unit, the two codes in the China set are available.

FAQs for Define Lookups

How can I access predefined lookups?

Search for predefined lookups using the Define Lookups task list:

- 1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, search for the **Define Lookups** task list and expand it to view the tasks.
- 2. Open the task that corresponds to the lookups you are searching for.
- Enter any of the search parameters and click Search. If you don't know the lookup type or the meaning, use the Module field to filter search results.
- 4. Click a lookup type to view its lookup codes.
 - ▼ Tip: Click the Query By Example icon to filter the lookup codes.

Related Topics

• Using Query By Example: Procedure

How can I edit lookups?

On the Define Lookups page, you can edit the existing lookup codes of a lookup type or add new lookup codes. To open the page, navigate to the Setup and Maintenance work area and search for the Define Lookup task list.

The task list contains three tasks:

- Standard Lookups
- Common Lookups
- Set-enabled Lookups

Each task contains a predefined set of lookup types classified and stored as per the functionality. Open a task to search and edit the required lookup. However, you may not be able to edit a lookup if its customization level doesn't support editing.

Why can't I see my lookup types?

Lookup types are classified using tasks that involve a group of related lookups, such as Manage Geography Lookups. Each task gives you access only to certain lookup types. However, the generic tasks provide access to all lookups types of a kind, such as common lookups associated with the Manage Common Lookups task.



If the lookup types in an application are available in the standard, common, or set-enabled lookups view, they are central to an application. However, lookup types defined for a specific application are managed using the task or task list for that application.

What's the difference between a lookup type and a value set?

A lookup type consists of lookups that are static values in a list of values. Lookup code validation is a one to one match. A table-validated value set may consist of values that are validated through a SQL statement, which allows the list of values to be dynamic.



💡 Tip: You can define a table-validated value set on any table, including the lookups table. Thus, you can change a lookup type into a table-validated value set that can be used in flexfields.

Area of Difference	Lookup Type	Value Set
List of values	Static	Dynamic if the list is table-validated
Validation of values	One to one match of meaning to code included in a lookup view, or through the determinant of a reference data set	Validation by format or inclusion in a table
Format type of values	char	varchar2, number, and so on
Length of value	Text string up to 30 characters	Any type of variable length from 1 to 4000
Duplication of values	Never. Values are unique.	Duplicate values allowed
Management	Both administrators and end-users manage these, except system lookups or predefined lookups at the system customization level, which can't be modified.	Usually administrators maintain these, except some product flexfield codes, such as GL for Oracle Fusion General Ledger that the endusers maintain.

Both lookup types and value sets are used to create lists of values from which users select values.

A lookup type cannot use a value from a value set. However, value sets can use standard, common, or set-enabled lookups.

What's a lookup tag used for?

A tag is an additional label attached to the lookup. Tags are user defined and can be grouped depending on the user's requirement to make search convenient and effective.

The same tag may be used across lookup categories. In such cases, tags are used as a refined search criterion to filter information across several groups and get the custom search result.

How can I search for a specific lookup code?

Use the Query By Example functionality to sort through hundreds of lookup codes for a lookup type, and display a specific lookup code. Enter the first few characters of the lookup code value in any of the relevant fields to filter the records.

Note: The search functionality is case sensitive.



Define Document Sequences

Document Sequences: Explained

You can assign a document sequence number to each business document or business event to uniquely identify it. For example, you can assign a document sequence number to an invoice that gets generated in response to a purchase order. However, you must enable the document sequencing option for that business document or event to start assigning the number. A document sequence number is useful in tracking completed or failed transactions.

You can set up document sequencing in three different modes:

- Automatic
- Manual
- Gapless
- ✓ Note: Plan your document sequencing carefully before you start applying sequence numbers. Avoid switching to a different mode after you saved your work on the Manage Document Sequences and Manage Document Sequence Categories pages.

Automatic Sequencing

Automatic document sequencing assigns a unique number to each document automatically when the document is generated. That unique number is stored in the database. You can set an initial value for the numbering sequence. Thereafter, the numbering is sequential by date and time of creation. If you don't provide an initial value, the application sets the default initial value as 1.

Manual Sequencing

Use the manual sequencing mode to assign a unique number to each document before the document is generated. In manual sequencing, the numeric ordering and completeness of a transaction is not automatically enforced. As a result, users can skip or omit numbers when entering the sequence value. However, each time a user assigns a number, the application validates its uniqueness.

Gapless Sequencing

Gapless sequencing is similar to automatic sequencing. It automatically generates a unique number for each document, but does that only for successfully generated documents. Sequence numbers are not assigned to incomplete or failed documents. As a result, the sequence is maintained for all the successfully generated documents.

Additionally, you can control the gapless document sequencing by enforcing the Transaction Date Validation option. When enabled, this option checks for the transaction date of a particular document and assigns the sequence number accordingly, to chronologically maintain the documents. The sequence numbers and the transaction dates are chronologically correlated to prevent any mismatch of a new document sequence being assigned to an older document or vice versa.

Note: Use this type of sequencing only if necessary because it may affect the performance of the application and slow down transaction processing.



Related Topics

Modules in Application Taxonomy: Explained

Document Sequence Categories: Explained

A document sequence category is a set of documents that share similar characteristics and that are formed into a logical group. Document sequence categories simplify the task of assigning number sequences to specific documents. Instead of assigning a number to each document, you assign a document sequence to one or more document sequence categories. The document sequence category automatically takes care of numbering the documents.

A document sequence category identifies the database table that stores documents resulting from transactions that your users enter. When you assign a sequence to a category, the sequence numbers the documents that are stored in a particular table. You must create document sequence categories to be able to manage the task of assigning document sequences.

Note: Once a document sequence category is created, you can't change the application, the category code, or the table name. Therefore, carefully consider these details and plan your document sequencing requirement before you begin working with the application.

Once you create a document sequence category, it is available for use under the **Document Sequences: Assignments** section on the Manage Document Sequences page. The **Category** field contains the name of the document sequence category. After you create a document sequence, you can assign it to a document sequence category.

Document Sequences: Points to Consider

Sequencing documents is an important business and legal requirement. Therefore, you must first decide the appropriate document sequence to use for a set of documents. Before you begin, here are a few prerequisites:

- Determine beforehand the mode of document sequencing, because you can't switch to other types once a sequence is in use.
- Note details such as the document sequence and document sequence category, for later reference.
- Identify if there are any restrictions or configuration prerequisites.
- Note: Products that implement document sequencing have specifications about its usage. Refer to the corresponding product documentation for specific details and also to determine if there are any restrictions or configuration prerequisites.

Creating and Editing Document Sequences

You can create document sequences that are automatic, manual, or gapless, depending on the business or legal requirement. By default, the current date is considered as the start date. The sequence definition never expires if you don't provide an end date. Among the several options used in creating and editing document sequences, the following options are functionally more important and therefore must be carefully determined:

- Determinant Type: Select to limit the document sequencing activity to certain documents that belong to a specific business entity, such as Ledger, Tax Registration, and so on.
- Initial Value: Enter a value for the first document in your sequence. This field applies only to sequences with automatic or gapless numbering types. Sequence numbers must not be greater than eight digits. If you leave this



field blank, the first document is automatically assigned a value of 1. Once a document sequence is defined, you can't change this initial value.

Creating and Editing Document Sequence Categories

Document sequence categories are defined to make it easy to assign document sequence definitions to a group of documents instead of to individual documents. Each document sequence category is mapped to a specific table, where the documents belonging to that category are stored. When specifying the table, you must consider the following points:

- When the sequential numbering feature checks for completeness or generates a report, it locates the category's documents in the table.
- Select only those tables that belong to the application associated with the category.
- Once a category is defined, you can't switch to another table.

Assigning Document Sequences

Identify the documents to be numbered before assigning them a document sequence. For each document sequence, there can be only one active assignment to a document sequence category, and a determinant value (if applicable). As part of the assignment, specify whether the document is created automatically (for example, due to a batch process, or manually through a form). If you don't specify an end date, the assignment continues to remain active throughout the process cycle. If a determinant type was specified for the document sequence, then enter a specific determinant value related to the determinant type.

At run time, when users create documents, the document sequence to be assigned is determined based on the following:

- An active assignment that matches the correct combination of category
- The numbering method
- The date range containing the transaction date

Auditing Document Sequences

You can audit document sequences, if required, to provide an audit trail of the document sequences used in a specific product. However, before enabling the audit functionality for a document sequence, you must have created an audit table for the specific document sequence, using appropriate details. Enabling the audit functionality is permitted only for newly created document sequences. You can't audit document sequences that are already in use by a specific product.

For more information about defining a document sequence audit table, see the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer's Guide.

Related Topics

Managing Modules in Application Taxonomy: Points to Consider

Define Profile Options

Profile Options: Overview

Profile options are a set of preferences that you use to centrally manage the user interface settings and application behavior.

You can use the profile options to manage, for example:

User preferences to specify language or currency.



- Configuration choices to change the user interface skin or appearance of fonts.
- Processing options to determine how much of an activity needs to be logged and at which level.

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, search for the **Define Profiles** task list. As an administrator or implementer, you can perform the following tasks:

Task Name	Function
Manage Profile Options	Create new profile options or modify existing profile options, except some which are predefined and restricted to prevent any modifications.
Manage Profile Categories	Group the profile options based on their functional similarities.
Manage Administrator Profile Values	Set the profile values for the enabled profile options to control application behavior.

For information on the predefined profile options, open the Setup and Maintenance work area, and use the Manage Profile Options task.

Hierarchy in Profile Levels: Explained

The hierarchy in profile levels determines the context for making a profile option effective.

You can enable a profile option at the following levels:

- · Site level (lowest): The entire site of deployment
- Product level: A specific product component within the application
- User level (highest): A specific user

After you create or edit a profile option on the Manage Profile Options page, you must enable it. You can enable it at multiple levels. The setting at the highest enabled level takes precedence over the lower levels. User level is at the top of the hierarchy and always takes precedence over the settings at the product or site level.

On the Manage Administrative Profile Values page, set the profile value at any of the enabled levels of the profile option.

Example of Profile Option Hierarchy

The following table shows an example of setting the currency profile option at different levels.

Profile Level	Hierarchy	Value Corresponding to the Selected Profile Level	Currency
Site	Lowest	NA	Euro
Product	Higher than Site	General Ledger	UK Pound Sterling
User	Highest	John Smith	US Dollar



For this example, both John Smith and Jane Lee are General Ledger users. However, based on the profile settings, John Smith would see US Dollar as the default currency, whereas Jane Lee would see UK Pound Sterling. Mary, who is neither a General Ledger user nor has any user-level preference defined, will see Euro as the default currency.

Setting Profile Option Values: Procedure

Each profile option contains specific values that determine how it affects the application. You can add or modify the values for each profile option. Select or enter the value for one or more of the available levels (site, product, and user) so that each setting takes effect at the intended level.

Setting the Profile Value

- 1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, search for and open the Manage Administrator Profile Values task.
- 2. Search for and select the profile option.
- 3. In the Profile Values section, click Add. A new row is added for you to specify the following conditions:
 - Profile Level: Specify the level at which the profile value is to be set. If the profile value applies to the entire site, select Site.
 - Product Name: If you select **Product** as the profile level, select a product and specify the associated profile value.
 - User Name: If you select **User** as the profile level, select the user name and specify the associated profile value
 - o Profile Value: Select or enter the value corresponding to the selected profile level.
 - Note: For an existing entry, you can modify only the profile value.
- 4. Repeat step 3 to add more rows and set the profile values.
- 5. Click Save and Close.
- Note: Changes in the profile values take effect for a user on the next sign in.

Creating and Editing Profile Options: Procedure

Use profile options to centrally manage user preferences and control the general function of applications. For example, you can control user preferences involving language, date, time, currency, and other similar general settings.

You can create a profile option and also determine the level at which that profile option takes effect. You can also define the profile values for the profile option. The profile values appear on the Manage Administrator Profile Values page when you select the profile option.

Creating a Profile Option

- 1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, search for and open the **Manage Profile Options** task.
- 2. Click Actions New.
- 3. On the Create Profile Option page, fill all the fields with relevant details with specific attention to the following:
 - Use the SQL Validation field to provide an SQL statement that displays the permissible profile values to be used. Using an SQL statement, you can select the values from another table and display them as a list of values.



For example, to display the values Yes and No from a lookup table, you can use the following SQL statement:

select MEANING, LOOKUP_CODE from FND_LOOKUPS where LOOKUP_TYPE='YES_NO'

As a result, on the **Manage Administrator Profile Values** page, the profile values Yes and No are available for selection for that profile option.

- You can specify a date range to keep the profile option active during that period. Beyond the specified duration, the profile option automatically becomes inactive. If you no longer require the profile option, you must manually delete it from the **Manage Profile Options** page.
- 4. Click Save and Close.
- 5. On the Manage Profile Options page, search for the newly created profile option and from the results, select it.
- **6.** In the Profile Option Levels section, do the following:
 - a. Under **Enabled**, select the levels at which you want to enable the profile option.
 - Note: You can enable a profile option at multiple levels, but a higher-level profile value overrides a lower-level value. Therefore, enable them only at the required levels.
 - **b.** Under **Updatable**, select the profile level at which you want implementors to have update privileges. Leave the check box deselected if you don't want the implementors to modify the profile values (they appear in read-only mode).
- 7. Click Save and Close.

To edit a profile option that you created, search for it and edit the necessary details.

Managing Profile Categories: Points to Consider

You can create profile categories to group profile options based on their functional similarities and their use. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, search for the **Manage Profile Categories** task.

Profile categories help administrators or implementors in retrieving profile options using a search criterion on the **Manage Administrator Profile Values** page.

Managing Profile Categories

Consider the following options while managing profile categories:

- Create profile categories and add existing profile options to them
- Add newly created profile options to existing custom profile categories
- Note: While you can add a profile option to more than one category, some profile categories are predefined and restricted from any modifications. So, you can't edit them or add profile options to them.

Setting Display Sequence for the Profile Options

You must set the display sequence for each profile option that you add to a profile category. Display sequence determines the order in which the profile options appear in a search result, based on the profile category. You can set the sequence beginning with zero or one for the first profile option to display, and proceed sequentially to assign the values to the remaining profile options.



The following table demonstrates the effect of the display sequence on the profile options when they are retrieved as search results.

Profile Category	Included Profile Option - Assigned Display Sequence	Display Sequence of Profile Options in the Search Results
Attachments	Attachment File Directory - 2Indicate Attachments - 1	 Indicate Attachments Attachment File Directory

How can I access predefined profile options?

Search for predefined profile options using the Define Profiles task list:

- 1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, search for the Manage Profile Options task and open it.
- 2. Enter any of the search parameters and click **Search**.
 - ▼ Tip: If you don't know the profile option code or the display name, use the Application or Module fields to filter search results.
- 3. Click a profile option to view its details.

Define Flexfields

Flexfields: Overview

A flexfield is an extensible set of placeholder fields associated with business objects and placed on the application pages. You can use flexfields to extend the business objects and meet enterprise data management requirements without changing the data model or performing any database programming. Flexfields help you to capture different data on the same database table.

For example, an airline manufacturer may require specific attributes for its orders that aren't predefined. Using a flexfield for the order business object, you can create and configure the required attribute.

Flexfields that you see on the application pages are predefined. However, you can configure or extend the flexfields, or modify their properties. Users see these flexfields as field or information attributes on the UI pages. To use flexfields, search for and open the **Define Flexfields** task list in the Setup and Maintenance work area. You can use the following tasks contained within it:

- Manage Descriptive Flexfields: Expand the forms on the application page to accommodate additional information
 that is important and unique to your business. You can use a descriptive flexfield to collect custom invoice details on
 a page displaying invoices.
- Manage Extensible Flexfields: Establish one-to-many data relationships and make application data contextsensitive. The flexfields appear only when the contextual data conditions are fulfilled. Thus, extensible flexfields provide more flexibility than the descriptive flexfields.
- Manage Key Flexfields: Store information combining several values, such as a number combination. The key
 flexfields represent objects such as accounting codes and asset categories.



- Manage Value Sets: Use a group of values to validate the data entered in the flexfields.
 - Note: You can manage value sets within the Manage Descriptive Flexfields or Manage Extensible Flexfields tasks.

For more information about specific predefined flexfields, open the Setup and Maintenance work area, and use the tasks in the Define Flexfields task list.

Types of Flexfields

The following three types of flexfields provide a means to customize the applications features without programming:

- Descriptive
- Extensible
- Key

Related Topics

Modules in Application Taxonomy: Explained

Flexfield Components: Explained

A flexfield is made up of several data entities that store and render information pertaining to flexfield configuration.

Flexfields are made up of the following components:

- Segments
- Value Sets
- Contexts
- Structures

Segments

A segment is a field within a flexfield and represents a single table column of your database. When configuring a flexfield, define the appearance and meaning of individual segments. Segments represent attributes of information. Segments can appear globally wherever the flexfield is implemented, or based on a structure or context. Each segment captures a single atomic value and represents an attribute of information.

The characteristics of a segment vary based on the type of flexfield in which it's used.

- In key flexfields, a segment describes a characteristic of the entity. For example, a part number that contains details
 about the type, color, and size of an item.
- In a descriptive or extensible flexfield, a segment represents an information attribute on the application page.
 For example, details about a device containing components, some of which are global while the remaining are contextually dependent on the category of the device.



Value Sets

Users enter values into segments while using an application. A value set is a named group of values that validate the content of a flexfield segment. You configure a flexfield segment with a value set to enforce entries of only valid values for that segment.

The configuration involves the following tasks:

- Defining the values in a value set, including characteristics such as the length and format of the values.
- Specifying formatting rules or values from an application table or predefined list.

Multiple segments within a flexfield, or multiple flexfields, can share a single value set.

Contexts

Context-sensitive flexfield segments are available to an application based on a context value. You define contexts as part of configuring a flexfield. Users see global segments as well as any context-sensitive segments that apply to the selected context value.

In descriptive flexfields and extensible flexfields, you can reuse the context-sensitive segments that are based on the database columns, in multiple contexts.

Structures

Key flexfields have structures. Each key flexfield structure is a specific configuration of segments. Adding or removing segments, or rearranging their order, produces a different structure. You can reuse the segments that are based on the database columns, in multiple structures.

Configuring Flexfields: Overview

Configuring a flexfield ranges from identifying the need for extending a business object with custom attributes to integrating the custom attributes into the deployment. In the case of key flexfields, configuring the flexfield involves identifying value set assignments and determining segment structures.

Overall Process for Configuring Custom Attributes

For descriptive and extensible flexfields, the overall configuration process involves the following:

- 1. Use the Highlight Flexfields feature from the Administration menu to find flexfields on pages associated with business objects.
- 2. Plan the flexfield configuration.
- 3. Plan flexfield validation.
- 4. Define the attributes by configuring the flexfield segments.
 - a. Use the Manage Extensible Flexfields or Manage Descriptive Flexfields tasks, or use the Configure Flexfield icon button directly on the page where the flexfield is highlighted. For simple configurations, use the Add Segment, Add Context Value, and Edit Segment icon buttons directly on the page where the flexfield is highlighted.
 - **b.** Optionally, validate the flexfield configuration.
 - c. Optionally, deploy the flexfield to a sandbox for initial testing.
- 5. Deploy the flexfield to the mainline metadata to display the custom attributes on the application pages and to make them available for integration with other tools such as Oracle Business Intelligence.



6. Perform the necessary steps to integrate the custom attributes into the technology stack.

A simple configuration is limited to such actions as adding a format-only field or adding a field with a basic list of values.

Overall Process for Configuring Custom Keys

Using key flexfields, you can configure intelligent key codes comprised of meaningful parts according to your business practices. You configure the key flexfield to have one segment for each part that makes up your key code.

For key flexfields, the overall configuration process involves the following:

- 1. Use the Highlight Flexfields feature from the Administration menu to find flexfields on pages associated with business objects.
- 2. Plan the flexfield configuration.
- 3. Plan the flexfield validation.
- Define the value sets before configuring the key flexfield segments by going to the Manage Value Sets task.
- 5. Define the key flexfield structures and their segments, and define structure instances for each structure.
 - **a.** Use the Manage Key Flexfields task or the **Configure Flexfield** icon button directly on the page where the flexfield is highlighted.
 - **b.** Optionally, validate the flexfield configuration.
 - c. Optionally, deploy the flexfield to a sandbox for initial testing.
- **6.** Deploy the flexfield to the mainline metadata to display it on the application pages and to make it available for integration with other tools such as Oracle Business Intelligence.
- **7.** Perform the necessary steps to integrate the flexfield into the technology stack.

Flexfields at Run Time: Explained

Business objects have an associated descriptive or extensible flexfield. Using these, you can create custom attributes for the business object at run time. Some business objects have an associated key flexfield for configuring flexible multiple part keys.

Finding Flexfields on a Page

At run time, the custom attributes you define as flexfield segments appear in the application page just like any other attribute. However, each type of flexfield appears in a different way.

The following characteristics help you determine the type of flexfield on the application page:

- Descriptive flexfield segments appear as label and field pairs or as a table of fields that correspond to the column headers. The fields represent the flexfield segments and accept values that derive from the segment's assigned value set.
- Extensible flexfield segments appear grouped within labeled regions, where each grouping is a context and the region labels are the context names.
- Key flexfields appear in the application page as a field with a key flexfield icon, where the field's value is a collection of segments.

To locate flexfields on a page, in the global area, select your user name and under the Settings and Actions menu, select **Highlight Flexfields**. The page renders in a special mode, displaying the location of flexfields, if any, on the page. Do the following:

- Hover over the Information icon to view flexfield details.
- Click the Configure Flexfield icon to manage the flexfield using the Manage Flexfields task.



- Click the Add Context Value, Add Segment, or Edit Segment icons to add a context value or edit a global or context-sensitive flexfield segment. This applies to both descriptive and extensible flexfields.
- Note: Not all flexfields are available for creating custom attributes. For example, some flexfields are protected, and you either can't edit their configurations at all, or can do only limited changes to them. Consult the product-specific documentation in Oracle Fusion Applications Help to verify whether there are any restrictions on using the flexfield.

All segments of a single flexfield are grouped together by default. The layout and positions of the flexfield segments depend on where the application developer places the flexfield on the page. Flexfields may also be presented in a separate section of the page, in a table, or on their own page or a dialog box. You can use Oracle Composer to edit the layout, position, or other display features of the flexfield segments.

When you no longer want to view the flexfields on a page, select **Unhighlight Flexfields** from the Administration menu.

Customizing Flexfields Using Page Composer: Explained

Using Page Composer, you can create customizations to flexfields that are specific to a page.

In Page Composer, to customize:

- Extensible flexfields, open the page in Source view, and look for a region that is bound to an
 EffContextsPageContainer task flow. This is the container for the extensible flexfield attributes and contexts. To view
 the flexfield code and identifying information, open the properties panel for the region. To customize any component
 within the region, select the desired tag and click Edit.
- Descriptive flexfields, open the page in Source view, and look for <descriptiveFlexfield> elements. Open the properties panel for the element to view the flexfield code and identifying information. Within the properties panel, you may customize properties for the global and context-sensitive segments or re-order the segments on the page.

Flexfields and Oracle Applications Cloud Architecture: How They Work Together

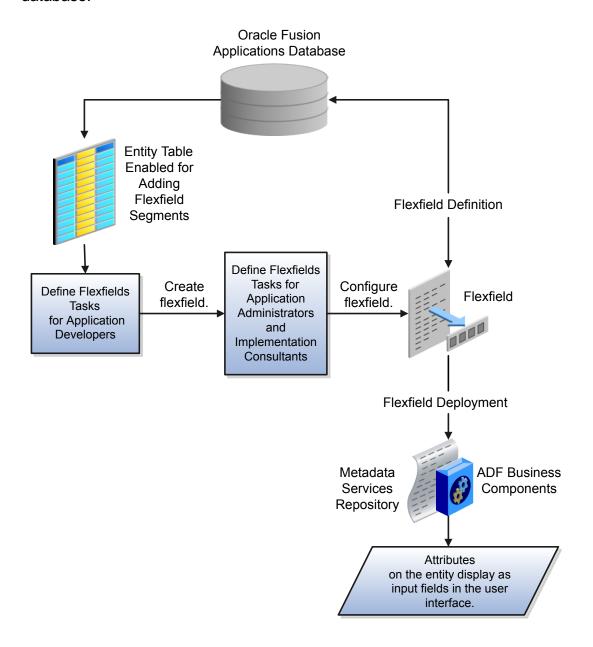
To capture additional data, administrators or implementors configure flexfield segments that represent attributes of business objects. Business objects are enabled for both descriptive flexfields and extensible flexfields.

The following figure shows the layers involved in configuring a flexfield:

- The business entity table and metadata in the database.
- The ADF business component objects. These are derived from the metadata and stored in Oracle Metadata Services (MDS) repository.
- The user interface where fields defined by the flexfield segments are rendered.



The flexfield definition consists of all the metadata defined during configuration and stored in the database.



Application developers create a flexfield and register it so that it's available for configuration. Administrators and implementation consultants configure segments and other properties of the available flexfields. This information is stored as additional flexfield metadata in the database. Deploying the flexfield generates ADF business components based on the flexfield metadata in the database.

The following aspects are important in understanding how flexfields and Oracle Applications Cloud architecture work together:

- Integration
- Deployment



- Import and export
- Run time
- Patching

Integration

The attributes that you add by configuring flexfields are available throughout the Oracle Fusion Middleware technology stack. You can use the flexfield segment's Application Programming Interface (API) to identify segments and integrate the flexfields in the following:

- User interface pages
- Service-oriented Architecture (SOA) infrastructure
- Oracle Business Intelligence
- Extended Spread Sheet Database (ESSbase)

Flexfield configurations are preserved across application updates.

Deployment

The metadata for the flexfield is stored in the application database as soon as you save your configuration changes. Deploying the flexfield generates the ADF business components so that the run time user interface reflects the latest flexfield definition in the metadata.

Importing and Exporting

Using the Setup and Maintenance work area, you can import and export flexfields across the implementation site. The deployment status must be either Deployed or Deployed to sandbox. Therefore, before you attempt migration, verify and ensure that a flexfield is successfully deployed.

Run Time

The latest definitions of a flexfield reflect on the user interface at run time only if the flexfield is deployed. When the user interface accesses a business object, the deployed flexfield definition identifies the attributes associated with the captured values. On a page, if you add display customizations for a flexfield using Oracle Composer, the same flexfield segments can appear differently on different pages.

Patching

Flexfield configurations are preserved during patching and upgrading.

Flexfields and Value Sets: Highlights

Before you use flexfields to create custom attributes, you should be familiar with the customization layers and the customization life cycle of Oracle Applications Cloud. In addition to the extensive help content available about configuring flexfields, consider the resources below for adding flexfields to business components and alternatives to flexfields where flexfields can't be enabled.

For more information about specific predefined flexfields, open the Setup and Maintenance work area, and use the tasks in the Define Flexfields task list. For customization not available through the tasks and user interface pages, contact My Oracle Support at http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc=info or visit http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc=trs if you are hearing impaired.



Note: Don't use Oracle JDeveloper to customize flexfields.

Before Configuring Flexfields

You can add custom attributes to a business object using a flexfield, if a flexfield has been registered for that object by developers.

 For Oracle Sales Cloud, use Application Composer to add custom attributes instead of using descriptive and extensible flexfields.

Deploying Flexfields

 For information about synchronizing the updated XML schema definition (XSD) files in MDS repositories for each SOA application, refer to the Oracle Fusion Applications Extensibility Guide for Developers.

See: Customizing SOA Composite Applications

o Oracle ADF services used by SOA composites expose the Web Services Description Language (WSDL) schemas where deployed flexfields are stored.

Oracle Business Intelligence

 For information about importing business intelligence-enabled flexfield changes into the Oracle Business Intelligence repository, refer to the Oracle Transactional Business Intelligence Administrator's Guide.

See: Enabling Flexfields for Business Intelligence Reporting

See: Importing Changes to Flexfields Automatically

Related Topics

- Exporting and Moving Customizations: Points to Consider
- Defining Fields: Explained

Flexfield Management

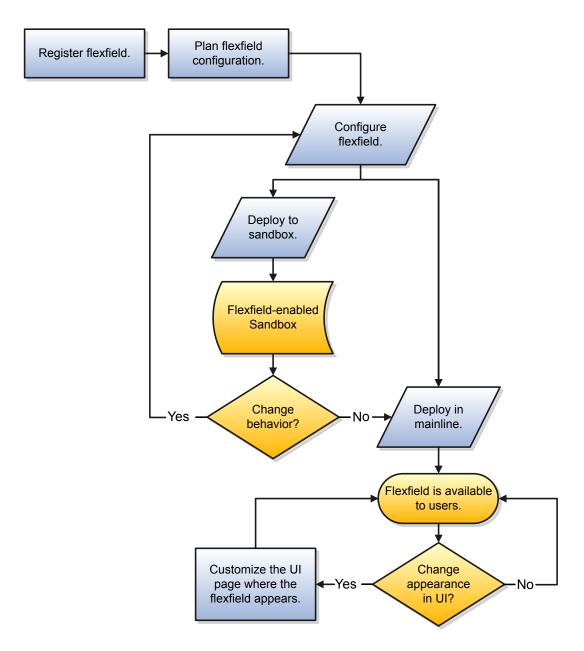
Managing Flexfields: Points to Consider

Managing flexfields involves registering, planning, and configuring flexfields.

You plan and configure the registered flexfields provided in your applications by applications developers. How you configure flexfield segments determines how the flexfield segments appear to users. Optionally, you can customize the UI page to change how the flexfield segments appear to users on that page.



The figure shows the processes involved in making flexfields available to users. The tasks in the Define Flexfields activity let administrators configure and deploy flexfields. After you configure and deploy a flexfield to a sandbox, deploy it again to the mainline metadata so that it's available to the users.



Consider the following aspects of managing flexfields:

- Registering flexfields
- Planning flexfields
- Configuring flexfields
- Enabling a flexfields segment for business intelligence
- Deploying flexfields



- · Optionally changing a flexfield segment's appearance in a user interface page
- Identifying flexfields on a run time page and troubleshooting

Registering Flexfields

A flexfield must be registered before it can be configured. Therefore, application development registers flexfields so that they are available to administrators and implementation consultants for configuration. The registration involves reserving columns of entity tables for use in flexfields. For more information about registering flexfields, see Oracle Fusion Applications Developer's Guide.

Planning Flexfields

Before you begin planning flexfields, determine what type is appropriate to your needs, and which business objects are available for customizing flexfields. All flexfields consist of segments which represent attributes of an entity. The value a user enters for an attribute is stored in a column of the entity table. Carefully plan flexfields before configuring them. Before configuring new segments for your flexfields, be sure to plan their implementation carefully.

If you have determined that a business object supports flexfields, and those flexfields have been registered, you can begin planning their configuration. Note the code name of the flexfield you intend to configure so that you can find it easily in the Define Flexfield activity. In some cases you can customize how the flexfield appears on the page. See Oracle Applications Cloud Help for specific products to determine any restrictions on using product-specific flexfields.

Configuring Flexfields

Administrators or implementors configure flexfields so they meet the needs of the enterprise. Some flexfields require configuration to make an application operate correctly. You can configure flexfields using the following methods:

- Go to the manage flexfield tasks in the Setup and Maintenance work area.
- Use the Highlight Flexfields command in the Administration menu while viewing a run time page.
 - Use the Configure Flexfield icon button to manage all aspects of a flexfield, such as change a segment's sequence number or configure a flexfield segment's business intelligence label.
 - Use the Add Segment and Edit Segment icon buttons to add and edit descriptive or extensible flexfield segments with simple configurations.
 - Use the Add Context icon button to add descriptive or extensible flexfield context values.

Configuring a flexfield includes the following:

- Defining value sets against which the values entered by users are validated
- Defining the structure or context of the segments in the flexfield
- Specifying the identifying information for each segment
- · Specifying the display properties such as prompt, length and data type of each flexfield segment
- · Specifying valid values for each segment, and the meaning of each value within the application
- ▼ Tip: You can create value sets while creating descriptive and extensible flexfield segments. However, define value sets before configuring key flexfield segments that use them, because you assign existing value sets while configuring key flexfield segments.

When creating table-validated, independent, dependent, or subset value sets while creating descriptive and extensible flexfield segments, you can optionally specify to display the description of the selected value to the right of the segment at run time. You can assign sequence order numbers to global segments and to context-sensitive segments in each context. Segment display is always in a fixed order based on the segments' sequence numbers. You cannot enter a number for one segment that is already in use for a different segment. Therefore, you may consider numbering the segments in multiples, such as 4, 5, or 10, to make it easy to insert new attributes.



A flexfield column is assigned to a new segment automatically, but you can change the assignment before saving the segment. If you must set a specific column assignment for a segment, create that segment first to ensure that the intended column isn't automatically assigned to a different segment.

Enabling a Flexfield Segment for Business Intelligence

You can enable flexfield segments for business intelligence if the flexfield is registered in the database as an Oracle Business Intelligence-enabled flexfield. For more information about enabling segments for business intelligence, see points to consider when enabling descriptive, extensible, and key flexfield segments for business intelligence. For extensible flexfield segments, you can't assign labels to equalize segments across contexts that are semantically equivalent.

Deploying Flexfields

Once you have configured a flexfield, you must deploy it to make the latest definition available to run time users. In the Define Flexfields tasks, you can deploy a flexfield using either of the following commands:

- The Deploy Flexfield command deploys a flexfield to the mainline metadata. This command is for general use in a test or production environment.
- The Deploy to Sandbox command deploys a flexfield to sandbox. This command is for confirming that the flexfield is correctly configured before deploying it to the mainline metadata.

In Highlight Flexfields mode, when using the:

- Add Context, Add Segment, and Edit Segment tools for extensible flexfields, use the Save command to save
 your changes. Then use the Deploy command to deploy the flexfield to the mainline metadata
- Add Segment and Edit Segment tools for descriptive flexfields, use the Save and Deploy command to save your changes. Then deploy the flexfield to the mainline metadata

Once deployed, the deployment status indicates the state of the currently configured flexfield relative to the last deployed definition.

Optionally Changing a Flexfield Segment Appearance

The flexfield attributes that you define integrate with the user interface pages where users access the attributes' business object. Application development determines the UI pages where business objects appear and the display patterns used by default to render flexfield segments.

After a flexfield has been deployed to the mainline MDS repository so that it appears on application pages, you can customize it on a per-page basis using Page Composer. For example, you can hide a segment, change its prompt or other properties, or reorder the custom global attributes so that they are interspersed with the core attributes in the same parent layout. You can customize the appearance of descriptive and extensible flexfield segments in the UI page using Page Composer, once the flexfield is deployed to the mainline metadata.

If the applications are running in different locales, you can provide different translations for translatable text, such as prompts and descriptions. Enter translations using the locale that requires the translated text. In the global area, click your user name and from the **Settings and Actions** menu, select **Set Preferences**. Then change the text to the translated text for that locale.

Identifying Flexfields on a Run Time Page

The **Highlight Flexfields** command in the Administration menu of the Setup and Maintenance work area identifies the location of flexfields on the run time page by displaying an **Information** icon button for accessing details about each flexfield.

Even if a descriptive or extensible flexfield isn't yet deployed and no segments appear on the run time page in normal view, the flexfield appears in the Highlight Flexfield view for that page. For descriptive flexfields, the segments as of the last deployment appear. For extensible flexfields, any segments and contexts that have been saved but not yet deployed also appear as disabled.



Highlight Flexfields accesses the current flexfield metadata definition. Use the highlighted flexfield's **Configure Flexfield** icon button to manage flexfields directly. Alternatively, note a highlighted flexfield's name to search for it in the tasks for managing flexfields.

For more information about creating flexfields and adding them to a UI page, see the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer's Guide. For more information about customizing flexfield segment appearance with Page Composer, see guidance on customizing existing pages in the Oracle Fusion Applications Extensibility Guide.

Flexfield Segment Properties: Explained

Independent of the value set assigned to a segment, segments may have properties that affect how they are displayed and how they function.

The following aspects are important in understanding

- Display properties
- Properties related to segment values
- Properties related to search
- Range validation segments
- Rule validation of segment values
- Naming conventions

Display Properties

The following table summarizes display properties.

Property	Description
Enabled	Whether the segment can be used.
Sequence	The order the segment appears in relation to the other configured segments.
Prompt	The string to be used for the segment's label in the user interface.
Display type	The type of field in which to display the segment.
Selected and deselected values	If the display type is check box, the actual values to save. For example, Y and N or 0 and 1.
Display size	The character width of the field.
Display height	The height of the field as measured in visible number of lines when the display type is a text area.
Read only	Whether the field should display as read-only, not editable text.
Description help text	The field-level description help text to display for the field. Use description help text to display a field-level description that expands on or clarifies the prompt provided for the field.
	If description help text is specified, a Help icon button is displayed next to the field in the run time application. The description help text is displayed when the user hovers over the Help icon button.
Instruction help text	The field-level instruction help text to display for the field.



Property	Description	
	Use instruction help text to provide directions on using the field. If instruction help text is specified, it's appears in an in-field help note window when users move the cursor over the field.	

Properties Related to Search

Extensible flexfield segments can be marked as selectively required in search using the indexed property. The indexed property requires users to enter a value before conducting a search on the attribute represented by the indexed segment. A database administrator must create an index on the segment column representing the indexed attribute.

Range Validation of Segments

Range validation enables you to enforce an arithmetic inequality between two segments of a flexfield. For example, a product must be ordered before it can be shipped. Therefore, the order date must be on or before the ship date. Also, the order date segment value must be less than or equal to the ship date segment value. You can use range validation to ensure this relationship.

The conditions for range validation are as follows:

- Segments must be configured for range validation in pairs, one with the low value and one with the high value.
- Both segments must be of the same data type.
- Both segments must be parts of the same structure in a key flexfield or parts of the same context in a descriptive flexfield or extensible flexfield.
- The low value segment must have a sequence number that is lesser than that of the high value segment.
- Non-range validated segments can exist between a range validated pair, but range validated pairs cannot overlap or be nested.

You can configure as many range validated pairs as you want within the same flexfield. Your application automatically detects and applies range validation to the segment pairs that you define, in sequence order. It must detect a low value segment first, and the next range validated segment that it detects must be a high value segment. These two segments are assumed to be a matching pair. The low value and the high value can be equal.

Rule Validation of Segment Values

Validation rules on descriptive and extensible flexfield segments determine how an attribute is validated. The value entered for an attribute on a business object may must match a specified format or be restricted to a list of values. Use a value set to specify the validation rules.

Value set validation is required for global segments and context-sensitive segments, and optional for context segments. In the case of context segments, the application may validate a value instead of the value set validating the value against the context segment. However the application entered values must match exactly the valid context segment values. If the context segment values are a superset or subset of the input values, you must assign a table-validated value set or independent value set to validate context values.

When you configure a descriptive flexfield segment, you can specify a constant to use for setting the initial value. The initial value can be an available parameter. For every planned segment, list the constant value or parameter, if any, to use for the initial value.

Naming Conventions

Enter a unique code, name, and description for the segment. These properties are for internal use and not displayed to end users. You can't change the code after the segment is created.

The Application Programming Interface (API) name is a name for the segment that isn't exposed to users. The API name is used to identify the segment in various integration points including web services, rules, and business intelligence. Use



alphanumeric characters only with a leading character. For example, enter a code consisting of the characters A-Z, a-z, 0-9 with a non-numeric leading character. The use of spaces, underscores, multi-byte characters, and leading numeric characters isn't permitted. You can't change the API name after the segment has been created.

Flexfields Segments: How They Are Rendered

Flexfield segments appear on pages as attributes of business objects.

Settings That Affect Flexfield Segment Display

When you configure flexfield segments, the value you enter for the segment's display type determines how the segment appears at run time.

How Display Type Values Appear

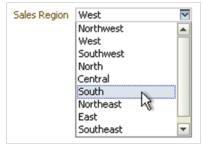
The following figures represent how the display types render on the UI at run time. Each display type screenshot is assigned an alphabet that maps to the display type and its description in the table.

This figure contains the representation of a check box, a drop-down list, a list of values, and a search box.

A. Check Box



B. Drop-down List



C. List of Values

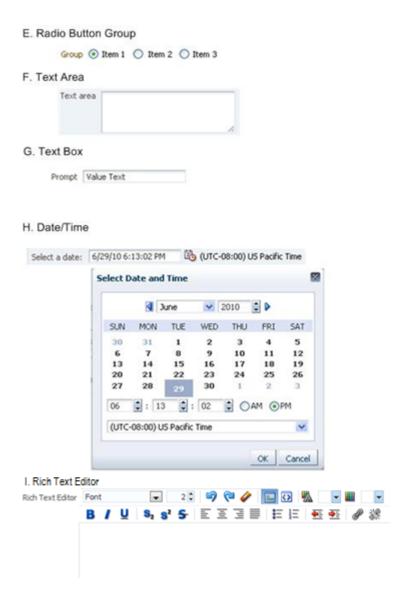


D. Pop-up List of Values



This figure contains the representation of a radio button group, text area, text box, date and time, and rich text editor.





This figure contains the representation of a color palette and a static URL field.



J. Color



K. Static URL



The following table describes each display type.

Display Type	Figure Reference	Description
Check Box	A	The field appears as a check box. If the user selects the check box, the checked value is used. Otherwise, the deselected value is used.
List	В	The field appears as a list of values available to the user for selection.
List of Values	С	The field appears as a list of values available to the user for selection. The user can also click Search to find more values.
Text Field with Search	D	The field appears as a text field with a Search icon button. The users can type a value in the text field or they can click the Search icon button to open another window for searching.



Display Type	Figure Reference	Description
Radio Button Group	E	The field appears as a set of radio buttons. The user can select one button. Selecting a button deselects any previously selected button in the set.
Text Area	F	The field appears as a text area in which the user can type multiple lines of text. The display width and height specify the visible width and number of lines in the text area, respectively.
Text Box	G	The field appears as a text field in which the user can type a single line of text. The display width controls the width of the text box.
Date Time	Н	The field enables the user to enter a date if the data type is Date, or a date and time if the data type is Date Time. The user can select the date in a calendar. If the data type is Date Time, the field also displays fields for specifying the hour, minutes, seconds, AM or PM, and time zone.
Rich Text Editor	T.	The field appears as a text area in which the user can enter and edit multiple lines of formatted text. The display width and height specify the visible width and number of lines in the rich text editor, respectively.
		Note: This display type is available for extensible flexfields only.
Color	J	The field displays a color palette for the user to select a color at run time and assign it to the segment. During setup, this display type appears in the list for selection only if:
		 You are working on an extensible flexfield segment. The value set for the segment is set to ora_fnd_color_#rrggbb.
Static URL	К	The field appears as a text field in which users can enter a fixed URL that opens the web page when clicked.
		Note: The length of the URL must not exceed 255 characters.
Hidden		The field isn't displayed.



Flexfields and Value Sets: How They Work Together

Value sets are specific to your enterprise. When gathering information using flexfields, your enterprise's value sets validate the values that your users enter based on how you defined the value set.

You can assign a value set to any number of flexfield segments in the same or different flexfields. Value set usage information indicates which flexfields use the value set.

The following aspects are important in understanding how flexfields and value sets work together:

- Defining value sets
- Shared value sets
- Deployment

Defining Value Sets

As a key flexfield guideline, define value sets before configuring the flexfield, because you assign value sets to each segment as you configure a flexfield. With descriptive and extensible flexfields, you can define value sets when adding or editing a segment.

Note: Ensure that changes to a shared value set are compatible with all flexfield segments that use the value set.

Shared Value Sets

When you change a value in a shared value set, the change affects the value set for all flexfields that use that value set. The advantage of a shared value set is that a single change propagates to all usages. The drawback is that the change shared across usages may not be appropriate in every case.

Value Set Values

To configure custom attributes to be captured on the value set values screen in the Manage Value Sets task, configure the Value Set Values descriptive flexfield. The object's code is FND_VS_VALUES_B. This flexfield expects the context code to correspond to the value set code. For each value set, you can define a context whose code is the value set code, and whose context-sensitive segments are shown for the values of that value set. By default, the context segment is hidden since it maps to the value set code and is not expected to be changed.

You can also define global segments that are shown for all value sets. However, this would be quite unusual since it would mean that you want to capture that attribute for all values for all value sets.

Deployment

When you deploy a flexfield, the value sets assigned to the segments of the flexfield provide users with the valid values for the attributes represented by the segments.

Defaulting and Deriving Segment Values: Explained

To populate a flexfield segment with a default value when a row is created, specify a default type of constant or parameter and a default value.

To synchronize a segment's value with another field's value whenever it changes, specify the derivation value to be the flexfield parameter from which to derive the attribute's value. Whenever the parameter value changes, the attribute's value is changed to match. If you derive an attribute from a parameter, consider making the attribute read-only, as values entered by users are lost whenever the parameter value changes.



When defaulting or deriving a default value from a parameter, only those attributes designated by development as parameters are available to be chosen.

Different combinations of making the segments read only or editable in combination with the default or derivation value or both, have different effects.

Initial run time behavior corresponds to the row for the attribute value being created in the entity table. If the default value is read only, it cannot subsequently be changed through the user interface. If the default value isn't read only, users can modify it. However, if the segment value is a derived value, a user-modified segment value is overwritten when the derivation value changes.

Default Type	Default value specified?	Derivation value specified?	Initial run time behavior	Run time behavior after parameter changes
None	No	Yes	No initial segment value	The changed parameter derivation value updates segment value
Constant	Yes	No	Default segment value	N/A
Constant	Yes	Yes	Default segment value	The changed parameter derivation value updates segment value
Parameter	Yes	No	The default segment value is the parameter's default value	N/A
Parameter	Yes	Yes, and same as default value	The default segment value is the parameter's default and derivation value	The changed parameter derivation value updates segment value
Parameter	Yes	Yes, and different from default value	The default segment value is the parameter's default value	The changed parameter default value doesn't update segment value. Only the changed derivation value updates the segment value.

Flexfield Usages: Explained

The flexfield usage specifies the table with which the flexfield and its segments are associated.

A flexfield can have multiple usages. However, the first table registered for a flexfield indicates the master usage. Segments are based on the master usage. Other usages of the same table for the same flexfield use the same segment setup, though the column names may have a differentiating prefix.

On the Manage Descriptive Flexfields and Manage Extensible Flexfields pages, click the **Show Entity Usages** icon for a specific flexfield to view its entity usage. On the Manage Value Sets page, you can view the flexfield usages for a selected value set.



Extensible Flexfields

For extensible flexfield contexts, you can configure a different usage. The usage of an extensible flexfield context determines the scenarios or user interfaces in which the segments of a context appear to end users. For example, the Supplier page displays an extensible flexfield's supplier usage and the Buyer page for the same flexfield displays the buyer usage. Then, a context that is associated only with the supplier usage appears only on the Supplier page and not on the Buyer page.

Value Sets

The usage of value sets specifies the flexfields having segments where the identified value set is assigned.

FAQs for Flexfield Management

How can I access predefined flexfields?

Search for predefined flexfields using the Define Flexfields task list:

- 1. In the Setup and Maintenance work area, search for the **Define Flexfields** task list and expand it to view the tasks.
- 2. Open the task that corresponds to the flexfields you are searching for.
- 3. Enter any of the search parameters and click **Search**.
 - Tip: If you don't know the flexfield name or the code, use the Module field to filter search results.
- 4. Click a flexfield to view its details.

Why can't I edit my flexfield or value set configuration?

Your flexfield or value set configuration may be protected. Application developers mark some configurations as protected, indicating that you can't edit them.

Some examples of configurations that may be protected are:

- Descriptive flexfields
- Extensible flexfield contexts
- Extensible flexfield pages
- Value sets

Why did my page not display any flexfield?

For a flexfield to be available in the page, it must be registered by developers and also deployed. The segments appear on the page only after you have successfully deployed the flexfield.

A flexfield's deployment status indicates whether the flexfield segments are available to end users. The flexfield segments seen by end users in the run time correspond to the flexfield definition that was last deployed successfully.

For information about registering flexfields, see the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer's Guide. Some business objects haven't been designed to support flexfields. For information about how to enable business objects with flexfield capability, see Getting Started with Flexfields in the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer's Guide.

Note: Oracle Sales Cloud doesn't support flexfields.

To add custom attributes to these applications, you may use Application Composer. For more information, see the product-specific documentation.



Why did my flexfield changes not appear in the run time UI?

The ADF business components or artifacts of a flexfield, which are generated into an Oracle Metadata Services (MDS) Repository when the flexfield is deployed, are cached within a user session. You must sign out and sign back in again to view flexfield definition changes reflected in the run time application user interface page.

How can I enable flexfield segments for Oracle Social Network Cloud Service?

When you manage Oracle Social Network Objects during setup and maintenance, search for the business object that includes descriptive flexfields. Select the attributes that are defined as flexfield segments and enable them.

Flexfield Deployment

Flexfield Deployment: Explained

Deployment generates or refreshes the Application Development Framework (ADF) business component objects that render the flexfield in a user interface. The deployment process adds custom attributes to the Web Services Description Language (WSDL) schemas exposed by Oracle ADF services and used by SOA composites. Flexfields are deployed for the first time during the application provisioning process. After you configure or change a flexfield, you must deploy it to make the latest definition available to users.

If a descriptive flexfield is enabled for business intelligence, the deployment process redeploys the flexfield's business intelligence artifacts.

You can deploy a flexfield to a sandbox for testing or to the mainline metadata for use in a test or production run time environment. You can deploy extensible flexfields as a background process.

After deployment, the custom attributes are available for incorporating into the SOA infrastructure, such as business process and business rule integration. For example, you can now write business rules that depend on the custom attributes. You must sign out and sign back in to Oracle Applications Cloud to see the changes you deployed in the run time.

The following aspects are important in understanding flexfield deployment:

- Deployment Status
- Initial Deployment Status
- Metadata Validations
- Metadata Synchronization
- Deployment as a Background Process
- Export of Artifacts from Flexfield MDS

Deployment Status

Every flexfield has a deployment status.

A flexfield can have the following deployment statuses:

Deployment Status	Meaning
Edited	The flexfield metadata definition hasn't been deployed yet. Updates of the metadata definition aren't applied in the run time environment yet.



Deployment Status	Meaning
Patched	The flexfield metadata definition has been modified through a patch or a data migration action, but the flexfield hasn't yet been deployed. So, the updated definition isn't reflected in the run time environment.
Deployed to Sandbox	The current metadata for the flexfield is deployed in ADF artifacts and available as a flexfield-enabled sandbox. The status of the sandbox is managed by the Manage Sandboxes task available to the Administrator menu of the Setup and Maintenance work area.
Deployed	The current metadata for the flexfield is deployed in ADF artifacts and available to users. No changes have been made to the flexfield after being deployed to the mainline metadata.
Error	The deployment attempt in the mainline metadata failed.

Note: Whenever a value set definition changes, the deployment status of a flexfield that uses that value set changes to edited. If the change results from a patch, the deployment status of the flexfield changes to patched.

Initial Deployment Status of Flexfields

The Oracle Applications Cloud implementation loads flexfield metadata into the database. This initial load sets the flexfield status to Edited. During installation, the application provisioning process deploys the flexfields of the provisioned applications, setting their status to Deployed if no errors occur.

In a provisioned application, deployed flexfields are ready to use. In some cases, flexfield availability at run time requires setup, such as defining key flexfields.

Metadata Validation

Use the Validate Metadata command to view possible metadata errors before attempting to deploy the flexfield. Metadata validation is the initial phase of all flexfield deployment commands. By successfully validating metadata before running the deployment commands, you can avoid failures in the metadata validation phase of a deployment attempt. The deployment process ends if an error occurs during the metadata validation phase. Metadata validation results don't affect the deployment status of a flexfield.

Metadata Synchronization

When an extensible or descriptive flexfield is deployed, the deployment process regenerates the XML schema definition (XSD). As a result, the custom attributes are available to web services and the SOA infrastructure.

After deploying a flexfield configuration, you must synchronize the updated XML schema definition (XSD) files in the MDS repositories for each SOA application.

Note: To synchronize the updated XSD files in the MDS repositories in Oracle Cloud implementations, log a service request using My Oracle Support at http://support.com/

Deployment as a Background Process

You can deploy extensible flexfields offline as a background process and continue working in the session without having to wait for the deployment to complete. You can queue up several extensible flexfields and deploy as a background process. The flexfields are deployed, one at a time, in the order that you deploy them to the queue. You must deploy extensible flexfields with more than 30 categories as a background process.

You can remove an extensible flexfield from the deployment queue with the Cancel Background Deployment command. When an extensible flexfield is deployed in a background process, its offline status indicates that the flexfield is in a



background deployment process. A flexfield's offline status is cleared and its deployment status updated when the background deployment process has completed.

Export of Artifacts from Flexfield MDS

You can export business components from MDS for descriptive, extensible, or key flexfields, mainly for use in troubleshooting issues with flexfields. Use **Download Flexfield Archive** on the Manage Flexfields page to export MDS artifacts of the selected flexfield, and import them to an archive on your local computer. You can use these archived business components of flexfields for troubleshooting purposes.

Alternatively, export the deployed artifacts using exportMetadata WLST.

Flexfield Deployment Status: How It Is Calculated

Flexfield deployment status indicates how the flexfield metadata definition in the Oracle Fusion Applications database relates to the Application Development Framework (ADF) business components generated into an Oracle Metadata Services (MDS) Repository.

The following aspects are important in understanding how flexfield deployment status is calculated:

- Settings that affect flexfield deployment status
- How deployment status is calculated

Settings That Affect Flexfield Deployment Status

If you have made a change to a flexfield and expect a changed deployment status, be sure you have saved your changes. No settings affect flexfield deployment status.

How Deployment Status Is Calculated

If the flexfield definition has been edited through the Define Flexfields activity task flows, the status is Edited. The latest flexfield metadata definition in the Oracle Fusion application diverges from the latest deployed flexfield definition. Any change, including if a value set used in a flexfield changes, changes the deployment status to Edited. If a flexfield has never been deployed, its status is Edited.

Note: When an application is provisioned, the provisioning framework attempts to deploy all flexfields in that application.

If you deploy the flexfield to a sandbox successfully, the status is Deployed to Sandbox. The latest flexfield metadata definition in the Oracle Fusion application matches the metadata definition that generated ADF business components in a sandbox MDS Repository. Whether the sandbox is active or not doesn't affect the deployment status. If the flexfield was deployed to a sandbox and hasn't been edited or redeployed to the mainline metadata since then, the status remains Deployed to Sandbox independent of whether the sandbox is active, or who is viewing the status.

If you deploy the flexfield successfully to the mainline metadata, the status is Deployed. The latest flexfield metadata definition in the Oracle Fusion application matches the metadata definition that generated ADF business components in a mainline MDS Repository. Change notifications are sent when a flexfield is deployed successfully to the mainline metadata.

If either type of deployment fails so that the current flexfield definition isn't deployed, the status is Error. The deployment error message gives details about the error. The latest flexfield metadata definition in the Oracle Fusion application likely diverges from the latest successfully deployed flexfield definition.

If the flexfield definition has been modified by a patch, the status is Patched. The latest flexfield metadata definition in the Oracle Fusion application diverges from the latest deployed flexfield definition. If the flexfield definition was Deployed before the patch and then a patch was applied, the status changes to Patched. If the flexfield definition was Edited before the patch



and then a patch was applied, the status will remain at Edited to reflect that there are still changes (outside of the patch) that aren't yet in effect.

When a deployment attempt fails, you can access the Deployment Error Message for details.

Deploying a Flexfield-Enabled Sandbox: How It Works With Mainline Metadata

The flexfield definition in a sandbox corresponds to the flexfield metadata definition in the Oracle Fusion Applications database at the time the flexfield was deployed to the sandbox. When the flexfield is ready for end users, the flexfield must be deployed to the mainline metadata.

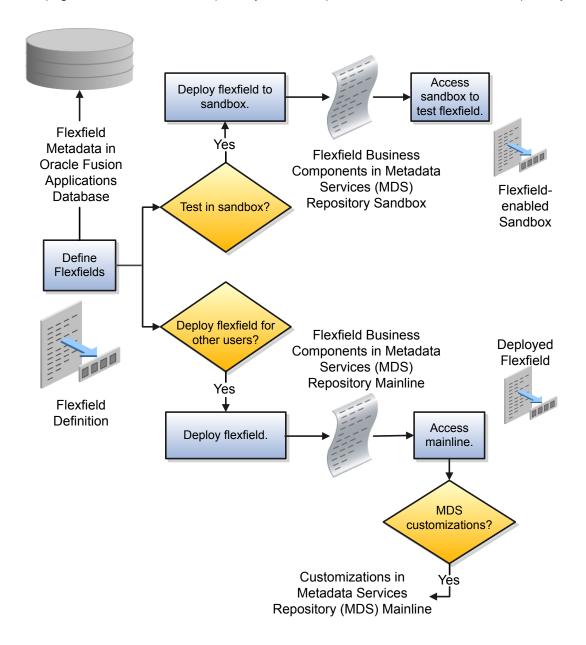
A flexfield-enabled sandbox uses the following components.

- · Flexfield metadata in the Oracle Applications Cloud database
- Flexfield business components in a sandbox Oracle Metadata Services (MDS) repository
- User interface customizations for the flexfield in the mainline MDS repository

The figure shows the two types of deployment available in the Manage Flexfield tasks of the Define Flexfields activity. Deploying a flexfield to a sandbox creates a sandbox MDS Repository for the sole purpose of testing flexfield behavior. The sandbox is only accessible to the administrator who activates and accesses it, not to users generally. Deploying a flexfield to the mainline metadata applies the flexfield definition to the mainline MDS Repository where it is available to end users. After



deploying the flexfield to the mainline metadata, customize the page where the flexfield segments appear. Customization of the page in the sandbox MDS Repository cannot be published to the mainline MDS Repository.



Sandbox Metadata Services Repository Data

Deploying the flexfield to a sandbox generates the Application Development Framework (ADF) business components of a flexfield in a sandbox MDS Repository for testing in isolation.

Caution: Don't customize flexfield segment display properties using Page Composer in a flexfield-enabled sandbox as these changes will be lost when deploying the flexfield to the mainline metadata.



Mainline Metadata Services Repository Data

The Oracle Fusion Applications database stores the single source of truth about a flexfield. When the flexfield is deployed, the ADF business component objects that implement the flexfield in the run time user interface are generated in the mainline MDS Repository from this source.

Related Topics

• Managing Customizations Using Sandboxes: Explained

Deploying a Flexfield to a Sandbox: Points to Consider

Deploying a flexfield to a sandbox creates a flexfield-enabled sandbox. Each flexfield-enabled sandbox contains only one flexfield.

You can test the run time behavior of a flexfield in the flexfield-enabled sandbox. If changes are needed, you return to the Define Flexfield tasks to change the flexfield definition.

When you deploy a flexfield to sandbox, the process reads the metadata about the segments from the database, generates flexfield Application Development Framework (ADF) business component artifacts based on that definition, and stores in the sandbox only the generated artifacts derived from the definition.

When you deploy a flexfield sandbox, the process generates the name of the flexfield sandbox, and that flexfield sandbox is set as your current active sandbox. When you next sign in to the application, you can see the updated flexfield configurations. The Oracle Fusion Applications global area displays your current session sandbox.

Note: Unlike a standalone sandbox created using the Manage Sandboxes tool, the sandbox deployed for a flexfield contains only the single flexfield. You can manage flexfield sandboxes, such as setting an existing flexfield sandbox as active or deleting it, using the Manage Sandboxes tool.

When you deploy a flexfield to the mainline metadata after having deployed it to the sandbox, the sandbox-enabled flexfield is automatically deleted.

Sandbox MDS Repository Data

The sandbox data lets you test the flexfield in isolation without first deploying it in the mainline metadata where it could be accessed by users.

Caution: Don't customize flexfield segment display properties using Page Composer in a flexfield-enabled

sandbox as these changes will be lost when deploying the flexfield to the mainline metadata.

Managing a Flexfield-Enabled Sandbox

When you deploy a flexfield as a sandbox, that flexfield-enabled sandbox automatically gets activated in your user session. When you sign back in to see the changes, the sandbox is active in your session.

You can only deploy a flexfield to a sandbox using the Define Flexfields task flow pages.

You also can use the Manage Sandboxes feature in the Administration menu of the Setup and Maintenance work area to activate and access a flexfield-enabled sandbox.

Note: Whether you use the Define Flexfields or Manage Sandboxes task flows to access a flexfield-enabled sandbox, you must sign out and sign back in before you can see the changes you deployed in the run time.



You cannot publish the flexfield from the sandbox to the mainline metadata. You must use the Define Flexfields task flow pages to deploy the flexfield for access by users of the mainline metadata because the flexfield configuration in the mainline metadata is the single source of truth.

Related Topics

Managing Customizations Using Sandboxes: Explained

Deploying Flexfields Using the Command Line: Explained

You can use the Manage Key Flexfields, Manage Descriptive Flexfields, and Manage Extensible Flexfields tasks to deploy flexfields. You can also use WebLogic Server Tool (WLST) commands for priming the Oracle Metadata Services (MDS) Repository with predefined flexfield artifacts and for deploying flexfields.

The table describes the available commands.

WebLogic Server Tool Command	Description
deployFlexForApp	Deploys all flexfields for the specified enterprise application. Only flexfields whose status is other than deployed are affected by this command, unless the option is enabled to force all flexfields to be deployed, regardless of deployment status.
	Initial application provisioning runs this command to prime the MDS Repository with flexfield artifacts.
deployFlex	Deploy a single flexfield regardless of deployment status
deployPatchedFlex	Deploys flexfield changes that have been delivered using a flexfield Seed Data Framework (SDF) patch. Deploys flexfields that have a Patched deployment status.
deleteFlexPatchingLabels	Displays MDS label of flexfield changes for viewing and deleting patching labels.
validateFlexDeploymentStatus	Displays list containing flexfields that aren't deployed or failed deployment.

Executing these commands outputs a report at the command line. The report provides the following information for every flexfield that is processed.

- Application identity (APPID)
- Flexfield code
- Deployment result, such as success or error

In case of errors, the report lists the usages for which errors occurred. If a run time exception occurs, the output displays the trace back information. For each WLST flexfield command, adding the reportFormat='xml' argument returns the report as an XML string.

Consider the following aspects of command-line deployment.

- Preparing to use the WLST flexfield commands
- Using the deployFlexForApp command
- Using the deployFlex command
- Using the deployPatchedFlex COmmand



- Using the deleteFlexPatchingLabels Command
- Using the validateFlexDeploymentStatus COMMand
- Closing WLST and checking the results

Preparing To Use the WLST Flexfield Commands

You can only execute the WLST flexfield commands on a WebLogic Administration Server for a domain that has a running instance of Oracle Fusion Middleware Extensions for Oracle Application.

For more information about deploying the Oracle Fusion Middleware Extensions for Oracle Application to the server domains, see the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer's Guide.

Ensure that the AppMasterDB data source is registered as a JDBC data source with the WebLogic Administration Server and points to the same database as the ApplicationDB data source.

Start the WebLogic Server Tool (WLST) if not currently running.

UNIX:

```
sh $JDEV_HOME/oracle_common/common/bin/wlst.sh
```

Windows:

```
wlst.cmd
```

Connect to the server, replacing the user name and password arguments with your WebLogic Server user name and password.

```
connect('wls_username', 'wls_password', 'wls_uri')
```

The values must be wrapped in single-quotes. The wls uri value is typically T3://localhost:7101.

For more information about the WLST scripting tool, see the Oracle Fusion Middleware Oracle WebLogic Scripting Tool.

Using the deployFlexForApp Command

The deployFlexForApp command translates the product application's predefined flexfield metadata into artifacts in the MDS Repository.

- Note: This command is run automatically when you provision applications. However, if you customize applications, you have to manually run it following the order of tasks as given here:
 - 1. Configure your application to read the flexfield artifacts from the MDS Repository.
 - 2. Run the deployFlexForApp command.
 - 3. Sign in to the application.

This sequence of steps is required even if there is no predefined flexfield metadata.

This command doesn't deploy flexfields that have a status of Deployed unless the force parameter is set to 'true' (the default setting is 'false').

For more information about priming the MDS partition with configured flexfield artifacts, see the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer's Guide.

From the WLST tool, execute the following commands to deploy the artifacts to the MDS partition, replacing product_application_shortname with the application's short name wrapped in single-quotes.

```
deployFlexForApp('product_application_shortname'[, 'enterprise_id'] [,'force'])
```



In a multi-tenant environment, replace <code>enterprise_id</code> with the Enterprise ID to which the flexfield is mapped. Otherwise, replace with <code>'None'</code> or don't provide a second argument.

To deploy all flexfields regardless of their deployment status, set force to 'true' (the default setting is 'false'). To deploy all flexfields in a single-tenant environment, you either can set enterprise_id to 'None', or you can use the following signature:

```
deployFlexForApp(applicationShortName='product_application_shortname',force='true')
```

The application's short name is the same as the application's module name. For more information about working with application taxonomy, see the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer's Guide.

Using the deployFlex Command

From the WLST tool, execute the following command to deploy a flexfield, replacing flex_code with the code that identifies the flexfield, and replacing flex_type with the flexfield's type, either descriptive flexfield, key flexfield, or extensible flexfield. The values must be wrapped in single-quotes.

```
deployFlex('flex_code', 'flex_type')
```

Optionally, execute the following command if the flexfield is an extensible flexfield, and you want to deploy all the flexfield's configurations.

Note: By default, extensible flexfields are partially deployed. That is, only the pages, contexts, or categories that had recent changes, are deployed.

```
deployFlex('flex_code', 'flex_type', ['force_Complete_EFF_Deployment'])
where, forceCompleteEFFDeployment=None
```

Using the deployPatchedFlex Command

Use the deployPatchedFlex command for situations where the patching framework doesn't initiate the command, such as when an application has been patched offline.

If the installation is multi-tenant enabled, the command deploys all patched flexfields for all enterprises. This command isn't intended to be initiated manually.

Check with your provisioning or patching team, or the task flows for managing flexfields, to verify that the flexfield has a Patched deployment status.

From the WLST tool, execute the following command to deploy the artifacts to the MDS partition.

```
deployPatchedFlex()
```

Execute the following command to deploy all flexfields that have either a READY status or an ERROR status.

```
deployPatchedFlex(mode='RETRY')
```

Using the deleteFlexPatchingLabels Command

Whenever you deploy flexfield changes to MDS using the deployPatchedFlex() WLST command, an MDS label is created in the format FlexPatchingWatermarkdate+time. Use the deleteFlexPatchingLabels command to inquire about and delete these labels.

From the WLST tool, execute the deleteFlexPatchingLabels () command with no arguments to delete the flexfield patching labels.

To output a list of flexfield patching labels, execute the command with the infonly argument, as follows:

```
deleteFlexPatchingLabels(infoOnly='true')
```



Using the validateFlexDeploymentStatus Command

The validateFlexDeploymentstatus() WLST command checks the deployment status of all flexfields in an Oracle Fusion Applications deployment.

validateFlexDeploymentStatus()

Use this command to verify that all flexfields in the current instance of provisioned Java EE applications are deployed.

Closing WLST and Checking the Results

To close the tool, execute the command: disconnect().

Optionally, sign in the application, open user interface pages that contain flexfields, and confirm the presence of flexfields for which configuration exists, such as value sets, segments, context, or structures.

Manage Value Sets

Value Sets: Explained

A value set is a group of valid values that you assign to a flexfield segment to control the values that are stored for business object attributes.

An end user enters a value for an attribute of a business object while using the application. The flexfield validates the value against the set of valid values that you configured as a value set and assigned to the segment.

For example, you can define a required format, such as a five digit number, or a list of valid values, such as green, red, and blue.

Flexfield segments are usually validated, and typically each segment in a given flexfield uses a different value set. You can assign a single value set to more than one segment, and you can share value sets among different flexfields.

Note: Ensure that changes to a shared value set are compatible with all flexfields segments using the value set.

The following aspects are important in understanding value sets:

- Managing value sets
- Validation
- Security
- Precision and scale
- Usage and deployment
- Protected value set data

Managing Value Sets

To access the Manage Value Sets page, use the Manage Value Sets task, or use the Manage Descriptive Flexfields and Manage Extensible Flexfields tasks for configuring a segment, including its value set. To access the Manage Values page, select the value set from the Manage Value Sets page, and click **Manage Values**. Alternatively, click **Manage Values** from the Edit Value Set page.



Validation

The following types of validation are available for value sets:

- Format only, where end users enter data rather than selecting values from a list
- Independent, a list of values consisting of valid values you specify
- Dependent, a list of values where a valid value derives from the independent value of another segment
- Subset, where the list of values is a subset of the values in an existing independent value set
- Table, where the values derive from a column in an application table and the list of values is limited by a WHERE clause

A segment that uses a format only value set doesn't present a list of valid values to users. Adding table validated value sets to the list of available value sets available for configuration is considered a custom task.

Note: For the Accounting Key Flexfield value sets, you must use independent validation only. If you use other validations, you can't use the full chart of accounts functionality, such as data security, reporting, and account hierarchy integration.

Security

Value set security only works in conjunction with usage within flexfield segments. You can specify that data security be applied to the values in flexfield segments that use a value set. Based on the roles provisioned to users, data security policies determine which values of the flexfield segment end users can view or modify.

The application of value set security has the following conditions:

- At the value set level: The value set is the resource secured by data security policies. If a value set is secured, every usage of it in any flexfield is secured. It isn't possible to disable security for individual usages of the same value set.
- Applies to independent, dependent, or table-validated value sets.
- Applies mainly when data is being created or updated, and to key flexfield combinations tables for query purposes. Value set security doesn't determine which descriptive flexfield data is shown upon querying.
- Security conditions defined on value sets always use table aliases. When filters are used, table aliases are always used by default. When predicates are defined for data security conditions, make sure that the predicates also use table aliases.

For key flexfields, the attributes in the view object that correspond to the code combination ID (CCID), structure instance number (SIN), and data set number (DSN) cannot be transient. They must exist in the database table. For key flexfields, the SIN segment is the discriminator attribute, and the CCID segment is the common attribute.

Precision and Scale

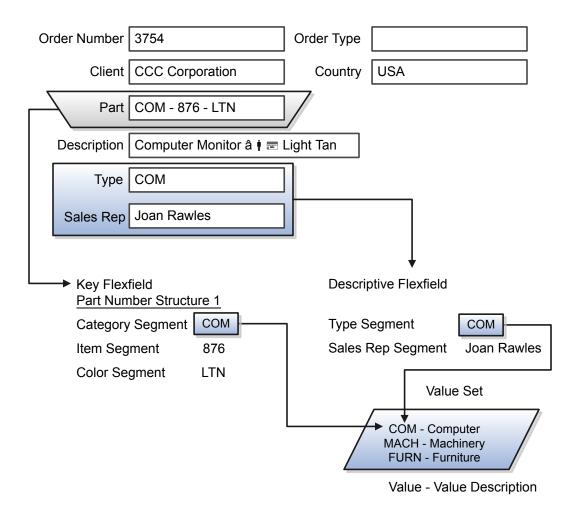
If the data type of a value set is Number, you can specify the precision (maximum number of digits user can enter) or scale (maximum number of digits following the decimal point).

Usage and Deployment

The usage of a value set is the flexfields where that value set is used. The deployment status of flexfields in which the value set is used indicates the deployment status of the value set instance.



The figure shows a value set used by a segment in a key flexfield and the context segment of a descriptive flexfield.



For most value sets, when you enter values into a flexfield segment, you can enter only values that already exist in the value set assigned to that segment.

Global and context-sensitive segment require a value set. You can assign a value set to a descriptive flexfield context segment. If you specify only context values, not value sets for contexts, the set of valid values is equal to the set of context values.

Protected Value Set Data

Application developers may mark some value sets as protected, indicating that you can't edit them.

You can edit only value sets that are not marked as protected. You can't edit or delete protected value sets. If the value set type supports values (such as independent, dependent or subset value sets), then you can't add, edit, or delete values.

Note: There is no restriction on references to protected value sets. Value sets, protected or not, may be assigned to any flexfield segment. Likewise, other value sets may reference protected value sets; for example, an unprotected dependent value set may reference a protected independent value set.



Related Topics

• Chart of Accounts: How Its Components Fit Together

Defining Value Sets: Critical Choices

Validation and usage of value sets determine where and how users access valid values for attributes represented by flexfield segments.

Tip: As a flexfield guideline, define value sets before configuring the flexfield, because you can assign value sets to each segment as you configure a flexfield. With descriptive and extensible flexfield segments, you can create value sets when adding or editing a segment on the run time page where the flexfield appears.

The following aspects are important in defining value sets:

- · Value sets for context segments
- Format-only validation
- Interdependent value sets
- Table validation
- Range
- Security
- Testing and maintenance

Value Sets for Context Segments

When assigning a value set to a context segment, you can only use table-validated or independent value sets.

You can use only table and independent value sets to validate context values. The data type must be character and the maximum length of the values being stored must not be larger than the context's column length. If you use a table value set, the value set cannot reference flexfield segments in the value set's WHERE clause other than the flexfield segment to which the value set is assigned.

Format Only Validation

The format only validation type enables users to enter any value, as long as it meets your specified formatting rules. The value must not exceed the maximum length you define for your value set, and it must meet any format requirements for that value set.

For example, if the value set permits only numeric characters, users can enter the value 456 (for a value set with maximum length of three or more), but can't enter the value ABC. A format only value set doesn't otherwise restrict the range of different values that users can enter. For numeric values, you can also specify if a numeric value should be zero filled or how may digits should follow the radix separator.

Interdependent Value Sets

Use an independent value set to validate data against a list that isn't stored in an application table, and not dependent on a subset of another independent value set. You cannot specify a dependent value set for a given segment without having first defined an independent value set that you apply to another segment in the same flexfield. Use a dependent value set to limit the list of values for a given segment based on the value that the user has defined for a related independent segment. The available values in a dependent list and the meaning of a given value depend on which value was selected for the independently validated segment.

For example, you could define an independent value set of the states in the USA with values such as CA, NY, and so on. Then you define a dependent value set of cities in the USA with values such as San Francisco and Los Angeles that are valid



for the independent value CA. Similarly, New York City and Albany are valid for the independent value NY. In the UI, only the valid cities can be selected for a given state.

Because you define a subset value set from an existing independent value set, you must define the independent value set first. Users don't have to select a value for another segment first to have access to the subset value set.

Independent, dependent, and subset value sets require a customized list of valid values. Use the Manage Values page to create and manage a value set's valid values and the order in which they appear.

💡 Tip: You can customize the Manage Value Sets page to capture additional attributes for each valid value by adding context-sensitive segments in a new context for FND_VS_VALUES_B descriptive field.

Table Validation

Typically, you use a table-validated set when the values you want to use are already maintained in an application table, such as a table of supplier names. Specify the table column that contains the valid value. You can optionally specify the description and ID columns, a WHERE clause to limit the values to use for your set, and an ORDER BY clause.

If you specify an ID column, then the flexfield saves the ID value, instead of the value from the value column, in the associated flexfield segment. If the underlying table supports translations, you can enable the display of translated text by basing the value set's value column on a translated attribute of the underlying table. You should also define an ID column that is based on an attribute that isn't language-dependent so that the value's invariant ID (an ID that doesn't change) is saved in the transaction table. The run time displays the corresponding translated text from the value column for the run time session's locale.

Table validation lets you enable a segment to depend upon multiple prior segments in the same context structure. You cannot reference other flexfield segments in the table-validated value set's WHERE clause. That is, the WHERE clause cannot reference SEGMENT.segment code or VALUESET.value set code.

Table-validated value sets have unique values across the table, irrespective of bind variables. The WHERE clause fragment of the value set is considered if it doesn't have bind variables. If it has bind variables, the assumption is that the values are unique in the value set. If you use table validated value sets for key flexfields, then you can't use all integration functionalities supported for key flexfields, such as:

- Data security
- Oracle Transactional Business Intelligence (OTBI)
- Extended Spread Sheet Database (ESSbase)
- Tree or hierarchy integration

To use these integration functionalities for key flexfields, you must use independent value sets only.

Range

In the case of format, independent, or dependent value sets, you can specify a range to limit which values are valid. You can specify a range of values that are valid within a value set. You can also specify a range validated pair of segments where one segment represents the low end of the range and another segment represents the high end of the range.

For example, you might specify a range for a format-only value set with format type Number where the user can enter only values between 0 and 100.

Security

In the case of independent and dependent values, you can specify that data security be applied to the values in segments that use a value set. Based on the roles provisioned to users, data security policies determine which values of the flexfield segment users can view or modify.



To enable security on a value set, specify a database resource, typically the code value for the value set. Using the Manage Database Security Policies task, specify conditions, such as filters or SQL predicates, and policies that associate roles with conditions. You can use a filter for simple conditions. For more complex conditions, use a SQL predicate.

Value set data security policies and conditions differ from data security conditions and policies for business objects in the following ways:

- You can grant only read access to users. You cannot specify any other action.
- When defining a condition that is based on a SQL predicate, use VALUE, VALUE_NUMBER, VALUE_DATE, VALUE_TIMESTAMP, or VALUE_ID to reference the value from a dependent, independent, or subset value set. For table value sets, use a table alias to define the table, such as &TABLE_ALIAS category=70.

When you enable security on table-validated value sets, the security rule that is defined is absolute and not contingent upon the bind variables (if any) that may be used by the WHERE clause of the value set. For example, suppose a table-validated value set has a bind variable to further filter the value list to x, y and z from a list of x, y, z, xx, yy, zz. The data security rule or filter written against the value set must not assume anything about the bind variables. Instead the whole list of values must be available and you write the rule, for example, to permit x, or to permit y and z. By default in data security, all values are denied and show only rows to which access has been provided.

Testing and Maintenance

You don't have to define or maintain values for a table-validated value set, as the values are managed as part of the referenced table or independent value set, respectively.

You cannot manage value sets in a sandbox.

When you change an existing value set, the deployment status for all affected flexfields changes to Edited. You must redeploy all flexfields that use that value set to make the flexfields reflect the changes. In the UI pages for managing value sets, the value set's usages show which flexfields are affected by the value set changes.

If your application has more than one language installed, or there is any possibility that you might install one or more additional languages for your application in the future, select **Translatable**. This doesn't require you to provide translated values now, but you cannot change this option if you decide to provide them later.

Planning Value Sets: Points to Consider

The value sets you create and configure depend on the valid values on the business object attributes that will use the value set. When creating value sets, you first give the value set a name and description, and then define the valid values of the set.

The following aspects are important in planning value sets:

- List of values
- Plain text input
- Value ranges
- · Value format specification
- Security

List of Values

You can use one of the following types of lists to specify the valid values for a segment:

- Table column
- Custom list. Also include a sub list.
- Dependent custom list



If the valid values exist in a table column, use a table value set to specify the list of values. To limit the valid values to a subset of the values in the table, use a SQL WHERE clause. Table value sets also provide some advanced features, such as enabling validation depending on other segments in the same structure.

Use an independent value set to specify a custom set of valid values. For example, you can use an independent value set of Mon, Tue, Wed, and so forth to validate the day of the week. You can also specify a subset of an existing independent value set as the valid values for a segment. For example, if you have an independent value set for the days of the week, then a weekend subset can be composed of entries for Saturday and Sunday.

Use a dependent value set when the available values in the list and the meaning of a given value depend on which independent value was selected for a previously selected segment value. For example, the valid holidays depend on which country you are in. A dependent value set is a collection of value subsets, with one subset for each value in a corresponding independent value set.

For lists of values type value sets, you can additionally limit the valid values that an end user can select or enter by specifying format, minimum value, and maximum value. For list of values type value sets, you can optionally implement value set data security. If the Oracle Fusion applications are running in different locales, you might need to provide different translations for the values and descriptions.

Plain Text Input

Use a format-only value set when you want to allow end users to enter any value, as long as that value conforms to formatting rules. For example, if you specify a maximum length of 3 and numeric-only, then end users can enter 456, but not 4567 or 45A. You can also specify the minimum and maximum values, whether to right-justify, and whether to zero-fill. With a format-only value set, no other types of validation are applied.

Value Ranges

You can use either a format-only, independent, or dependent value set to specify a range of values. For example, you might create a format-only value set with Number as the format type where the end user can enter only the values between 0 and 100. Or, you might create a format-only value set with Date as the format type where the end user can enter only dates for a specific year, such as a range of 01-JAN-93 to 31-DEC-93. Because the minimum and maximum values enforce these limits, you need not define a value set that contains each of these individual numbers or dates.

Value Format

Flexfield segments commonly require some kind of format specification, regardless of validation type. Before creating a value set, consider how you will specify the required format.

The following table shows options for validation type and value data type.

Option	Description
Value data type	Character, Number, Date, Date Time.
Value subtype	Text, Translated text, Numeric digits only, Time (20:08), Time (20:08:08).
	An additional data type specification for the Character data type for the Dependent, Independent, and Format validation types.
Maximum length	Maximum number of characters or digits for Character data type.
Precision	Maximum number of digits the user can enter.
Scale	Maximum number of digits that can follow the decimal point.



Option	Description	
Uppercase only	Lowercase characters automatically changed to uppercase.	
Zero fill	Automatic right-justification and zero-filling of entered numbers (affects values that include only the digits 0-9).	

Note: You cannot change the text value data type to a translated text value subtype after creating a value set. If there is any chance you may need to translate displayed values into other languages, choose Translated text. Selecting the Translated text subtype doesn't require you to provide translated values.

Value Sets for Context Segments

You can use only table and independent value sets to validate context values. The data type must be character and the maximum length of the values being stored must not be larger than the context's column length. If you use a table value set, the value set cannot reference flexfield segments in the value set's WHERE clause other than the flexfield segment to which the value set is assigned.

Security

When enabling security on a value set, the data security resource name is an existing value set or one that you want to create. The name typically matches the code value for the value set. You cannot edit the data security resource name after you save your changes.

Table-Validated Value Sets and Bind Variables: Points to Consider

After you assign a value set to a flexfield, you can use bind variables in the WHERE clause.

The following bind variables refer to flexfield elements:

- :{SEGMENT.<segment code>}
- :{CONTEXT.<context_code>;SEGMENT.<segment_code>}
- :{VALUESET.<value_set_code>}
- :{FLEXFIELD.<internal code>}
- : {PARAMETER.<parameter_code>}

Segment Code

: {SEGMENT.<segment_code>}

This bind variable refers to the ID or value of a segment where <segment_code> identifies the segment. Where referring to the ID, the value set is ID-validated. Where referring to the value, the value set isn't ID-validated. The data type of the bind value is the same as the data type of the segment's column.

For both descriptive and extensible flexfields, the segment must be in the same context as the source segment. The source segment contains the WHERE clause. For descriptive flexfields, if the segment is global, then the source segment must be global.

The segment must have a sequence number that is less than the sequence number of the target segment with this bind variable. A matching segment must exist in the current flexfield context.



This bind variable is useful when the set of valid values depends on the value in another segment. For example, the values to select from a CITIES table might depend upon the selected country. If SEGMENT1 contains the country value, then the WHERE clause for the CITIES table might be <country_code> = :{SEGMENT.SEGMENT1}.

Context Code

: {CONTEXT.<context_code>;SEGMENT.<segment_code>}

This bind variable, which is valid only for extensible flexfields, refers to the ID (if the value set is ID-validated) or value (if not ID-validated) of a segment that is in a different context than the target segment (the segment with the WHERE clause).

- The <context_code> identifies the context and must be in the same category or in an ancestor category. It cannot be a multiple-row context.
- The <segment_code> identifies the segment. The data type of the bind value is the same as the data type of the segment's column.
- Note: The target segment should appear in the UI after the source segment to ensure the source segment has a value. If the target segment's context is a single-row context, the source and target segments must be on separate pages and the target page must follow the source page.

The framework of extensible flexfields doesn't perform any additional validation related to mismatched values for segments defined with cross context bind parameters. Administrators must populate the correct pair of segment values.

This bind variable is useful when the set of valid values depends on the value of a segment in another context. For example, the values to select from a CERTIFICATION table for a segment in the Compliance and Certification context might depend on the value of the country segment in the Manufacturing context.

Value Set Code

```
:{VALUESET.<value_set_code>}
```

This bind variable refers to the ID (if the value set is ID-validated) or value (if not ID-validated) of the segment that is assigned to the value set that is identified by the value_set_code. The data type of the bind value is the same as the data type of the segment's column.

The segment must have a sequence number that is less than the sequence number of the segment with this bind variable. If more than one segment is assigned to the value set, the closest prior matching segment will be used to resolve the bind expression. A matching segment must exist in the current flexfield context.

This bind variable is useful when the set of valid values depends on the value in another segment and that segment code can vary, such as when the value set is used for more than one context or flexfield. For example, the values to select from a CITIES table might depend upon the selected country. If the value set for the segment that contains the country value is COUNTRIES, then the WHERE clause for the CITIES table might be <country code> = :{VALUESET.COUNTRIES}.

Flexfield Internal Code

:{FLEXFIELD.<internal code>}

This bind variable refers to an internal code of the flexfield in which the value set is used, or to a validation date. The internal_code must be one of the following:

- APPLICATION_ID the application ID of the flexfield in which this value set is used. The data type of APPLICATION_ID and its resulting bind value is NUMBER.
- DESCRIPTIVE_FLEXFIELD_CODE the identifying code of the flexfield in which this value set is used. The data type
 of DESCRIPTIVE_FLEXFIELD_CODE and its resulting bind value is VARCHAR2. Note that you use this string for both
 descriptive and extensible flexfields.



- CONTEXT_CODE the context code of the flexfield context in which this value set is used. The data type of CONTEXT_CODE and its resulting bind value is VARCHAR2.
- SEGMENT_CODE the identifying code of the flexfield segment in which this value set is used. The data type of SEGMENT_CODE and its resulting bind value is VARCHAR2.
- VALIDATION_DATE the current database date. The data type of VALIDATION_DATE and its resulting bind value is DATE.

Flexfield Parameters

:{PARAMETER.<parameter_code>}

This bind variable refers to the value of a flexfield parameter where parameter_code identifies the parameter. The data type of the resulting bind value is the same as the parameter's data type.

Note: You cannot assign a table value set to a context segment if the WHERE clause uses VALUESET.value_set_code or SEGMENT.segment_code bind variables.

Table-Validated Value Set: Worked Example

In an application user interface, you want to display a list of values that allow customers to enter satisfaction scores. The value column name is 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and the value column description is Extremely Satisfied, Satisfied, and so on. Users can pick the appropriate value or description which stores the corresponding name so the name value can be used in a calculation expression.

In this case, you can use the FND_LOOKUPS table as the basis for a table-validated value set. The lookup meaning corresponds to the Value Column Name and the lookup description corresponds to the Description Column Name. The properties of the value set are as follows:

Property	Value
FROM clause	FND_LOOKUPS
WHERE clause	lookup_type = 'CN_ XX_ CUST_ SATISFACT_ SCORE'
ID column	lookup_code
Value column	meaning
Description column	description
Enable Flag column	enabled_flag
Start Date column	start_ date_active
End Date column	end_ date_active
Order by	display_ sequence



After completing this task, you should have created your customer satisfaction value set for the Incentive Compensation page of your implementation project.

Creating a Value Set Based on a Lookup

- 1. From the Setup and Maintenance work area, find the Manage Value Sets task and click the **Go to Task** icon button.
- 2. On the Manage Value Sets page, click the **Create** icon button.
- 3. On the Create Value Set page, enter the following values:
 - a. In the Value Set Code field, enter CN XX CUSTOMER SATISFACTION SCORES
 - **b.** In the Description field, enter Customer satisfaction score.
 - c. In the Module field, select Search....
 - d. In the Search and Select: Module subwindow, enter Incent in the User Module Name field
 - e. Select Incentive Compensation.
 - f. Click OK.
- 4. On the Create Value Set page, enter the following values:
 - a. In the Validation Type field, select Table.
 - **b.** In the Value Data Type field, select Character.
 - c. In the Definition section FROM Clause field, enter FND_LOOKUPS.
 - d. In the Value Column Name field, enter DESCRIPTION.
 - e. In the Description Column Name field, enter MEANING.
 - f. In the ID Column Name field, enter LOOKUP_CODE.
 - g. In the Enabled Flag Column Name field, enter 'Y'.
 - h. In the Start Date Column Name field, enter START DATE ACTIVE.
 - i. In the End Date Column Name field, enter END DATE ACTIVE.
 - j. In the WHERE Clause field, enter LOOKUP TYPE = 'CN XX CUST SATISFACT SCORE'.
- 5. Click Save and Close.
- 6. In the Manage Value Sets page, click Done.

Adding Attributes to the Manage Value Sets Page: Procedures

You can add attributes to independent, dependent, and subset value sets. The attributes appear on the Manage Value Sets page where you can store additional information about each valid value. To display attributes on an application page, you must programmatically modify the application.

To add attributes and subsequently view them on the Manage Value Sets page, perform the following steps:

- 1. Using the Manage Descriptive Flexfields task, find the FND_VS_VALUES_B flexfield and open it for editing.
- 2. Click Manage Contexts.
- 3. Create a new context and use the value set code for the context code.
- **4.** Add new attributes as context-sensitive segments and save the changes.
- 5. Deploy FND_VS_VALUES_B to run time.
- 6. Sign out and sign back in.
- 7. Open the Manage Value Sets page to view the new attributes.

Importing Value Set Values: Procedure

You can import a file containing values that you want to edit or add to a given independent or dependent value set.

For example, uploading a hundred values may be more efficient than creating them individually using the Manage Value Sets task. However, for just a few values, it may be quicker to perform the relevant tasks.



Importing Value Set Values

To import value set values:

1. Create a flat file containing the values in the value set that you want to add or update.

Note:

- When creating the file, you must specify an existing value set code to which you want to add values
 or edit existing values. If the value set does not exist, add the value set using the appropriate Manage
 Value Sets setup task in the Setup and Maintenance work area.
- The file that you create must adhere to the formatting and content requirements for creating flat files containing value set values.
- 2. Upload the flat file to the content repository using the Files for Import and Export page.
- 3. Import the file using the appropriate Manage Value Sets setup task in the Setup and Maintenance work area. To import the file:
 - a. Click Actions Import in the Manage Value Sets page.
 - b. In the File Name field, enter the name of the flat file you uploaded using the Files for Import and Export page.
 - c. In the Account field, select the user account containing the flat file.
 - d. Click Upload.
 - Note: Alternatively, you can import the file using either of the following methods:
 - o Run the Upload Value Set Values scheduled process.
 - Use the Applications Core Metadata Import web service. For more information on the Applications Core Metadata Import web service, see the SOAP Web Services guide for your cloud services.

Related Topics

• Files for Import and Export: Explained

Requirements for Flat Files to Upload Value Set Values: Explained

You can import large volumes of value set value data from the content repository. To upload value set values to the content repository, create a flat file containing the values in the value set that you want to add or update. You upload these flat files to the content repository using the Files for Import and Export page.

General Requirements

The first line of the flat file must contain the column names for the value set value data, including all mandatory columns, and separated by the '|' (pipe) character. Each subsequent line should contain a row of data specified in the same order as the column names, also separated by the '|' character.

The requirements for creating flat files vary with the type of value sets:

- Independent value sets
- Dependent value sets

Independent Value Set

A flat file for uploading values for independent value sets must contain the following mandatory columns:



Column Name	Data Type
ValueSetCode	VARCHAR2(60)
Value	VARCHAR2(150)
Enabled Flag	VARCHAR2(1), Y or N

Note: You can also specify optional columns.

Examples:

• To upload values to a COLORS independent value set with the minimum columns, you can use the following flat file:

```
ValueSetCode | Value | EnabledFlag
COLORS | Red | Y
COLORS | Orange | Y
COLORS | Yellow | Y
```

• To upload values to a STATES independent value set with more (optional) columns, you can use the following flat file:

```
ValueSetCode | Value | Description | EnabledFlag
STATES | AK | Alaska | Y
STATES | CA | California | Y
STATES | WA | Washington | Y
```

Dependent Value Sets

A flat file for uploading values for dependent value sets must contain the following mandatory columns:

Column Name	Data Type
Value Set Code	VARCHAR2(60)
Independent Value	VARCHAR2(150)
Value	VARCHAR2(150)
Enabled Flag	VARCHAR2(1), Y or N

Note: You can also specify optional columns.

Example:

To upload values to a CITIES dependent value set (dependent on the STATES independent value set), you can use the following flat file:

```
ValueSetCode | IndependentValue | Value | EnabledFlag
CITIES | AK | Juneau | Y
CITIES | AK | Anchorage | Y
CITIES | CA | San Francisco | Y
```



Additional Optional Columns

In addition to the mandatory columns, you can add the following optional columns for both dependent and independent value sets:

Column Name	Туре
Translated Value	VARCHAR2(150), for use in value sets that are translatable
Description	VARCHAR2(240)
Start Date Active	DATE, formatted as YYYY-MM-DD
End Date Active	DATE, formatted as YYYY-MM-DD
Sort Order	NUMBER(18)
Summary Flag	VARCHAR2(30)
Flex Value Attribute1 Flex Value Attribute20	VARCHAR2(30)
Custom Value Attribute1 Custom Value Attribute10	VARCHAR2(30)

Related Topics

• Files for Import and Export: Explained

Upload Value Set Values Process

This process uploads a flat file containing value set values for flexfields. You can use this scheduled process to upload a file containing values you want to edit or add to an existing independent or dependent value set. This process is useful for adding or updating large volumes of value set value data in an automated or recurring fashion. For example, you can upload a hundred values on a recurring basis when scheduled as a recurring process. This method may be more efficient than using the one-time Import action in the Manage Value Sets tasks in the Setup and Maintenance work area. However, for an ad hoc task of uploading a hundred values, it may be quicker to use the Import action in the relevant tasks.

Run this process from the Scheduled Processes Overview page. You can run it on a recurring basis whenever the flat file in the content repository account is updated.

You must create the flat file containing the values data, and upload the flat file to the content repository using the Files for Import and Export page.

Parameters

Flat File Name



Enter the name of the flat file you uploaded using the Files for Import and Export page.

Account

Select the user account containing the flat file in the content repository to upload.

Related Topics

• Files for Import and Export: Explained

• Scheduled Processes: Explained

Translating Flexfield and Value Set Configurations: Explained

When you first configure a flexfield or segment, the translatable text that you enter, such as prompts and descriptions, is stored as the text for all installed locales. You may then provide a translation for a given locale, then the value that was first entered is used for that locale.

To translate the text for a particular locale, log in with that locale or specify the locale by selecting **Settings and Actions - Personalization - Set Preferences** in the global area. Then, update the translatable text in the flexfield using the Manage Descriptive Flexfields task, Manage Key Flexfields task, or Manage Extensible Flexfields task. Your modifications change the translated values only for the current session's locale.

After you complete the translations, deploy the flexfield.

You can define translations for a dependent value set or an independent value set, if it is of type Character with a subtype of Translated text. You define the translations by setting the current session to the locale for which you want to define the translation and using the Manage Value Sets task to enter the translated values and descriptions for that locale.

For a table value set for which the underlying table supports multiple languages and for which the value set's value column is based on a translated attribute of the underlying table, you can define translated values using the maintenance task for the underlying table. For more information on using multilanguage support features, see the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer's Guide.

FAQs for Manage Value Sets

What happens if a value set is security enabled?

Value set security is a feature that enables you to secure access to value set values based on the end user's role in the system.

As an example, suppose you have a value set of US state names. When this value set is used to validate a flexfield segment, and users can select a value for the segment, you can use value set security to restrict them to selecting only a certain state or subset of states based on their assigned roles in the system.

For example, Western-region employees may choose only California, Nevada, Oregon, and so on as valid values. They cannot select non-Western-region states. Eastern-region employees may choose only New York, New Jersey, Virginia, and so on as valid values, but cannot select non-Eastern-region states. Value set security is implemented using Oracle Fusion Applications data security.



How can I set a default value for a flexfield segment?

When you define or edit a flexfield segment, you specify a default value from the values provided by the value set assigned to that segment.

You can set the default value for a descriptive flexfield segment to be a parameter, which means the entity object attribute to which the chosen parameter is mapped provides the initial default value for the segment.

You can set the default value to be a constant, if appropriate to the data type of the value set assigned to the segment.

In addition to an initial default value, you can set a derivation value for updating the attribute's value every time the parameter value changes. The parameter you choose identifies the entity object source attribute. Any changes in the value of the source attribute during run time are reflected in the value of the segment.

If the display type of the segment is a check box, you can set whether the default value of the segment is checked or unchecked.

Manage Descriptive Flexfields

Descriptive Flexfields: Explained

Use descriptive flexfields to add custom attributes to business object entities, and define validation for them.

All the business object entities that you can use in the application are enabled for descriptive flexfields. However, configuring descriptive flexfields is an optional task.

Context

A descriptive flexfield can have only one context segment to provide context sensitivity. The same underlying database column can be used by different segments in different contexts.

For example, you can define a Dimensions context that uses the following attributes:

- ATTRIBUTE1 column for height
- ATTRIBUTE2 column for width
- ATTRIBUTE3 column for depth

You can also define a Measurements context that uses the same columns for other attributes:

- ATTRIBUTE1 column for weight
- ATTRIBUTE2 column for volume
- ATTRIBUTE3 column for density

Segments and Contexts

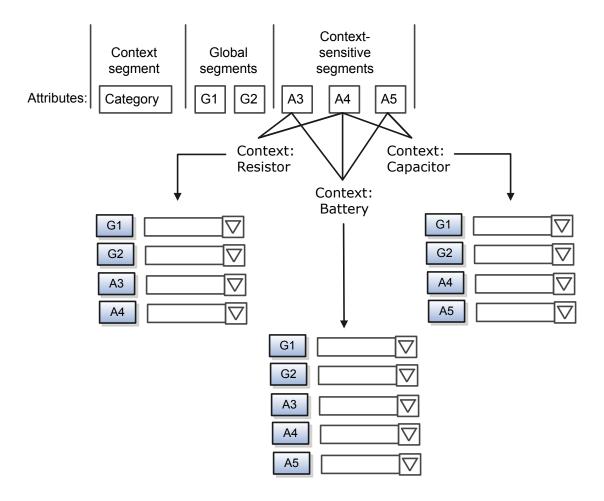
Descriptive flexfield segments are of the following types:

Segment Type	Run Time Appearance
Global segment	Always available
Context segment	Determines which context-sensitive segments are displayed



Segment Type	Run Time Appearance
Context-sensitive segment	Displayed depending on the value of the context segment

In the figure, a descriptive flexfield has one context segment called Category for which there are three values: Resistor, Battery, and Capacitor. Additionally, the descriptive flexfield comprises two global segments that appear in each context, and three context-sensitive segments that only appear in the specific context.



Application development determines the number of segments available for configuring. During implementation, configure the flexfield by determining the following:

- Attributes to add using the available segments
- Context values
- The combination of attributes in each context

Value Sets

For each global and context-sensitive segment, you configure the values permitted for the segment. Based on it, the values that end users enter are validated, including interdependent validation among the segments.



Protected Descriptive Flexfield Data

Application developers may mark some data configurations in a descriptive flexfield as protected, indicating that you can't edit them.

Planning Descriptive Flexfields: Points to Consider

Once you have identified a flexfield to configure, plan the configuration in advance. Compile a list of the UI pages and other artifacts in your deployment that are affected by the configuration. Verify that you are provisioned with the roles needed to view and configure the flexfield. View the flexfield using the Highlight Flexfields command in the Administration menu while viewing the run time page where the flexfield appears. Plan how you will deploy the flexfield for test and production users. Review the tools and tasks available for managing flexfields, such as the Define Flexfields task list, Manage Sandboxes, and Highlight Flexfields for adding and editing flexfield segments.

Planning a descriptive flexfield can involve the following tasks:

- 1. Identify existing parameters.
- 2. Identify existing context values and whether the context value is derived.
- 3. Identify custom attributes and plan the descriptive flexfield segments, segment properties, and structure.
- 4. Plan validation rules.
- 5. Plan initial values.
- 6. Plan attribute mapping to Oracle Business Intelligence objects.

Identify Existing Descriptive Flexfield Parameters

Some descriptive flexfields provide parameters that can be used to specify the initial value of a descriptive flexfield segment. The parameter is external reference data, such as a column value or a session variable. For example, if a flexfield has a user email parameter, you can configure the initial value for a customer email attribute to be derived from that parameter.

Review the list of available parameters in the **Derivation Value** field in the Create Segment page for a descriptive flexfield. If you decide to use one of the parameters to set an initial value, select that parameter from the **Derivation Value** drop-down list when you add the descriptive flexfield segment.

Evaluate Whether the Context Value Is Derived

The context value for a descriptive flexfield might have been preconfigured to be derived from an external reference. For example, if the context is Marriage Status, then the value might be derived from an attribute in the employee business object. When the context value is derived, you might need to take the derived values and their source into consideration in your plan.

To determine whether the context value is derived, access the Edit Descriptive Flexfield task to view the list of configured context values for the flexfield. The Derivation Value field in the Context Segment region displays a list of available parameters. If context values have been preconfigured, see Oracle Applications Cloud Help for product-specific information about the use of those values.

Plan the Segments, Segment Properties, and Structure

Identify the custom attributes you need for a business object to determine the segments of the descriptive flexfield. Determine the segment properties such as the prompt, display type, or initial value.

The structure of the descriptive flexfield is determined by its global, context, and context-sensitive segments. Plan a global segment that captures an attribute for every instance of the business object. Plan a context for segments that depend on a condition of situation applying to a particular instance of the business object. Plan context-sensitive segments to capture attributes that are relevant in the context.

There is only one context segment available for descriptive flexfields. If you have more than one group of custom attributes where you could use the context segment, you will have to pick one group over the others, based on your company's needs and priorities, and add the other custom attributes as global segments.



Plan Validation Rules

Define each segment's validation rules and check if value sets exist for those rules or you must create new ones. If you must create a value set, you can create it either before configuring the flexfield or while creating or editing a segment.

When determining a segment's validation rules, consider the following questions:

- What is the data type character, date, date and time, or number?
- Does the segment require any validation beyond data type and maximum length?
- Should a character type value be restricted to digits, or are alphabetic characters allowed?
- Should alphabetic characters automatically be changed to uppercase?
- Should numeric values be zero-filled?
- How many digits can follow the radix separator of a numeric value? In base ten numerical systems the radix separator is decimal point.
- Does the value need to fall within a range?
- Should the value be selected from a list of valid values? If so, consider the following questions:
 - Can you use an existing application table from which to obtain the list of valid values, or do you need to create a custom list?
 - o If you are using an existing table, do you need to limit the list of values using a WHERE clause?
 - o Does the list of valid values depend on the value in another flexfield segment?
 - o Is the list of valid values a subset of another flexfield segment's list of values?

Plan Initial Values

For every segment, list the constant value or SQL statement, if any, to use for the initial value of the custom attribute.

Plan How Segments Map to Oracle Business Intelligence Objects

You can extend descriptive flexfields into Oracle Transactional Business Intelligence (OTBI) for ad hoc reporting purposes. Determine the descriptive flexfield segments to be made available for reporting, and select the **BI Enabled** check box accordingly on the Manage Descriptive Flexfields page. You must run a process to extend the BI enabled segments into OTBI. For more information about extending the BI enabled segments into OTBI, see the Setup and Configuration chapter in the Oracle Transactional Business Intelligence Administrator's Guide.

Depending on the reporting needs, you may map similar context-sensitive attributes from different contexts to the same attribute in OTBI. For example, there may be a segment tracking the Product Color attribute in different contexts of a context sensitive descriptive flexfield. You can use segment labels to map these context-sensitive attributes together by defining a segment label and updating the BI Label list accordingly.

Managing Descriptive Flexfields: Points to Consider

Configuring descriptive flexfields involves managing the available flexfields registered with your Oracle Applications Cloud database and configuring their flexfield-level properties, defining and managing descriptive flexfield contexts, and configuring global and context-sensitive segments.

Every descriptive flexfield is registered to include a context segment, which you may choose to use or not.

In general, configuring descriptive flexfields involves:

- 1. Creating segment labels for business intelligence enabled flexfields.
- 2. Configuring global segments by providing identity information, the initial default value, and the display properties.
- 3. Configuring the context segment by specifying the prompt, whether the context segment should be displayed, and whether a value is required.



4. Configuring contexts by specifying a context code, description, and name for each context value, and adding its context-sensitive segments, each of which is configured to include identifying information, the column assignment, the initial default value, and the display properties.

The following aspects are important in understanding descriptive flexfield management:

- Segments
- Adding segments to highlighted descriptive flexfields
- Usages
- Parameters
- Delimiters
- Initial Values
- Business Intelligence

Segments

You can assign sequence order numbers to global segments and to context-sensitive segments in each context. Segment display is always in a fixed order. You cannot enter a number for one segment that is already in use for a different segment.

Value sets are optional for context segments and follow specific guidelines:

- The value set that you specify for a context segment consists of a set of context codes.
- Each context code corresponds to a context that is appropriate for the descriptive flexfield.
- The value set must be independent or table-validated.
- If table-validated, the WHERE clause must not use the VALUESET.value_set_code or SEGMENT.segment_code bind variables.
- The value set must be of data type Character with the maximum length of values being stored no larger than the context's column length.
- If you don't specify a value set for a context segment, the valid values for that context segment are derived from the context codes. The definition of each context segment specifies the set of context-sensitive segments that can be presented when that context code is selected by the end user.
- For reasons of data integrity, you cannot delete an existing context. Instead, you can disable the associated context value in its own value set by setting its end date to a date in the past.
- You can configure the individual global segments and context-sensitive segments in a descriptive flexfield. These segment types are differentiated by their usage, but they are configured on application pages that use most of the same properties.

Adding Segments to Highlighted Descriptive Flexfields

When you highlight flexfields on a run time page and use an **Add Segment** icon button to create a segment, the segment code, name, description, table column, and sequence number are set automatically. If you use an **Add Segment** icon button to configure descriptive flexfield segments, you cannot use an existing value set. Value sets are created automatically when you add the segments. You can enter the valid values, their descriptions, and the default value or specify the formatting constraints for the value set, such as minimum and maximum values.

Depending on display type, the value set you create with the **Add Segment** icon button is either an independent value set or a format-only value set. The table shows which type of value set is created depending on the segment display component you select.

Display Component	Value Set Created with Add Segment
Check Box	Independent



Display Component	Value Set Created with Add Segment
Drop-down List	Independent
List of Values	Independent
Radio Button Group	Independent
Text Field With Search	Independent
Text box	Format Only
Text area	Format Only
Date/Time	Format Only

Tip: After you add a context value, refresh the page to see the new value.

Usages

Descriptive flexfield usages allow for the same definition to be applied to multiple entities or application tables, such as a USER table and a USER_HISTORY table. Descriptive flexfield tables define the placeholder entity where the flexfield segment values are stored once you have configured the descriptive flexfield. When you configure a flexfield, the configuration applies to all its usages.

Parameters

Some descriptive flexfields provide parameters, which are attributes of the same or related entity objects. Parameters are public arguments to a descriptive flexfield. Parameters provide outside values in descriptive flexfield validation. You use parameters to set the initial value or derivation value of an attribute from external reference data, such as a column value or a session variable, rather than from user input. Parameters can be referenced by the logic that derives the default segment value, and by table-validated value set WHERE clauses.

Delimiters

A segment delimiter or separator visually separates segment values when the flexfield is displayed as a string of concatenated segments.

Initial Values

The SQL statement defining an initial value must be a valid statement that returns only one row and a value of the correct type.

You can use two types of SQL statements:

- SQL statement with no binding. For example, select MIN(SALARY) from EMPLOYEES.
- SQL statement with bind variables. You can use the following bind variables in the WHERE clause of the SQL statement.
 - : { SEGMENT . < segment_code > }: Identifies a segment in the same context.



- : (CONTEXT. < context_code>; segment_code>): Identifies a segment in a different context. The context must be in the same category or in an ancestor category, and it cannot be a multiple-row context.
- : {VALUESET. < value_set_code>}: Identifies the closest prior segment in the same context that is assigned to the specified value set.
- :{FLEXFIELD.<internal code>}: Identifies a flexfield.

For more information about using bind variables, see the help for value sets.

Business Intelligence

Selecting a global, context, or context-sensitive segment's BI Enabled check box specifies that the segment is available for use in Oracle Business Intelligence.

When the flexfield is imported into Oracle Business Intelligence, the label you selected from the BI Label drop-down list equalizes the segment with segments in other contexts, and maps the segment to the logical object represented by the label.

Enabling Descriptive Flexfield Segments for Business Intelligence: Points to Consider

A descriptive flexfield that is registered in the database as enabled for Oracle Business Intelligence (BI) includes a BI Enabled setting for each of its segments. When a global, context, or context-sensitive segment is BI-enabled, it is available for use in Oracle Business Intelligence.

The following aspects are important in understanding BI-enabled flexfield segments:

- Flattening business components to use BI-enabled segments in Oracle BI
- Equalizing segments to prevent duplication and complexity in the flattened component
- Mapping attributes of flattened business components to logical objects in Oracle BI
- Managing the labels that map segments to logical objects in Oracle BI

After you deploy a business intelligence-enabled flexfield, use the Import Oracle Fusion Data Extensions for Transactional Business Intelligence process to import the flexfield changes into the Oracle Business Intelligence repository. Users can make use of the newly-generated attributes in business intelligence applications. For example, a user can generate a report that includes attributes added by the descriptive flexfield. For additional information about logical objects and import, refer to the Oracle Transactional Business Intelligence Administrator's Guide.

Flattening

When you deploy a business intelligence-enabled descriptive flexfield, the deployment process generates an additional set of flattened Application Development Framework (ADF) business components in addition to the usual ADF business components and ADF faces run time artifacts that are generated during deployment. The flattened business components include attributes for business intelligence-enabled segments only. Flattening means each custom column in each context shows up as an attribute in an Oracle Business Intelligence folder.

Flattened components include one attribute for the BI-enabled context-segment, and one attribute for each business intelligence-enabled global segment. For BI-enabled context-sensitive segments, consider the following:

- If you assigned a label to the segment, the flattened components include an additional single attribute representing segments with that label.
- If you didn't assign a label, the flattened components include a discrete attribute for each BI-enabled contextsensitive segment in each context.

Mapping to Logical Objects in Business Intelligence

You can simplify reporting by representing similar segments as a single logical object in Business Intelligence.



If you assign a label to any set of context-sensitive segments that serve the same purpose in different contexts, you can consolidate or equalize the segments into a single attribute. This prevents duplication and the extra workload and complexity that result from the flattening process. For example, a United States context might have a Passport segment and a Canada context might have Visa segment. If you assign the NationalID segment label to both the Passport and Visa segments, they are equalized into the same NationalID attribute in the flattened business component.

Non-labeled context-sensitive segments aren't equalized across context values, so the flattened components include a separate attribute for each context-sensitive segment for each context value. It may not be possible to equalize similarly labeled segments if they have incompatible data types or value set types.

Assign a label to a global segment, context segment, or context-sensitive segment to map the corresponding attribute in the flattened components to a logical object in Oracle Business Intelligence. Using labels to map segments to BI logical objects minimizes the steps for importing the flexfield into Oracle Business Intelligence.

Note: Assigning a label to a context-sensitive segment serves to equalize the attribute across contexts, as well

as map the equalized attribute to business intelligence.

Managing Labels

You may assign a predefined label (if available) to segments or create new labels for assignment, as needed. Specify a code, name, and description to identify each label. In the BI Object Name field, enter the name of the logical object in Oracle Business Intelligence to which the segment label should map during import. Specifying the BI logical object minimizes the steps for importing the flexfield into Oracle Business Intelligence and helps to equalize context-sensitive segments across contexts.

If no labels are assigned to a BI-enabled segment, or the BI Object Name on the assigned label doesn't exist in business intelligence, you must manually map the segment to the desired logical object when importing into Oracle Business Intelligence.

In addition, context-sensitive segments without labels cannot be equalized across context values. The flattened components include a separate attribute for each non-labeled context-sensitive segment in each context.

Importing to Oracle Business Intelligence Repository

After you deploy a business intelligence-enabled flexfield, import the flexfield changes into the Oracle Business Intelligence repository to make use of the newly flattened business components in business intelligence and then propagate the flexfield object changes. When you import the metadata into the Oracle Business Intelligence repository, you must do so as the FUSION APPS BI APPID user.

To import flexfield changes into the Oracle Business Intelligence repository in Oracle Cloud implementations, run the Import Oracle Fusion Data Extensions for Transactional Business Intelligence process. For additional information about import, refer to the Oracle Transactional Business Intelligence Administrator's Guide.

Note: When you import a flexfield into the Oracle Business Intelligence repository, you see both <name>_ and <name>_ attributes for each segment, along with some other optional attributes. The <name> attribute contains the value. The <name>_ attribute contains the code of the value set that the value comes from, and is used for linking to the value dimension. You must import both attributes.



Manage Extensible Flexfields

Extensible Flexfields: Explained

Extensible flexfields are like descriptive flexfields, with some additional features.

- You can add as many context-sensitive segments to the flexfield as you need. You aren't restricted by the number of columns predefined and registered for the flexfield.
- You can configure a one-to-many relationship between the entity and its extended attribute rows.
 - A row of data can have multiple contexts associated with it.
 - A row of data can have multiple occurrences of the same context.
- You can configure attributes in groups to form a context so that the attributes in the context always appear together
 in the user interface.
- You can use existing hierarchical categories so that entities inherit the contexts that are configured for their parents. Contexts are reusable throughout categories.
- Application development has registered some extensible flexfields to support view and edit privileges. For such
 flexfields, you can specify view and edit privileges at the context level to control who sees the attributes and who can
 change the attributes' values.

When you configure a context for multiple rows per entity, the segments are displayed as a table.

Unlike descriptive flexfields, the extension columns corresponding to extensible flexfields segments are part of extension tables, separate from the base application table. Unlike descriptive flexfield contexts, the set of attributes in an extensible flexfield context remains constant and doesn't differ by context value.

An extensible flexfield describes an application entity, with the run time ability to expand the database that implementation consultants can use to define the data structure that appears in the application.

Extensible flexfields support one-to-many relationships between the entity and the extended attribute rows.

To get a list of predefined extensible flexfields, open the Setup and Maintenance work area, and use the Manage Extensible Flexfields task.

The following aspects are important in understanding extensible flexfields:

- Usages
- Categories
- Pages
- Security
- Protected Extensible Flexfield Data

Usages

As with descriptive flexfields, you can define multiple usages for an extensible flexfield, which enables several application tables to share the same flexfield.

For example, a flexfield for shipping options can be used by both a Supplier table and a Buyer table. In addition, you can associate a context with one, some, or all of the flexfield's usages. Thus, with the shipping information example, you can



associate a warehouse context with the Supplier usage, a delivery location context with the Buyer usage, and a ship-via context with all usages.

Usages include security information for applying no security to user access or enforcing view and edit privileges. Some product-specific extensible flexfields have specialized usage fields beyond those for security.

Categories

You can configure multiple extensible flexfield contexts and group the contexts into categories. All extensible flexfields have at least one category. For some extensible flexfields, you can configure a hierarchy of categories. A child category in the hierarchy can inherit contexts from its parent category.

You can define categories for extensible flexfields, and you can associate any combination of contexts with a given category.

For example, the Electronics and Computers category hierarchy might include a Home Entertainment category, which in turn might include an Audio category and a TV category, and so on. The Home Entertainment product might have contexts that specify voltage, dimensions, inputs and outputs. Contexts are reusable within a given extensible flexfield. For example, the dimensions context could be assigned to any category that needs to include dimensional information.

Pages

Extensible flexfields let you combine contexts into groups known as pages, which serve to connect the contexts so they will always be presented together in the application user interface.

Each application page corresponds to one extensible flexfield category, with a separate region of the page for each associated context.

Security

When you configure a flexfield, you set the privileges for a context at the usage level by selecting actions for the view and edit privileges of a context usage.

When an end user performs a search, the user interface displays only the attribute values of the contexts for which the user has view privileges. The user is able to perform a search using all attributes for all contexts, regardless of view privileges.

If end users access a context through a web service, an exception is thrown if they perform an action for which they don't have privileges.

All extensible flexfields have a base data security resource. Some data security resources for extensible flexfields are preconfigured with actions that you can use to specify access privileges. If no action is preconfigured, a security administrator can create actions and policies to support access control on the extensible flexfield attributes.

Some extensible flexfields have a translatable option; these flexfields also have a translation data security resource.

Protected Extensible Flexfield Data

Application developers may mark some data configurations in an extensible flexfield as protected, indicating that you can't edit them.

If an extensible flexfield is partially protected, then you can't edit the protected portions of the flexfield's configuration. For example:

- If an extensible flexfield context is protected, you can't edit its:
 - Context details
 - Context segments
 - Context usages



- If an extensible flexfield page is protected, you can't:
 - Edit the page details or delete the page
 - Edit the contexts associated with the page

Note:

- There is no restriction on page references to protected contexts. Custom pages you create may contain any context, whether protected or not.
- There is a restriction on category references to protected contexts. If a context is protected, you can't add it to or delete it from any category.

Planning Extensible Flexfields: Points to Consider

Once you have identified a flexfield to configure, plan the configuration in advance. Compile a list of the UI pages and other artifacts in your deployment that are affected by the configuration. Verify that you are provisioned with the roles needed to view and configure the flexfield. View the flexfield using the Highlight Flexfields command in the Administration menu while viewing the run time page where the flexfield appears. Plan how you will deploy the flexfield for test and production users. Review the tools and tasks available for managing flexfields, such as the Define Flexfields task list, Manage Sandboxes, and Highlight Flexfields for adding and editing flexfield segments.

Planning an extensible flexfield can involve the following tasks:

- 1. Identify a hierarchical structure of categories.
- 2. Identify existing context values.
- 3. Identify custom attributes and plan the extensible flexfield segments, segment properties, and structure.
- 4. Plan validation rules.
- 5. Plan initial values.
- 6. Plan security.
- 7. Plan attribute mapping to Oracle Business Intelligence objects.

Category Hierarchy Structure

Existing category hierarchy structures provide the framework for planning what segments to add to an extensible flexfield as custom attributes of an entity.

Some Oracle Fusion applications provide user interfaces to create and manage an extensible flexfield's category hierarchy.

Contexts and Existing Context Values

If related custom attributes can be grouped together, plan adding the attributes as a context of segments, and plan the order in which the attributes should appear.

Some extensible flexfields have preconfigured context values. Region headers displayed in a the user interface page or pages that contain the flexfield segments identify existing contexts. Using the Manage Extensible Flexfields task, find and open the flexfield for editing to view the list of configured context values.

See product-specific information for guidance in using preconfigured context values.

Plan the Segments and Segment Properties

List all the custom attributes that you want to add as extensible flexfield segments.

For each segment, define properties, including the indexed property.



Plan Validation Rules

Define each segment's validation rules and check if value sets exist for those rules or you must create new ones. If you must create a value set, you can create it either before you configure the flexfield or at the same time that you create or edit a segment.

When determining a segment's validation rules, consider the following questions:

- What is the data type character, date, date and time, or number?
- Does the segment require any validation beyond data type and maximum length?
- Should a character type value be restricted to digits, or are alphabetic characters allowed?
- Should alphabetic characters automatically be changed to uppercase?
- Should numeric values be zero-filled?
- How many digits can follow the radix separator of a numeric value? In base ten numerical systems the radix separator is decimal point.
- Does the value need to fall within a range?
- Should the value be selected from a list of valid values? If so, consider the following questions:
 - Can you use an existing application table from which to obtain the list of valid values, or do you need to create a custom list?
 - o If you are using an existing table, do you need to limit the list of values using a WHERE clause?
 - Does the list of valid values depend on the value in another flexfield segment?
 - o Is the list of valid values a subset of another flexfield segment's list of values?

Plan Initial Values

For every segment, list the constant value or SQL statement, if any, to use for the initial value of the custom attribute.

Plan Security

Determine what privileges to set for view and edit access to context attributes, such as providing all end users with view access but only managers with edit access.

If your security restrictions apply to several contexts, you can create generic actions. At a minimum, create the generic actions for the base data security resource. If the flexfield has a translatable option and you plan to use translatable contexts, then also create the generic actions for the translation data security resource. For example, if the Item flexfield supports the translatable option and has a data security resource ITEM_EFF_VL in addition to the base data security resource ITEM_EFF_B, then create actions for both data security resources, such as EDIT_NONTRANS_ATTRS for ITEM_EFF_B and EDIT_TRANS_ATTRS for ITEM_EFF_VL.

If your security restrictions are more fine-grained, such as needing to secure each context with a different privilege, then you can create more fine-grained actions.

Plan Which Segments Map to Oracle Business Intelligence Objects

If an extensible flexfield has been enabled for Oracle Business Intelligence, you can make the attributes available for use in Oracle Business Intelligence applications.

Managing Extensible Flexfields: Points to Consider

Configuring extensible flexfields involves managing the available flexfields registered with your application database.



The following sequence describes how to configure extensible flexfields:

- 1. Configuring contexts by creating each context segment and the context-sensitive segments for each context segment, and providing the following for each segments:
 - a. Identifying information
 - b. Column assignment
 - c. Initial default value
 - d. Display properties
- 2. Configuring context usages and usage security by selecting actions to which users should have access:
 - View
 - Edit
 - None, if no special privileges should be enforced.
- 3. Configuring categories and category details.
- 4. Associating contexts with a category.
- **5.** Creating logical pages for a category.

The following aspects are important in understanding extensible flexfield management:

- Contexts and pages
- Categories
- Initial values
- · Adding segments to highlighted extensible flexfields
- Indexed segments
- Security
- Deployment

Contexts and Pages

Each context is displayed to end users as a region containing its context-sensitive segments. You can specify instruction help text to display instructions that explain how to use the region and its attributes to end users. Instruction help text is displayed at the top of the context region. A context can be defined as single row or multi row. Single row contexts are the same as descriptive flexfields contexts. A single row context has only one set of context-sensitive segments. A multi-row context enables you to associate multiple sets of values with the same object instance.

For example, for a BOOK table, you could create a multi row context named chapters that contains a segment for chapter and a segment for number of pages. Multiple chapters can then be associated with each book in the BOOK table.

For contexts that store multiple rows, you can uniquely identify each row by having the values in each row form a unique key.

If flexfield has a category hierarchy, then you can leverage the hierarchy to reuse contexts for similar entities, such as similar items in a product catalog.

Set the context to translatable so that free-form text entered by end users is stored in the language of the user's locale, and different translations of that text can be stored in other languages. Segments in the translated contexts should utilize formatonly value sets for storing free-form, user-entered text.

Set the context security to give an end user view or edit access to a context. The context's task flow and region appear in the user interface only for users with view access. With edit access, an end user can edit the context's attribute values. With no action specified for a usage, no special privileges are enforced through the context's configuration.



Define logical pages to group contexts together in the user interface. For a given category, you may create one or more logical pages. You may add one or more of the category's associated contexts to each of the category's logical pages.

You can specify:

- The sequence of the contexts within each page.
- The sequence in which the logical pages appear.
- Instruction help text to display instructions that explain how to use the page to end users. Instruction help text is displayed at the top of the logical page, preceding all of its context regions.

Categories

A category is a grouping of related data items that can be considered to belong together. You can associate any combination of contexts with a given category. Extensible flexfields with more than 30 categories must be deployed as a background process.

A category hierarchy logically organizes a set of categories. For example, the Electronics and Computers category hierarchy might include a Computer category and a Home Entertainment category, which in turn might include an Audio category and a TV category, and so on.

A category can be a child or sibling of an existing category. The hierarchy can be as simple or as complex as desired, with any combination of zero or more sibling categories and zero or more child categories. If no category is defined, the data items are grouped under a single predefined default category.

Each category has associated contexts that store relevant information about a data item in that category. For example, a Home Entertainment product has contexts that specify Voltage, Dimensions, Inputs and Outputs. Contexts are reusable within a given extensible flexfield. Then, the Dimensions context could be assigned to any category that needs to include dimensional information.

If a hierarchy includes child categories, each child category inherits the contexts from its parent category; for example, the Home Entertainment category inherits Voltage and Dimensions from the Electronics and Computers category.

Each extensible flexfield is associated with a particular category hierarchy. Consider category hierarchies to be defining framework for extensible flexfields and their contexts. A category hierarchy specifies which contexts are valid for each category.

An extensible flexfield can include multiple contexts which you define to support a given category. These contexts can be suitable for various purposes, but within a particular category, some contexts might be considered to be related to, or dependent on, each other. You can combine these contexts into groups known as logical pages, and determine the sequence in which the pages appear. This serves to connect the contexts so they will always be presented together and in a particular order in the application user interface.

For example, the Home Entertainment category might have an Electrical Specifications page that contains the Voltage, Inputs and Outputs contexts, and a Physical Specifications page that contains the Dimensions and Form Factor contexts.

Initial Values

The SQL statement defining an initial value must be a valid statement that returns only one row and a value of the correct type.

You can use two types of SQL statements:

- SQL statement with no binding. For example, select MIN(SALARY) from EMPLOYEES.
- SQL statement with bind variables. You can use the following bind variables in the WHERE clause of the SQL statement.



- : { SEGMENT . < segment_code > }: Identifies a segment in the same context.
- :{context.<context_code>; segment.<segment_code>}: Identifies a segment in a different context. The context must be in the same category or in an ancestor category, and it cannot be a multiple-row context.
- :{VALUESET.
 value_set_code>}: Identifies the closest prior segment in the same context that is assigned to the specified value set.
- : {FLEXFIELD. < internal_code>}: Identifies a flexfield.

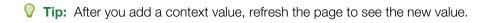
For more information about using bind variables, see the help for value sets.

Adding Segments to Highlighted Extensible Flexfields

When you highlight flexfields on a run time page and use an **Add Segment** icon button to create a segment, the segment code, name, description, table column, and sequence number are set automatically. If you use an **Add Segment** icon button to configure extensible flexfield segments, you can't use an existing value set. Value sets are created automatically when you add segments. You can enter the valid values, their descriptions, and the default value or specify the formatting constraints for the value set, such as minimum and maximum values.

Depending on display type, the value set you create with the **Add Segment** icon button is either an independent value set or a format-only value set. The table shows which type of value set is created depending on the segment display component you select.

Display Component	Value Set Created with Add Segment
Check Box	Independent
Drop-down List	Independent
List of Values	Independent
Radio Button Group	Independent
Text Field With Search	Independent
Text box	Format Only
Text area	Format Only
Rich Text Editor	Format Only
Date/Time	Format Only



Indexed Segments

You can designate an extensible flexfield segment as indexed so that it's one of the selectively required attributes a user can use in an attribute search. If you indicate in the Manage Extensible Flexfield UI page that a segment should be indexed, the



column representing the segment must be added to the database index. Commonly, a database administrator (DBA) adds columns to the database index.

When an extensible flexfield with indexed segments is deployed, search task flows are generated along with the other flexfield artifacts and specify the indexed attributes as selectively required. In the deployed extensible flexfield's search task flow, an end user must specify at least one of the indexed attributes in the search criteria. This prevents non-selective searches, which could cause performance issues.

For example, if you index the memory and processor attributes and ensure that the corresponding columns in the database are indexed, a user can search an item catalog for computers by entering processor or memory or both as a search criteria. No search is performed if an end user enters an attribute that isn't indexed as a search criterion.

Security

An extensible flexfield's base data security resource typically has a name with an _B suffix. The translation data security resource is a view of a translation table that typically has a name with an _VL suffix.

If a flexfield supports the translatable option and has a translation data security resource, make sure that you create the action for the appropriate data security resource.

- If you create a context-specific action for a nontranslatable context, add it to the base data security resource.
- If you create a context-specific action for a translatable context, add it to the translation data security resource.

Deployment

You can only deploy extensible flexfields using the Manage Extensible Flexfields task. You can deploy extensible flexfields offline as a background process and continue working in the session without having to wait for the deployment to complete. You can queue up several extensible flexfields and deploy as a background process. The flexfields are deployed, one at a time, in the order that you deploy them to the queue. You must deploy extensible flexfields with more than 30 categories as a background process.

You can remove an extensible flexfield from the deployment queue with the Cancel Background Deployment command. When an extensible flexfield is deployed in a background process, its offline status indicates that the flexfield is in a background deployment process. A flexfield's offline status is cleared and it's deployment status updated when the background deployment process has completed.

Note: The Offline Status column refreshes when you perform a new search in the Manage Extensible Flexfields task.

Enabling Extensible Flexfield Segments for Business Intelligence: Points to Consider

An extensible flexfield that is registered in the database as enabled for Oracle Business Intelligence (BI) includes a BI Enabled setting for each of its segment instances. When a segment instance is BI-enabled, it's available for use in Oracle Business Intelligence.

The following aspects are important in understanding BI-enabled extensible flexfield segments.

- Flattening business components to use BI-enabled segments in Oracle BI
- Mapping attributes of flattened business components to logical objects in Oracle BI

After you deploy a business intelligence-enabled flexfield, use the Import Oracle Fusion Data Extensions for Transactional Business Intelligence process to import the flexfield changes into the Oracle Business Intelligence repository. Users can make use of the newly-generated attributes in business intelligence applications. For additional information about logical objects and import, refer to the Oracle Transactional Business Intelligence Administrator's Guide.



Flattening

When you deploy a business intelligence-enabled extensible flexfield, the deployment process generates an additional set of flattened business components for use in business intelligence. The flattened business components include attributes for business intelligence-enabled segment instances only.

If you assigned a label to a segment, the flattened components include a single attribute representing all segment instances with that label. If you didn't assign a label, the flattened components include a discrete attribute for each BI-enabled segment instance in each structure.

Importing to Oracle Business Intelligence Repository

After you deploy a business intelligence-enabled flexfield, import the flexfield changes into the Oracle Business Intelligence repository to make use of the newly flattened business components in business intelligence and then propagate the flexfield object changes. When you import the metadata into the Oracle Business Intelligence repository, you must do so as the FUSION_APPS_BI_APPID user. To import flexfield changes into the Oracle Business Intelligence repository in Oracle Cloud implementations, run the Import Oracle Fusion Data Extensions for Transactional Business Intelligence process. For additional information about import, refer to the Oracle Transactional Business Intelligence Administrator's Guide.



Tip: When you import a flexfield into the Oracle Business Intelligence repository, you see both <name>_ and <name>_ attributes for each segment, along with some other optional attributes. The <name>_ attribute contains the value. The <name>_ attribute contains the value set that the value comes from, and is used for linking to the value dimension. You must import both attributes.

Managing Extensible Flexfield Categories: Points to Consider

Categories are a way of extending the number of context-sensitive segments for a flexfield beyond the columns reserved for flexfield segments.

An Items extensible flexfield has a category for each item and each category can have one or more contexts. The laptop item belongs to the Computers category. Since extensible flexfields are mapped to separate extension tables, not just to columns as with descriptive flexfields, the thirty reserved columns on the extensible flexfield table let you define up to thirty context-sensitive segments for each context.

If you add a Dimensions context to the Computers category, thirty segments are available. But if you need to add more than thirty attributes, create another context and associate it to the same category. You could now add an Electronics Attributes context to the same Computers category in which you create another thirty segments.

You can continue creating more contexts and adding them to the Computers category. In this way your laptop computer item can be extended with as many attributes as you need, because it is mapped to a category and you can keep adding contexts to that category.

A descriptive flexfield on an items table with thirty columns reserved for segments can only have a single context. Once you configure the columns for that one context, you cannot create any more segments.

Predefined and Preconfigured Categories

How you structure the flexfield configuration depends on how categories are defined for the flexfield. If the extensible flexfield is preconfigured with one category, associate all your contexts and pages with that category. If a product-specific extensible flexfield is preconfigured with several categories, associate your contexts and pages with those categories. If the extensible flexfields provide user interfaces for configuring multiple categories, associate a context with more than one category using inheritance.

Some products provide an activity or task for creating and maintaining categories for an extensible flexfield. See product-specific information to determine if you can create categories for the flexfield.



You can view a flexfield's category hierarchies by using either the Highlight Flexfields feature or the Manage Extensible Flexfields task to find and open the flexfield for editing.

Disabling Categories

While configuring an extensible flexfield, you can disable a category. The Enabled column in the Category table of the Edit Extensible Flexfield page, indicates which categories are enabled.

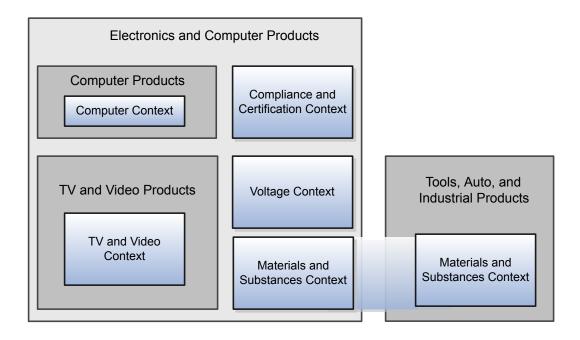
Note: When you deploy an extensible flexfield that has a disabled category, that category and its descendant categories aren't deployed. Contexts and their segments are deployed only if they belong to at least one enabled category.

Contexts

Group similar custom attributes into contexts. The group is displayed together in a region. The region's header is the context value.

If a category hierarchy exists for the flexfield, then you can leverage the hierarchy to reuse contexts for similar entities, such as similar items in a product catalog.

The figure shows the Item Extended Attributes flexfield, which uses the category hierarchy feature to reuse contexts. The flexfield's Electronics and Computers category contains contexts for compliance and certification, voltage, and materials and substances. The TV and Video subcategory and the Computer Products subcategory inherit the Electronics and Computer contexts in addition to having their own contexts. The Materials and Substances context belongs to both the Electronics and Computer Products category and the Tools, Auto, and Industrial Products category.



The table shows an example of category hierarchy for an extensible flexfield.

Display Name	Code	Description
Electronics and Computers	PROD_ ELECTRONICS	Electronics and Computers



Display Name	Code	Description
TV and Video	PROD_TV_VIDEO	Television and Video
Computers	PROD_COMPUTERS	Computers
Office Products and Supplies	PROD_ OFFICE_ PRODUCTS_ SUPPLIES	Office Products and Supplies
Tools, Auto, and Industrial	PROD_TOOLS_AUTO_INDUSTRIAL	Tools, Automotive, and Industrial
Sports and Outdoors	PROD_ SPORTS_ OUTDOORS	Sports and Outdoors

To store voltage information for all electronic and computer items, associate a Voltage context with the Electronics and Computers category. Both the TV and Video subcategory and the Computers subcategory then inherit the Voltage context from the parent Electronics and Computers category.

Configuring an Item Extended Attributes Flexfield: Example

The Item Extended Attributes flexfield provides segments for extending the Item business object. In the Manage Extensible Flexfields task, you configure your product business object to include a Technical Specifications logical page in the user interface for the Electronics and Computers category of items.

In this example, your configuration of this flexfield groups custom attributes into the following contexts:

- Materials and Substances
- Compliance and Certification
- Voltage

Scenario

The following list shows an example plan for custom computer attributes for the Item Extended Attributes flexfield. In this example, the Electronics Information page is inherited from the parent Electronics and Computers category.

- Page: Electronics Information
 - o Context: Compliance and Certification, single row
 - ISO 14001 (International Organization for Standardization for an Environmental Management System)
 - ENERGY STAR (energy efficiency guidelines)
 - ROHS (Restriction of the use of certain hazardous substances in electrical and electronic equipment)
 - Context: Voltage, single row
 - Minimum voltage
 - Maximum voltage
 - Current type
 - Context: Materials and Substances, multiple rows
 - Material
 - Contain recyclate
 - Percent unit mass



- Page: Computer Information
 - Context: Processor Specifications, single row
 - Manufacturer
 - CPU type
 - Processor interface
 - Processor class
 - Processor speed
 - Cores

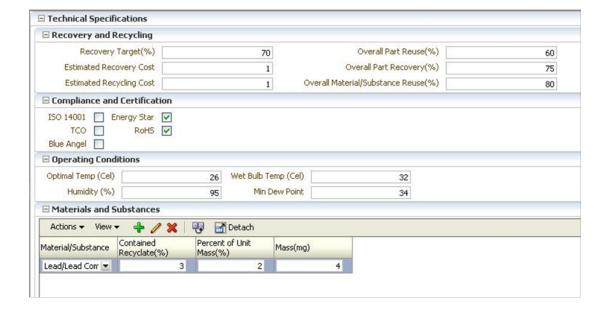
The following table summarizes key decisions for this scenario.



Collecting Technical Specifications

Your product inventory pages for electronics and computers require a technical specifications page. Your product inventory pages for furniture require a furniture specifications page and an assembly instructions page. Items in both the electronics and computer category, and in the furniture category, share attributes for specifying materials and substances.

The figure shows a Technical Specifications logical page in the user interface for the Electronics and Computers category, with attributes in the context of Recovery and Recycling, Compliance and Certification, Operating Conditions, and Materials and Substances. The Materials and Substances context is configured for multiple rows so your users can select all the materials and substances required to make a single product, displayed as attribute values in a table.





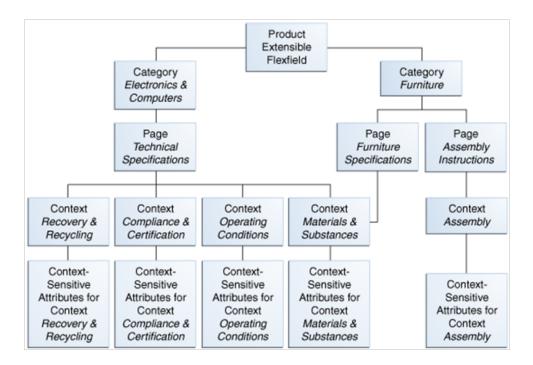
Analysis

You use logical pages to arrange how the contexts appear in the user interface. Use a context to store all the materials and substances required to make a single product. You can configure a context to store multiple rows per entity. The multiple rows are displayed in a table, as for the Materials and Substances context.

The Technical Specifications logical page contains the attributes for the four contexts.

- Recovery and Recycling
- Compliance and Certification
- Operating Conditions
- Materials and Substances

In the figure, the Furniture category is configured to include a Furniture Specifications logical page and an Assembly Instructions logical page. The two categories (Electronics & Computers and Furniture) share the Materials & Substances context.



Configure Security for the Item Flexfield Configuration

The following table shows an example of data security policies for the Item flexfield.

Data Security Resource	Policy	Role	Actions	Condition
ITEM_EFF_B	A	VOLTAGE_SPEC	edit_ nontrans_ voltage_ctx	All values
ITEM_EFF_VL	В	COMPLIANCE_ SPEC	edit_ trans_ compliance_ ctx	All values



Data Security Resource	Policy	Role	Actions	Condition
ITEM_EFF_VL	С	COMPUTER_SPEC	edit_ trans_attrs	ComputerCategoryFilter
ITEM_EFF_VL	D	TELEVISION_ SPEC	edit_ trans_attrs	TVCategoryFilter

The following table shows the privileges for three of the flexfield's contexts.

Context	Edit Privilege	View Privilege
Voltage	edit_ nontrans_ voltage_ctx	NONE
Compliance and Certification	edit_ trans_ compliance_ ctx	NONE
Materials and Substances	edit_ trans_attrs	NONE

In this example, anyone can view the contexts' attributes, but the edit privileges are restricted as follows:

- Voltage: Editable only by voltage specialists.
- Compliance and Certification: Editable only by compliance specialists.
- Materials and Substances: Only computer specialists can edit these attributes for items in the computer category.
 Only television specialists can edit these attributes for items in the TV category.

In this example, the Materials and Substances context is secured by a generic action with a condition applied to restrict access by category. Voltage and Compliance and Certification are secured by actions specific to each context.

FAQs for Manage Extensible Flexfields

Why did the extensible flexfield context not appear at run time?

If a deployed extensible flexfield context doesn't appear in the user interface, verify that the context is associated with one of the category's pages defined for the extensible flexfield.

Manage Key Flexfields

Key Flexfields: Explained

Key flexfields provide a means to capture a key such as a part number, a job code, or an account code. A key flexfield consists of one or more segments, where each segment can have a meaning.

For example, a part number 10-PEN-BLA-450 might correspond to a black pen from supplier #450 sold by division #10 (office supplies). Behind the scenes, the application uses a unique number, 13452, for this part, but the user always sees the 10-PEN-BLA-450 part number.



The following aspects are important to understanding key flexfields:

- Architecture
- · Segments and segment labels
- Structures
- Segment and structure instances
- Combinations
- Dynamic combination creation
- Security

Key flexfields aren't optional. You must configure key flexfields to ensure that your applications operate correctly. You configure and maintain key flexfield definitions with the Manage Key Flexfields task. To get a list of predefined key flexfields, open the Setup and Maintenance work area, and use the Manage Key Flexfields task. For information about specific key flexfields, see the help for the product where the associated business component is implemented.

Architecture

Flexfield metadata is stored in the flexfield metadata tables. When you configure a key flexfield, you define metadata about the key flexfield covering aspects such as:

- Segments are in a structure
- · Structures in the flexfield
- Value sets in each segment

Based on the flexfield metadata, actual part numbers are captured at run time as a combination of segment values and stored in a combinations table. A combinations table contains all the segment columns for a flexfield, a unique ID column, and a structure instance number column. The structure instance number column differentiates multiple arrangements of the segment columns. For example, a part number containing multiple segments can be represented by a key flexfield. A part number key flexfield has a corresponding combinations table. In that table, the flexfield stores a list of the complete codes, with each segment of the code in a column, with the corresponding unique ID and structure instance number for the code. When users define a new part number or maintain existing part numbers in the parts catalog, they directly maintain rows in the combinations table.

The foreign key table contains a different business entity than the combinations table. For example, the business entity in the foreign key table is order lines or invoice lines that contain foreign key references to parts for ordering. Any number of foreign key tables can reference a particular entity represented by a key flexfield.

Segments and Segment Labels

A key flexfield contains segments and a segment label identifies a particular segment within a key flexfield. Segment labels are defined and made available by the product development. A segment contains the following details:

- A prompt
- A short prompt
- Display width
- · The sequential position of the segment within the key flexfield structure
- The range type
- · Column name of the attribute being stored by the segment
- A default value set
- A label for the segment



Applications identify a particular segment for some purpose such as security or computations. Segment name or segment order cannot reliably identify a segment because key flexfield segments can be configured to appear in any order with any prompts. A segment label functions as a tag for a segment.

For example, the requirement is to identify which segment in the accounting flexfield contains balancing information and which segment contains natural account information. A segment label determines which segment you are using for natural account information. When you define your accounting flexfield, you must specify which segment label apply to which segments. Some labels must be unique, and cannot be applied to more than one segment in each structure. Other labels are required, and must be applied to at least one segment in each structure.

A segment label helps a user searching for segments, such as the Cost Center label for all segments across key flexfields that store a value for the cost center.

Structures

A key flexfield structure definition includes the number of segments and their order.

In some applications, different users like to see different segment structures for the same flexfield. A key flexfield can have multiple structures if registered to support more than one structure.

The flexfield can display different fields for different users based on a data condition in your application data, such as the value of another field entered by the user or the user's role. For example, the correctly formatted local postal address for customer service inquiries differs based on locale. A postal address key flexfield could display different segments and prompts for different users based on a location condition in your application data, such as the user's role or a value entered by the user.

Each structure can have one or more segments. Thus a segment is a child of a structure. To store a particular segment, such as Cost Center, in two different structures, you must define the segment separately in each structure. Each structure may have one or more structure instances. Each instance of a structure shares the same number and order of segments, but differs in the values or value sets used in validating the segments.

Structure and Segment Instances

You can define multiple configurations of a key flexfield structure. These structure instances have the same segment structure, in the same sequence order. They differ primarily in how each segment is validated. You define a structure instance for each key flexfield and each key flexfield structure instance.

The segments in a key flexfield structure instance are segment instances. A segment instance is a segment with a specific value set assigned to it. If a key flexfield is registered with a tree structure, you can specify a tree code for a segment instance.

Combinations

A combination is a complete code, or combination of segment values that makes up the code, that uniquely identifies an object.

For example, each part number is a single combination, such as PAD-YEL-11x14 or 01-COM-876-7BG-LTN. In these combinations, the hyphen is the segment separator. If you have ten parts, define ten combinations. A valid combination is an existing or new combination that can be used because it's currently active and doesn't violate cross-validation or security rules. A combination has different segments depending on the flexfield structure being used for that combination. Any combination is associated with only one particular flexfield structure.

Many applications refer to a key flexfield combination by using the name of the entity or the key flexfield itself. For example, Assets uses the asset key flexfield and refers to one of its combinations as an asset key or asset key flexfield. In another example, Oracle Fusion General Ledger refers to combinations of the accounting flexfield as account or GL account.

Each key flexfield has one corresponding table, known as the combinations table, where the flexfield stores a list of the complete codes, with one column for each segment of the code, together with the corresponding unique ID number (an account combination ID) for that code. Then, other tables in the application have a column that stores just the unique ID for the code. For example, you may have a part number code, such as PAD-YEL-11x14. The Parts combinations table stores



that code along with its ID, 57494. If your application lets you take orders for parts, you might then have an Orders table that stores orders for parts. That Orders table would contain a single column that contains the part ID, 57494, instead of several columns for the complete code PAD-YEL-11x14. Typically, one combinations page maintains the key flexfield, where the key flexfield is the representation of an entity in your application. Maintain individual combinations, such as part numbers in the combinations page.

Dynamic Combination Creation

Dynamic combination creation is the insertion of a new valid combination into a combinations table from a page other than the combinations page. Dynamic combination creation may be enabled at the following levels.

Level Of Dynamic Combination Creation	Controlled By:
Flexfield	Application development
Each usage or reference to the key flexfield	Application development
Structure instance	Administrators and implementation consultants
Other	Administrators and implementation consultants

If your key flexfield or certain usages or references of the key flexfield don't permit dynamic combination creation, you may control whether dynamic combination creation is enabled for each structure instance. If enabled, a user can enter a new combination of segment values using the flexfield window from a foreign key page. For example, when entering a transaction, a GL user can enter a new expense account combination for an account that doesn't yet exist. Your application creates the new account by inserting the new combination into the combinations table behind the scenes. Assuming that the new combination satisfies any existing cross-validation rules, the flexfield inserts the new combination into the combinations table, even though the combinations table isn't the underlying table for the foreign key page.

Planning Key Flexfields: Points to Consider

Your first step in planning your key flexfields is to determine which key flexfields your application requires.

Your plan should include:

- The purpose of the key flexfield
- The number and length of its available segment columns
- Whether your key flexfield allows more than one structure
- Whether more than one structure must be defined
- The number, order and length of your segments for each structure

Consider the following aspects in planning flexfields:

- Before you begin
- · Access to flexfield-related tasks
- Restrictions
- Validation rules for flexfield segments



Before You Begin

Once you have identified a flexfield to configure, plan the configuration in advance. Compile a list of the UI pages and other artifacts in your deployment that are affected by the configuration. Verify that you are provisioned with the roles needed to view and configure the flexfield. View the flexfield using the Highlight Flexfields command in the Administration menu while viewing the run time page where the flexfield appears. Plan how you will deploy the flexfield for test and production users.

Review the tools and tasks available for managing flexfields, such as the Define Flexfields task list and Manage Sandboxes.

If you plan to use value sets, create them before configuring the key flexfield. You cannot create value sets for key flexfields at the time that you add and configure key flexfield segments.

Access to Flexfield-Related Tasks

To access tasks for configuring flexfields and value sets, you must be provisioned with roles that entitle you to access the tasks in the Define Flexfields task list or tasks for managing product-specific flexfields. Contact your security administrator for details. For information about product-specific flexfield tasks, such as Manage Fixed Assets Key Flexfields, consult the product-specific documentation in Oracle Fusion Applications Help.

Restrictions

If you plan to use value sets, create them before configuring the flexfield.

Plan your key flexfield configuration to scale to your enterprise needs. For example, if you expect to disable old cost centers and enable new ones frequently, plan a larger maximum size for your cost center value set so that you can have more available values. One thousand available values for a 3-character value set provides more room for changes than 100 available values for a 2-character value set.

Note the code name of the flexfield you intend to configure so you can find it easily in the Define Flexfield task list or tasks for managing product-specific key flexfields.

In some cases you can customize how the flexfield appears on the page.

See Oracle Fusion Applications Help for specific products to determine any restrictions on using product-specific key flexfields.

Reporting

If you want to report on your data by certain criteria or sub-entities, such as account number or project or region, consider making that sub-entity a distinct segment, rather than combining it with another sub-entity, so that you can categorize and report on smaller discrete units of information.

Managing Key Flexfields: Points to Consider

Consider the plans for a key flexfield, security, and resulting run time pages when configuring key flexfields.

Planning

Plan structures carefully and allow for future needs. Don't change the number, order, and maximum length of segments once you have acquired flexfield data.

Structure Delimiters

A delimiter separates the segments when they appear to end users. The delimiter value of a structure specifies the character used to visually separate segment values when the key flexfield is displayed as a string of concatenated segments in the UI.

Choose the delimiter value of your key flexfield carefully so that it doesn't conflict with the flexfield data. For example, if your data frequently contains periods, such as in monetary or numeric values, don't use a period as your segment separator. Any character you expect to appear frequently in your segment values or descriptions isn't a good choice for the delimiter. If you



change the configuration of a key flexfield, such as the delimiter, the change affects the previously stored key flexfields with that structure.

Security

Oracle Fusion data security enforces value set security.

Within key flexfields, value set security applies to the selection of the individual segment values in the segment list of values. When selecting a key flexfield segment value from the combinations table, data security allows display of only the combinations whose segment values you have access to. Applications development controls whether or not value set security rules propagate to the foreign key table. By default they do.

Run Time Pages

Application development determines the user interface (UI) pages used to render flexfields. The types of key flexfield UI pages are as follows:

- Combinations pages where the underlying entity objects use the combinations table itself
- Foreign key pages where the underlying entity objects contain a foreign key reference to the combinations table
- Partial usage pages where some or all of the key flexfield's segment columns are in a product table

The same key flexfield can be used in different ways on different pages.

A page with a foreign key reference has a base table or view that contains a foreign key reference to a combinations table with the actual flexfield segment columns. This lets you manipulate rows containing code combination IDs (CCID).

A page with partial usage of a key flexfield presents segments that are defined on a product's transactional table in addition to being defined on a combinations table. In the case of a partial usage page, it is possible that only part of the configuration is visible. This enables the key flexfield to behave more like a descriptive flexfield.

A code combination maintenance page or combinations page presents the combinations table. This enables directly creating and maintaining code combinations. The combinations table contains all key flexfield segment columns and a unique ID column.

A typical application has only one combinations page. An application might not have a combinations page if it doesn't support maintenance by administrators.

A page containing a search region enables end users to select which attributes of the key flexfield view object to use as criteria to search for flexfield metadata.

For example, you can configure seven segments for the Account key flexfield. In a foreign key reference page, end users see the typical key flexfield picker with all seven segments where they can search for combinations. In a partial usage page using the same key flexfield, end users potentially could see only a single segment such as the Cost Center labeled segment, or they might see multiple segments but displayed as individual segments rather than as a picker for choosing combinations.

For more information on key flexfield pages, see the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer's Guide.

Key Flexfield Structures: Explained

A key flexfield structure arranges the segments of a key so that you can reuse a single key flexfield in multiple combinations of the same segments or a subset of those segments. Multiple instances of a single structure can accommodate differences in the value sets assigned to the structure's segments.



The structure determines the following aspects of a key flexfield:

- The segments to include
- The order of the segments
- Segment labels on the included segments
- Properties for each segment applied to the instances of the segments in an instance of the structure

Managing Key Flexfield Structures

All the segments defined for a key flexfield are available to be included in a key flexfield structure.

You can define as many segments as there are defined segment columns in your key flexfield combinations table. Ensure that you add segments in the order that your key requires. Once deployed, the order cannot be changed.

Enable segments to indicate that they are in use. A flexfield doesn't display disabled segments in run time. To protect the integrity of your data, disable a segment if you have already used it to enter data.

Key Flexfield Structure Instances and Segment Instances: Explained

A key flexfield structure can have one or more alternate structure instances.

The instances of a key flexfield structure share the following aspects of the structure:

- The same set of segments
- The same arrangement of segments
- The same properties at the segment and structure levels

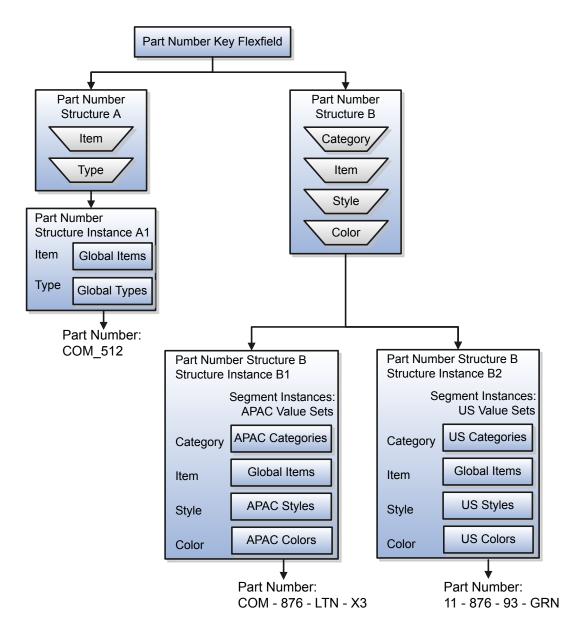
The differences among structure instances include whether dynamic combination creation is allowed. Likewise, at the structure instance level, differences among segment instances are based on the following:

- Value set
- Default type and default value
- Tree code
- · Whether the segment is any of the following:
 - Required
 - Displayed
 - Enabled for business intelligence
 - o Optional or required as a query criterion

For example, you can use one group of value sets for the US and another for France.



The following figure shows two structures instances for a part number structure.



The structures differ in the number of segments and the segment separators used. The structure instances of a structure share all properties defined for that structure. However, the structure instances may vary if the properties are defined at the structure instance or segment instance level. For example, the value set assigned to the segment instances.

Query Required Segment Instances

You can designate a key flexfield segment instance as query required to make it a selectively required attribute. A user can use it a key flexfield combination search. If you indicate on the Manage Key Flexfields UI page that a segment instance requires indexing, add the column representing the segment to the database index. Commonly, a database administrator (DBA) adds columns to the database index.



Following deployment, the combination picker of the key flexfield displays the guery required attributes as selectively required. An user must specify at least one of the query required attributes in the search criteria. This prevents unnecessary searches that could cause performance issues.

For example, you mark the cost center and account attributes as query required and ensure that the corresponding columns in the database are indexed. A user can search for combinations by entering cost center or account or both as search criteria. No search is performed if a user doesn't enter at least one query required attribute as search criteria.

Vip: Index the Structure Instance Number column on your combinations table to improve run time performance.

Dynamic Combinations

If a key flexfield supports dynamic combination creation, you can select to enable this feature by selecting **Dynamic** Combination Creation Allowed. As a result, users enter values at run time that produce new account combinations for the flexfield. If Dynamic Combination Creation Allowed isn't enabled, new valid combinations can only be entered using the combinations table for the flexfield.

Trees

You may define a tree code for the value set assigned to the segment instance. When you assign the tree code to the segment instance, tree hierarchy search operations are available on the segment values.

For a segment instance to be based on a tree, the following must be true.

- Application development registered the key flexfield with a tree structure. The tree structure may be fixed across all segments in the flexfield, or may vary across segments.
- A tree code for that tree structure exists.
- The tree code includes tree versions containing the values of the value set assigned to the segment instance.
- You assign the required tree code directly to the segment instance.

If these conditions are satisfied, different segment instances that use the same value set can be assigned the same or different tree codes. They use a different hierarchy definition over the same values.

Cross-Validation Rules: Explained

You can control the creation of new key flexfield code combinations by defining cross-validation rules. A cross-validation rule defines validation across segments and enforces whether a value of a particular segment can be combined with specific values of other segments to form a new combination.

The table compares segment validation to cross-segment validation:

Type of validation	Type of control
Segment validation	Controls the values you can enter for a particular segment
Cross-segment validation	Controls the combinations of values that administrators and end users can create for key flexfields

Note: You can use cross-validation rules for any key flexfield that has cross-validation enabled. See the documentation for your key flexfield to determine if it supports cross validation.



Cross-validation rules prevent the creation of combinations with values that shouldn't coexist in the same combination. For example, your company requires that all revenue accounts must have a specific department. Therefore, account combinations that have revenue account values, such as all values between 4000 and 5999, must have a corresponding department value other than 000, which indicates no department is specified. You can define cross-validation rules that disallow creation of combinations with incompatible segments, such as 4100-000 or 5000-000.

Alternatively, suppose your accounting key flexfield has an Organization segment with two possible values, 01 and 02. You also have a Natural Account segment with many possible values, but company policy requires that Organization 01 uses the natural account values 001 to 499 and Organization 02 uses the natural account values 500 to 999. You can create cross-validation rules to ensure that users cannot create a general ledger account with combinations of values such as 02-342 or 01-750.

The following aspects are important to understanding cross-validation rules:

- Rule Definitions
- Enforcement
- Timing

Rule Definitions

Cross-validation rules consist of the following information:

Rule Feature	Purpose
Name	Uniquely identifies cross-validation rules in a deployment.
Description	Helps administrators identify the purpose of the rule.
Error message	Explains why the attempted combination violates the rule.
Start Date, End Date	Indicates the period of time when the rule is in effect.
Enabled	Determines whether the rule is enforced.
Condition filter	Determines the conditions under which an enabled cross-validation rule should be evaluated.
Validation filter	Determines the validation that the rule enforces when that condition is met.

When the event specified in the condition filter is applicable, the validation filter condition must be satisfied before the combination can be created. If the event specified in the condition filter isn't applicable, then the combination is considered to pass the rule and the rule won't be evaluated even if it is enabled.



Enforcement

Cross-validation prevents creation of invalid combinations by administrators using maintenance pages and end users using dynamic insertion in foreign key pages.



Enabled rules are enforced when there is an attempt to create a new combination of segment values. Disabled rules are ignored. Deleting the rule has the same effect, but you can re-enable a disabled rule.

Timing

When users attempt to create a new combination, the key flexfield evaluates any cross-validation rules that are enabled and in effect.

Note: Cross-validation rules have no effect on combinations that already exist. The flexfield treats any existing invalid combinations that pre-date the rule as valid.

If you want to prevent users from using previously existing combinations that are no longer valid according to your cross-validation rules, manually disable those combinations using the combinations page for that key flexfield.

When defining a cross-validation rule, specify a start and end date to limit the time when the rule is in effect. The rule is valid for the time including the From and To dates.

Cross-Validation Rules: Points to Consider

When you need key flexfield combinations of segment values validated across segments, you can optimize your cross-validation rules to improve the experience of administrators and end users.

Consider the following when defining cross-validation rules:

- Filters
- Rule Complexity
- Maintenance

Filters

A cross-validation rule includes a condition filter and a validation filter.

The rule is evaluated using the following logic: If the condition filter is satisfied, then validate that the validation filter is satisfied.

- 1. The condition filter describes the event under which the rule will be evaluated. If the event specified in the condition filter isn't applicable, then the rule won't be evaluated even if it is enabled.
- 2. When the event specified in the condition filter is applicable, the validation filter condition must be satisfied before the combination can be created.

For example, if your organization has determined that a certain company value, Operations, cannot use a specific cost center, Marketing, you can define a cross-validation rule to validate your combinations.

- 1. The rule evaluates the company condition filter.
- 2. When company is equal to Operations, the rule evaluates the cost center validation filter.
- 3. When cost center is equal to Marketing, the rule prevents a combination from being created.
- **4.** The error message you defined for the rule displays to inform the user that the attempted combination violates the rule.
- Note: This rule doesn't affect the creation of combinations with Marketing cost center and company values other than Operations.

Rule Complexity

For optimal performance and ease of understanding, define several simple validation rules instead of using one complex rule. Simple validation rules let you provide a more specific error message and are easier to maintain over time.



Avoid rules that control validation across more than two segments, where possible. While you can define cross-validation rules that span two or more segments, keep in mind that it becomes more difficult to interpret cross-validation error messages and correct invalid key flexfield combinations as your rules encompass more segments.

Maintenance

To maintain consistent validation, review existing key flexfields when you update your cross-validation rules. Regardless of your current validation rules, Oracle Fusion Applications accept a key flexfield combination if the combination already exists and is enabled. Therefore, to ensure accurate validation, you must review your existing combinations and disable any combinations that don't match the criteria of your new rules.



Vip: To keep this type of key flexfield maintenance to a minimum, decide upon your cross-validation rules when you first set up your key flexfield structure. Define cross-validation rules before creating combinations and before combinations are used in transactions.

If you want to prevent users from using previously existing combinations that are no longer valid according to your crossvalidation rules, disable those combinations using the combinations page.

Editing a Cross-Validation Rule: Example

Cross-validation rules prevent specific combinations of segment values in account combinations. You can use the Manage Cross-Validation Rules task to edit existing rules or create one-off rules.

Scenario

Your organization has a cross-validation rule called Companies 131 and 151, which restricts account combinations for those companies to department 40 and product 211. Account combinations for both companies should now include department 30. To edit the cross-validation rule, perform these steps.

- 1. Navigate to the Setup and Maintenance work area. Search for and select the Manage Cross-Validation Rules task.
- 2. Select the chart of accounts for your organization and select the **Companies 131 and 151** cross-validation rule.
- 3. Click the Validation Filter icon.
- 4. Click **Add Fields** and select the **Department** segment.
- 5. Accept the default operator, which is Equals, and select department 30.
- 6. Click OK.
- 7. Click Save.
- 8. To update the error message, search for and select the Manage Messages for General Ledger task. Query the error message name for the cross-validation rule and edit the message to include department 30.

Enabling Key Flexfield Segments for Business Intelligence: Points to Consider

A key flexfield registered in the database as enabled for Oracle Business Intelligence (BI) includes a BI Enabled setting for each of its segment instances. When a segment instance is BI-enabled, it's available for use in Oracle Business Intelligence.

The following aspects are important in understanding BI-enabled key flexfield segments.

- Flattening business components to use BI-enabled segments in Oracle BI
- Equalizing segments to prevent duplication and complexity in the flattened component
- Mapping attributes of flattened business components to logical objects in Oracle BI
- Managing the labels that map segments to logical objects in Oracle BI

After you deploy a business intelligence-enabled flexfield, use the Import Oracle Fusion Data Extensions for Transactional Business Intelligence process to import the flexfield changes into the Oracle Business Intelligence repository. Users can make



use of the newly-generated attributes in business intelligence applications. For additional information about logical objects and import, refer to the Oracle Transactional Business Intelligence Administrator's Guide.

Flattening

When you deploy a business intelligence-enabled key flexfield, the deployment process generates an additional set of flattened business components for use in business intelligence. The flattened business components include attributes for business intelligence-enabled segment instances only.

If you assigned a label to a segment, the flattened components include a single attribute representing all segment instances with that label. If you didn't assign a label, the flattened components include a discrete attribute for each BI-enabled segment instance in each structure.

Mapping to Logical Objects in Business Intelligence

You can simplify reporting by representing similar segments as a single logical object in Business Intelligence. If you assign a label to segments that serve the same purpose in different structures, you can consolidate the segments into a single attribute. This prevents duplication and the extra workload and complexity that result from the flattening process. For example, an organization may have more than one definition of its key accounting flexfield to support different requirements for accounting reporting. A US Accounting Flexfield structure may have a segment called Subaccount to track project expenditures. The same type of information may be tracked in a UK accounting flexfield structure with a segment called Project. Equalize these two segments to create a single list of values for reporting.

Non-labeled segments aren't equalized across context values, so the flattened components include a separate attribute for each segment for each structure. It may not be possible to equalize similarly labeled segments if they have incompatible data types or value set types.

Assign a label to a segment to map the corresponding attribute in the flattened components to a logical object in Oracle Business Intelligence. Using labels to map segments to BI logical objects minimizes the steps for importing the flexfield into Oracle Business Intelligence. Assigning a label to a segment serves to equalize the attribute across structures, as well as map the equalized attribute to business intelligence.

Managing Labels

You may assign a predefined label (if available) to segments or create labels for assignment, as needed. Specify a code, name, and description to identify each label. In the BI Object Name field, enter the name of the logical object in Oracle Business Intelligence to which the segment label should map during import. Specifying the BI logical object minimizes the steps for importing the flexfield into Oracle Business Intelligence and helps to equalize context-sensitive segments across structures.

If no labels are assigned to a BI-enabled segment, or the BI Object Name on the assigned label doesn't exist in business intelligence, you must manually map the segment to the required logical object when importing into Oracle Business Intelligence. In addition, segments without labels cannot be equalized across structures. The flattened components include a separate attribute for each non-labeled segment in each structure.

Importing to Oracle Business Intelligence Repository

After you deploy a business intelligence-enabled flexfield, import the flexfield changes into the Oracle Business Intelligence repository to make use of the newly flattened business components in business intelligence. Then propagate the flexfield object changes. When you import the metadata into the Oracle Business Intelligence repository, you must do so as the FUSION_APPS_BI_APPID user.

To import flexfield changes into the Oracle Business Intelligence repository in Oracle Cloud implementations, run the Import Oracle Fusion Data Extensions for Transactional Business Intelligence process. For additional information about import, refer to the Oracle Transactional Business Intelligence Administrator's Guide.



Note: When you import a flexfield into the Oracle Business Intelligence repository, you see both <name>_ and <name>_ attributes for each segment, along with some other optional attributes. The <name>_ attribute contains the value. The <name>_ attribute contains the code of the value set that the value comes from, and is used for linking to the value dimension. You must import both attributes.

Key Flexfields: Example

A key flexfield can capture expense account information.

Scenario

When entering details for each expense, the user specifies an account to which the expense is charged.

Entering Expense Accounts

A user interface for entering expenses gives the user the option of selecting an expense account that identifies the cost center and other details needed for processing the expense.

Analysis

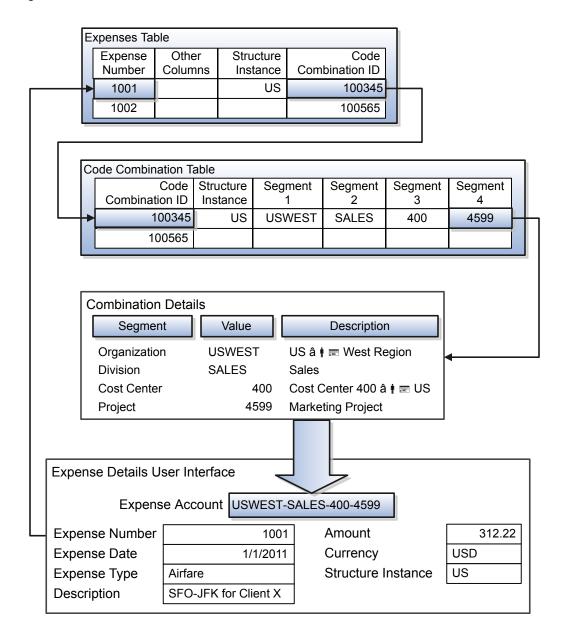
The expense account field is a foreign key reference to a code combination (EXPENSE_LINES.EXPENSE_ACCOUNT = ACCOUNTS.CCID).

Code Combinations Table for Entering Accounts and Employees

The code combinations table supports entering account information, such as for expense accounts.



The figure shows the origin in the code combinations table of the account specified by the user. The code combination ID record stores the information of the key flexfield segments used to assemble the expense account based on the key flexfield configuration.



The combinations page, which is the maintenance page for the key flexfield, is for managing rows in the combinations table. In this example, managing the combinations means adding or editing account numbers that adhere to the key flexfield metadata rules.

The figure shows the code combination details for the example expense account reflected in the flexfield configuration and the code combinations table.



100565

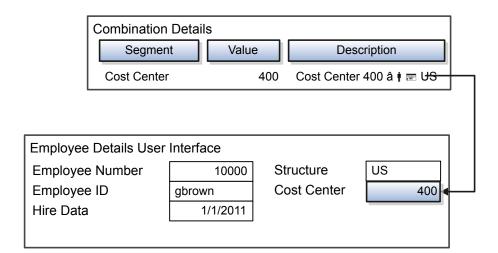
If dynamic combination creation isn't enabled, then when entering an expense line, the user can only select an account that already exists in the ACCOUNTS (combinations) table. If they require an account that doesn't exist, they must consult with the appropriate application administrator who can add the account to the combinations table.

If dynamic combination creation is enabled, then when entering an expense line, the user can either select a pre-existing account, or type in a new account that is created dynamically on the fly in the ACCOUNTS (combinations) table. Once the new combination is created, the same user can refer to it on the expense line.

When managing employee information, the user specifies the cost center that the employee belongs to. The cost center field corresponds to a single, labeled segment of the Account Key Flexfield and has metadata defined such as the allowable value set for that segment.

In this figure, instead of specifying a cost center ID reference to an account, only the Cost Center segment is used and the value is stored directly on the employee table.





Related Topics

• Creating One Chart of Accounts Structure with Many Instances: Example

Define Attachments

Attachments: Explained

You can use attachments to provide supplementary information to specific business objects. Attachments can be URLs, desktop files, text, or repository folders. For a business object you may view, create, delete, or edit attachments, depending on your role and granted privileges. For more information on attachments, see the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer's Guide.

Repository

Attachments are stored in a content management repository provided by Oracle WebCenter Content Server. Users managing attachments can't interact with the repository unless the repository mode is enabled. When enabled, users can share attachments among objects, update attachments, and perform other tasks. Access to the attachment files is controlled by a digital signing mechanism.

Security

Data security applicable to a specific business object extends to its attachments For example, if a user has no access to a specific expense report, then that user cannot access its attachments. You can also use attachment categories to control access and actions on attachments, based on roles associated with that category. For more information on securing attachments, see the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer's Guide.



Attachment Entities: Explained

An attachment entity is usually a database entity, for example a table or view, that represents a business object with which attachments can be associated. Each attachment UI must be defined with a corresponding attachment entity. Attachment entities are used only in the context of attachments and exist separately from the database entities that they are based on.

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, search for the Manage Attachment Entities task. Use the Manage Attachment Entities page to edit and create attachment entities. You can either use the predefined attachment entities with attachment Uls or create entities, for example when developing custom Uls.

The entity name should match the name of the table or view that represents the business object used for attachment. The name is also used in the repository folder that is automatically created to store attachments for the entity.

The data security policies associated with the database resource defined for the attachment entity apply to attachments for that entity. However, the security setting must be enabled for that entity. The database resource value must match the value in the OBJ_NAME column in the FND_OBJECTS table for the business object that the entity represents.

Related Topics

- Modules in Application Taxonomy: Explained
- Database Resources and Data Security Policies: How They Work Together

Attachment Entities and Attachment Categories: How They Work Together

The association between attachment entities and categories determines the use of categories for an entity. For example, categories associated with the expense report attachment entity are available in the attachment UIs for expense reports. You can configure the associations when managing either entities or categories. Between the Manage Attachment Entities and Manage Attachment Categories pages, any change in association on one page automatically reflects on the other page. You can open either page by starting in the Setup and Maintenance work area and searching for the attachment tasks.

Managing Entities

On the Manage Attachment Entities page, you determine which attachment categories are relevant to a particular entity. Each entity must have at least one category. For a particular expense report page with attachments functionality, you can specify which category to use for the attachment. Accordingly, the data security defined for each category is applied to the attachments on that page if security is enabled.

Managing Categories

If you create an attachment category and must assign it to multiple attachment entities, use the Manage Attachment Categories page. The association is the same as that on the Manage Attachment Entities page.

Attachments Troubleshooting: Explained

Attachments UIs are very user-friendly and easy to work with. You may encounter issues in certain cases such as you customize the attachments, for example create additional attachment categories, or implement data security on them.



Issue: Can't View, Add, Update, or Delete Attachments

You may encounter the following issues when trying to view attachments or perform actions such as adding attachments.

- You can no longer see specific attachments that were earlier visible.
- You can no longer update or delete attachments.
- You get an error stating that you do not have permission to add attachments.

Resolution

Use the Manage Attachment Entities page to ensure that attachment categories are associated to the relevant attachment entity. You might need to check with your system administrator or help desk to determine the exact entity used on the page with the expenses attachments or what categories to assign.

If data security is implemented on the categories for the attachment entity, verify that the Enable Security check box is selected in the Manage Attachment Entities page for that entity. Make sure that users have a role with the privileges shown in the following table, to view, add, update, or delete attachments with a specific attachment category.

Action	Privilege
View	Read Application Attachment (FND_ READ_ APPLICATION_ ATTACHMENT_ DATA)
Add or Update	Update Application Attachment (FND_ UPDATE_ APPLICATION_ ATTACHMENT_ DATA)
Delete	Delete Application Attachment (FND_ DELETE_ APPLICATION_ ATTACHMENT_ DATA)

For example, if users have the Read Application Attachment privilege for all categories associated with the expense report attachment entity, except the Receipts attachment category, then they can view all expense report attachments except those created with the Receipts category. Likewise, if users do not have the Update Application Attachment privilege for any attachment categories tied to the expense report attachment entity, then they cannot create any attachments for the expense reports.

For more information on attachment category data security, see the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer's Guide.

Certain attachments UI have predefined restrictions for users on categories. Your developers can also introduce additional filters to determine which document categories are available for a specific page. Check with your developers or help desk.

Issue: Missing Attachment Category

You can view existing attachments but the attachments no longer have an attachment category associated with them.

Resolution

When the attachment was added, at least one category existed for the corresponding attachment entity. Since then, the entity was edited so that it no longer has any assigned categories, so the user cannot see the category associated with that attachment.

Use the Manage Attachment Entities page to reassign attachment categories to the relevant attachment entity. For example, if users can no longer see the Receipts attachment category for an attachment to an expense report, then search for the expense report attachment entity and assign to it the Receipts category. You may need to check with your system administrator or help desk to determine the exact entity used on the page with the expenses attachments or any additional categories to assign.



Certain attachments UI have predefined restrictions for users on categories. Your developers can also introduce additional filters to determine which document categories are available for a specific page. Check with your developers or help desk.

FAQs for Define Attachments

What's an attachment category?

You must use an attachment category to classify and secure an attachment. While adding attachments, you can view the available attachment categories and add the attachment to one of them. For example, attachments for an expense report can be categorized as receipts, scanned invoice images, and so on.

You can also associate roles with categories to restrict user access and actions for an attachment entity. You can also create and manage custom categories for your own purpose, involving specific attachments with specific security requirements. For more information on attachment category data security, see the Oracle Fusion Applications Developer's Guide.

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, search for the Manage Attachment Categories task and access the Manage Attachment Categories page.

Related Topics

Modules in Application Taxonomy: Explained





15 Define Collaboration Messaging

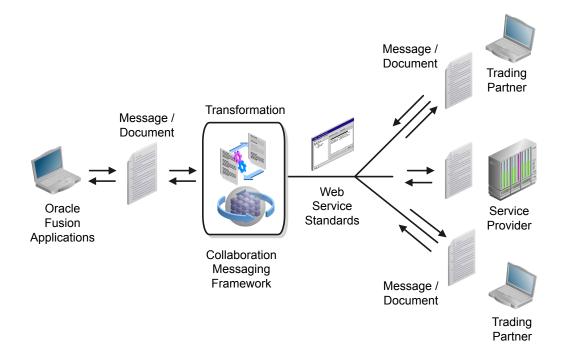
Using Collaboration Messaging: Overview

Use Oracle Fusion Collaboration Messaging Framework to enable Oracle Fusion applications establish business-to-business (B2B) messaging exchanging capabilities with trading partners.

Using this framework, you can send and receive real-time transactional messages without building new SOA components. You can leverage the existing B2B functionality to exchange messages with collaborators such as suppliers either directly or using an intermediary agency such as a B2B Service Provider.

The framework supports transformation of a B2B document, such as a purchase order, between the Oracle Fusion Applications format and an external message format supported by the trading partner. When you send messages to partners or receive messages from them, the framework performs the required transformation.

The following figure illustrates how Collaboration Messaging Framework delivers a message to the intended recipient.



Using collaboration messaging involves performing the following high-level tasks:

- Setting up external (B2B) trading partners and their messaging capabilities.
- Cross-referencing the Oracle Fusion applications definition of a trading partner (such as a supplier) with the external trading partner definition set up earlier. Also, selecting the messages that must be enabled with the partner.
- Configuring the message delivery method for the partner.

To open the Collaboration Messaging Framework Overview page, click the Navigator menu and select **Collaboration Messaging**.



Use the Collaboration Messaging Framework Overview page to:

- Manage undelivered collaboration messages
- Reprocess failed collaboration messages
- Manage collaboration messaging history
- Validate inbound and outbound collaboration messaging setup

Reprocessing Undelivered Messages: Procedure

Any inbound or outbound message that isn't processed because of some error, remains undelivered. You can view the undelivered messages on the Collaboration Messaging Framework Overview page. For each undelivered message, you can diagnose the errors, take corrective action, and resubmit a request to deliver it again.

To reprocess an undelivered messages:

- On the Collaboration Messaging Framework Overview page, click the tasks icon to view the tasks, and select the Manage Undelivered Collaboration Messages task.
- 2. On the Manage Undelivered Collaboration Messages page, search for the undelivered message. The message is listed in a table.
- 3. Click the message row to view the reason for delivery failure. The details appear under Processing History.
 - **Tip:** Click the message ID link to view the setup details of the message.
- 4. Take the required corrective action and return to the Collaboration Messaging Framework Overview page.
- **5.** Select the specific message and click **Reprocess**. If there are no further problems, the message is submitted for delivery.

Process Inbound Collaboration Messages

Validating Inbound Collaboration Messaging: Procedure

After you set up an application partner, such as a supplier site, you can send a test inbound message to verify if the setup is appropriate for messaging. Use the Validate Inbound Collaboration Messaging Setup task on the Collaboration Messaging Overview page to validate an inbound message.

All messages that go through the validation process queue up and appear on the Collaboration Messaging History page. There you can examine the details of each processed message to check if it was transformed and processed as intended.

- 1. On the Overview page, click the tasks icon to view the tasks, and select the **Validate Inbound Collaboration Messaging Setup** task.
- 2. Select the service provider and the partner ID from whom you expect to receive the collaboration message.
- 3. Enter the external message ID.
- **4.** Select the details pertaining to the External Message Type. The related details, such as document type and messaging standard, appear.
- 5. Click Create Message Payload. The message payload is generated in XML format and appears in the text box.
- 6. Update the generated payload or replace it with the XML payload that you want to test.



7. Examine the elements of the message payload. The following table contains an example of the mapping between the elements and actual data.

XML Element	Corresponding Information
<sender></sender>	The ID of the partner who sent the document.
<intermediary></intermediary>	Contains the ID of the service provider.
<receiver></receiver>	Contains the ID of the recipient.
<bodid></bodid>	An ID that the sender assigns to the message.

- 8. Click **Process**. The Processing Confirmation message appears.
- 9. Click View Collaboration Message to view the processed message.
- 10. Click Done.

To view the processed message again, search for it on the Manage Collaboration Messaging History page. In the search results, click the generated message ID to view its details.

▼ Tip: If the message processing fails, you can view the reason for it on the Manage Failed Collaboration Messages page.

Process Outbound Collaboration Messages

Validating Outbound Collaboration Messaging: Procedure

After you set up an application partner, such as a supplier site, you can send a test outbound message to verify if the setup is appropriate for messaging. Use the **Validate Outbound Collaboration Messaging Setup** task on the Collaboration Messaging Framework Overview page to validate an outbound collaboration message.

All messages that go through the validation process queue up and appear on the Collaboration Messaging History page. There you can examine the details of each processed message to check if it was transformed and processed as intended.

- 1. On the Collaboration Messaging Framework Overview page, click the tasks icon to view the tasks, and select the **Validate Outbound Collaboration Messaging Setup** task.
- 2. On the Validate Outbound Collaboration Messaging Setup page, select the relevant document. The related details appear.
- 3. Select the supplier. The related details, such as the supplier site and service provider appear.
- 4. Click Create Message Payload. The message payload is generated in XML format and appears in the text box.
- 5. Update the generated payload or replace it with the XML payload that you want to test.
- 6. Click **Process**. The generated message ID appears on the page.
- 7. Click **View Collaboration Message** to view the processed message.
- 8. Click Done.

To view the processed message again, search for it on the **Manage Collaboration Messaging History** page. In the search results, click the message ID to view its details.



▼ Tip: If the message processing fails, you can view the reason for it on the Manage Failed Collaboration Messages page.

Manage Collaboration Messages

Creating a Trading Partner with a Service Provider: Procedure

A service provider is an intermediary for exchanging messages between Oracle Fusion applications and trading partner. Whenever you set up a trading partner, you can link it with a service provider.

- Note: You must be signed in as a supplier and must have access to the Supplier task.
- 1. On the Supplier Overview page, navigate to the Supplier Business Classifications section and click the supplier.
- 2. On the Edit Supplier page, switch to the Sites tab and click the required site.
- 3. On the Edit Site page, select Collaboration Messaging Framework as the channel for B2B Communication.
- 4. Under Associated Collaboration Documents, click Manage Trading Partners.
- 5. On the Manage Trading Partners dialog box, click Create Create Trading Partner with Service Provider.
- 6. On the Create Trading Partner dialog box, fill the required details.
- 7. Click **Actions Add Row** and fill the details to associate collaboration documents with the trading partner. You may add multiple documents.
 - Note: To enable exchange of messages, you must set the collaboration document status to Active.
- 8. Click Save and Close.
- 9. On the Manage Trading Partners dialog box, click **OK**.
- 10. On the Edit Site page, click Save and Close.
- 11. On the Edit Supplier page, click **Save and Close**.

To update the details for a trading partner, use the edit option on the Manage Trading Partners dialog box.

Creating a Trading Partner without a Service Provider: Procedure

You can exchange messages with a trading partner directly, without using a service provider.

- Note: You must be signed in as a supplier and must have access to the Supplier task.
- 1. On the Supplier Overview page, navigate to the Supplier Business Classifications section and click the supplier.
- 2. On the Edit Supplier page, switch to the Sites tab and click the required site.
- 3. On the Edit Site page, select Collaboration Messaging Framework as the channel for B2B Communication.
- 4. Under Associated Collaboration Documents, click Manage Trading Partners.
- 5. On the Manage Trading Partners dialog box, click Create Create Trading Partner without Service Provider.
- 6. On the Create Trading Partner dialog box, fill the required details.



- Note: By default, the Service Provider is set to None because this setup doesn't involve a service provider.
- Click Actions Add Row and fill the delivery method, outbound collaboration message, and inbound collaboration message details on the respective tabs.
 - Note: The following table contains some tips on filling the important information on each tab.

Tab	Details
Delivery Methods	o Provide the Certificate Alias Name associated with the security policy
	Provide the endpoint URL and the associated authentication credentials to initiate the collaboration messaging web service. It must be in the format http:// <server>:<port>/ <context>, where <context> contains the name of the web service as defined in the application.</context></context></port></server>
Outbound Collaboration Messages	 Specify a unique name and select the collaboration message. The associated details automatically appear in the row.
	Select a delivery method.
	 Set the outbound collaboration document status to Active.
Inbound Collaboration Messages	 Specify a unique name and select the collaboration message. The associated details automatically appear in the row.
	Select a delivery method.
	 Set the inbound collaboration document status to Active.
	 Specify an XPath that identifies the application partner in the inbound collaboration document.

- 8. Click Save and Close.
- 9. On the Manage Trading Partners dialog box, click **OK**.
- 10. On the Edit Site page, click **Save and Close**.
- **11.** On the Edit Supplier page, click **Save and Close**.

To update the details for a trading partner, use the edit option on the Manage Trading Partners dialog box.

Managing Associated Collaboration Documents: Procedure

To set up collaboration messaging, you must associate the supplier site with a trading partner, and select the documents you want to exchange with that partner. The documents that you set up here are associated with trading partners or the service providers of those trading partners.

- Note: You must be signed in as a supplier and must have access to the Supplier task.
- 1. On the Supplier Overview page, navigate to the Supplier Business Classifications section and click the supplier link.
- 2. On the Edit Supplier page, switch to the Sites tab and click the required site.
- 3. On the Edit Site page, select Collaboration Messaging Framework as the channel for B2B Communication.
- 4. Under Associated Collaboration Documents, click Edit.
- 5. On the Edit Associated Collaboration Documents dialog box, click **Add Row** and fill the details required to set up the document. The read-only particulars appear based on the selected details.



- Define Collaboration Messaging
- 6. Click **Save** and repeat the steps to add more documents or click **Save and Close** to return to the previous page.
- 7. On the Edit Site page, click Save and Close.
- 8. On the Edit Supplier page, click **Save and Close**.

Configuring Collaboration Messaging for a Customer: Procedure

Using this task, you can associate a customer account with an existing trading partner and select the collaboration messaging documents to be exchanged with the customer.

To configure collaboration messaging for a customer:

- On the Collaboration Messaging Overview page, click the Tasks icon, and select the Manage Customer Collaboration Configuration task.
- 2. Search for the customer account, select the row, and click Edit Collaboration Configuration.
- Under Associated Service Providers, click Actions Add Row and fill the details of the service provider and the trading partner.
- 4. Click **Actions Add Row** and select at least one collaboration document.
- 5. Set the **Association Status** to Active to enable messaging with the selected service provider.
- 6. Click Save and Close.

FAQs for Define Collaboration Messaging

What are the different undelivered collaboration message error statuses?

The following table describes the main differences among the various error statuses.

Error	B2B Error	Hold
Indicates that the messages haven't been delivered because of a validation, configuration, or processing error in Collaboration Messaging Framework.	Indicates that the B2B component of the SOA suite couldn't deliver the message because of a configuration or processing error.	Indicates that messages haven't been processed because an administrator has put them on hold.



What are the different undelivered collaboration message error types?

The following table describes the main differences among the message error types.

Document Retrieval Error	Inbound Processing Error	Outbound Processing Error
Occurs when the collaboration messaging framework fails to retrieve the document associated with a collaboration event.	Occurs when the collaboration messaging framework can't process inbound messages because of setup or business rule validation issues.	Occurs when the collaboration messaging framework can't process outbound messages because of setup or business rule validation issues.

What happens if I don't enable a document type for storage?

If you don't enable a document type for storage, the message processing and delivery details of such documents aren't stored in the log table.

Why did my message fail?

To know the cause of a message failure, search for the failed message on the Manage Failed Collaboration Messages page. When you click the message row, the cause of the failure appears under Processing History.





16 **Define Carriers**

Shipping Methods: Explained

A shipping method is defined for every carrier. You must define and activate a shipping method after creating a carrier. After a shipping method is created, it is assigned to one or more organizations. The organization can then use the carrier and shipping method combination to deliver shipments to and from its warehouses. The active status of the shipping method indicates that it is in use by the selected carrier in all assigned organizations.

You can define a shipping method by selecting the following:

- Service Level
- Mode of Transport

Service Level

Service Level is the priority of transportation that affects how quickly goods are transported. For example, Next day, Overnight, Express, Door to Door.

Mode of Transport

Mode of transport refers to the means used to deliver shipments to the customer. For example, Rail, Air, Road.

Inbound Tracking Rules: Explained

Inbound tracking rules enable you to view the status of your shipments through the use of your carrier's Web site. When you click on a tracking number, you are directed to the carrier's Web site to view the tracking details associated with that shipment.

The following aspect of Inbound tracking rules can assist you in viewing shipment information:

Associating the carrier and the carrier's Web site

Associating the carrier and the carrier's Web site

Associating the carrier and carrier's Web site enables you to track your shipments by viewing all of the current tracking numbers for a given carrier and shipment.

Creating Tracking Rules: Points to Consider

Tracking rules enable you to configure the carrier's Web site within the application. After you configure the carrier's Web site, you will be able to view the tracking information via the carrier's Web site when you select a tracking number.



Before creating tracking rules consider:

- What base URL to enter?
- Which request method to select?
- What parameters to select?

Base URL

You must contact your carrier to obtain the Web site URL used to track shipments.

Request Method

You must contact your carrier to determine the request method to be selected; GET or POST. You can use the GET method if the parameters can be shown in the URL. You can use the POST method if the parameters are processed in the back end.

Parameters

You must contact your carrier to determine the parameters for the carrier. Consider if you require any constant value for the carrier's Web site for tracking shipments. Consider the most frequently used search value while tracking a shipment in the carrier's Web site. For example, if you frequently track shipments using the tracking number, then tracking number should be your lookup parameter.



17 Define Transit Times

Transit Time: Explained

You can define the shipping method and transit time required for a shipment to be transported from a point of origin to a destination. This enables you to effectively calculate the initial ship date of the shipment in order for it to arrive at the destination on the planned delivery date. For example, you define an origin to destination combination from Florida to London. Next, you assign the shipping method, Air, to it and define a transit time of 3 days. When you receive an order with a requested delivery date of July 3, 2011 for destination London, the transit time you defined earlier helps you determine the initial ship date. The initial ship date is date by when the shipment should be shipped from your warehouse in Florida in order for it to reach the customer on the planned arrival date of July 3, 2011. In this case, the initial ship date is calculated as being 3 days prior to the requested delivery date on July 1, 2011. Shipping costs are applied based on the shipping method used.

The following aspects can assist you in creating transit time records for future use:

- Origin and destination combination
- Shipping method assignment
- Transit Time web service

Origin and Destination Combination

Defining an origin and destination combination enables you to create a shipping lane between locations where you deliver shipments. These locations can be of types Internal location, External location, Geography, and Zone. A few examples of the location types are, Internal Location: Warehouse, External Location: Customer site, Geography: place or country such as California or American Samoa, and Zone: a grouping of geographies such as the Asia Pacific.

Note: You cannot delete a transit time record for an origin and destination combination if an open shipment exists for the same combination.

Shipping Method Assignment

You must assign a shipping method to a specific origin and destination combination. For example, Express by Air. You can assign more than one shipping method to an origin and destination combination.

After you assign the shipping method, you can specify the transit time in number of days required to transport goods between the defined origin and destination using that specific shipping method. This enables you to calculate the initial ship date for shipments when you receive an order.

Additionally, you can choose to specify the maximum weight and volume capacity that can be transported daily using the assigned shipping method. You can also assign the cost per unit and the currency in which the cost is calculated. This will further assist you in planning the delivery of shipments by the requested delivery date.

Transit Time Web Service

You can also define and bulk upload transit times quicker using the Transit Time web service. For example, you can create and upload transit time records from all inventory organizations to all regions with multiple shipping methods for each origin and destination combination.



Origin Type and Destination Type: Points to Consider

After you specify an origin and destination location, you can define the transit times by shipping methods. For example, you can ship goods from origin A to Destination B via Truck, Rail, and Air. You can define the transit time by shipping method, such as:

- Truck- 5 days
- Rail- 2 days
- Air- 1 day

When an order is placed for delivery from origin A to destination B, the customer also specifies the date on which the goods are required to reach the destination. This date becomes the planned delivery date. After the shipping method is determined based on transportation costs, the specified transit times is used to calculate the date on which the shipment should be shipped from origin A in order for it to reach destination B by the planned delivery date.

Before selecting the origin and destination types consider:

• What is the ship-from organization and ship-to location?

Origin and Destination Types and Locations

You must determine the point of origin and the destination and then select the origin type and destination type. The four origin and destination types are Internal Location, External Location, Geography, and Zone. The origin and destination locations will appear based on what you select as origin and destination types. For example, the location types can be, Internal Location: Warehouse, External Location: Customer site, Geography: region or country such as American Samoa or Canada, and Zone: a grouping of geographies such as Asia Pacific. After you specify the origin and destination combination, you can add multiple shipping methods and transit times at a later point in time. This also allows you to offer a range of shipping methods and time choices to your customer.



18 **Define Items**

Define Items: Overview

Before you can define items in Oracle Fusion Product Hub, you must complete several tasks in the Setup and Maintenance work area:

Task	Description	
Manage Item Profile Options	Profile options manage configuration data centrally and influence the behavior of applications.	
Manage Advanced Item Profile Options	This task is used by Product Hub. If you do not install Product Hub, you do not need to define these options.	
Define Units of Measure	Units of Measure must be created before you can create or import items.	
Manage Lifecycle Phases	Item Lifecycle Phases are used as an indicator of the stage for an item within the lifecycle process. Each phase represents a set of tasks and deliverables that are required before promoting an item to the next phase.	
Manage Product and Child Value Sets	In Product Hub, value sets are primarily used to define attributes that have a specific set of values. Each value set is associated with one or more attributes in the same attribute group or in a different attribute group.	
Manage Attachment Categories for Product Management	Used to create attachment categories and associate them with item classes.	
Manage Operational Attribute Groups	Operational attributes determine the behavior of the item with respect to various applications outside of Product Hub, such as Oracle Fusion Purchasing or Oracle Fusion Inventory.	
Manage Item Attribute Groups and Attributes	Used to determines how the attributes appear in the user interface, as well as how they are used in the application.	
Manage Item Classes	Item classes are created at the root item class or under the parent item class and inherit values based on selections made when defining the item class.	
	For Product Hub customers, the Manage Item Classes task is used to create and manage item classes, user defined attributes and data security.	
Manage Item Class Descriptive Flexfields	Descriptive flexfields (DFF) appear in the user interface as Additional Information and can also appear in search results tables.	
Deploy Item Extensible Flexfields	After you associate attribute groups and pages with an item class, you must deploy flexfields to view the pages or attribute groups at run time. The metadata that was created for the attribute group is not synchronized with the production data in Product Hub until the flexfield is deployed.	
Manage Item Statuses	Item statuses are used to define the state an item is in and based on the state, the default values for item operational attributes.	



Task	Description	
Manage Item Types	Item types are date effective and are made active or inactive by adjusting the start and end dates.	
Manage Cross Reference Types	Cross-References provide the functionality to map additional information about an item in the form of a value and cross-reference type. For example, the cross-reference can map a relationship between an item and an old part number.	
Manage Item Descriptive Flexfields	Used to define descriptive flexfields that are specific to items.	
Download Import Template	Each template includes table-specific instructions, guidelines, formatted spreadsheets, and best practices for preparing the data file for upload.	
Upload Item Data	After you have created the CSV file, the next step in the Import process will upload the CSV Zip file to the designated location within the Oracle Universal Content Management system.	
Load Interface File through Scheduled Process	Once the CSV file is uploaded to UCM, you use the Load Interface File for Import scheduled process to move the data from the UCM folder to the interface tables.	
Import Items	The Item Import task creates an Enterprise Scheduled Service (ESS) process that takes the data that is loaded in the interface tables and uses the import process to move the data to the production tables.	
Monitor Item Imports	Use this task to monitor the ESS process status in the search results table	
Manage Related Item Subtypes	A related item is an item relationship between two existing items. How the two items are related is defined by a subtype.	
Manage Item Revision Descriptive Flexfields	Use descriptive flexfields associated at Item Revision level to capture item revision information whose values may differ between revisions of the same item.	
Manage Item Relationship Descriptive Flexfields	Item types are date effective and are made active or inactive by adjusting the Start Date and End Date.	
Manage Trading Partner Item Descriptive Flexfields	When defining descriptive flexfields associated with trading partner items, you must use certain prefixes when naming the context segments, in order for the segments to be displayed for the respective trading partner type.	
Define Item-Specific UOM Conversions	After you define units of measure, define the conversions used for items.	

Item Statuses: Explained

In the Item Status table, select a status code to display the associated attribute groups and attributes as well as control information.



Item statuses are used to define the state an item is in and based on the state, the default values for item operational attributes.

Item statuses are seeded; the values are **Active** and **Inactive**. You can create, edit or delete item statuses on the Manage Item Statuses page.

Operational attribute groups and attributes corresponding to the selected item status are displayed in the **Details** section.

Whenever the status is applied to the item, the value of the attribute may change. Select the usage that corresponds to how the attribute value will change based on the item status value:

- Defaulted Allows you to override the value during the import and update of an item.
- Inherited Sets the values of the item status attributes when the status value changes. You cannot override the
 value
- None -The item status attribute values will not be changed.

Any change made to an item status is not applied automatically to existing items. The change will be applied when the item status value is changed while editing an item.

Status attributes for each item status control the actions that you can perform on the item. Some of the status attributes are: Build In WIP, Customer Orders Enabled and Internal Orders Enabled.

The **Controlled at** field is not editable and is populated from the value set on the Manage Attribute Groups page.

Cross-Reference Types: Explained

Cross-references provide the functionality to map additional information about an item in the form of a value and cross-reference type. For example, the cross-reference can map between an item and an old part number, where the value is the value for the old part number and the type is Old Part Number. Cross-reference types are part of item relationships where the item relationship type is cross-reference. There are no values seeded for cross-reference types. You define the values using the **Manage Cross Reference Types** task. Cross-reference types are date-enabled and can be made active or inactive by adjusting the values of the start date and end date. To use the item relationship for cross-reference, you must enable cross-reference types by checking the **Enable** check box.

Product Value Sets: Explained

Value sets are specific to the application in which they will be used. In Product Hub, value sets are primarily used to define attributes that have a specific set of values. Each value set is associated with one or more attributes in the same attribute group or in a different attribute group.

Value sets can be edited or new value sets can be created from the Manage Product Value Sets page. The Edit icon launches the Edit Value Sets page, which redraws in the same region of the local area. The Create icon launches the Create Value Sets page, which redraws in the same region of the local area.

The validation type determines how the value of field is validated for the assigned value set. The following are the seeded values:

- Format Only
- Independent



- Dependent
- Subset
- Table

The value data type determines the data type for the value set. The following are the seeded values:

- Character
- Number
- Date
- Date/Time

Product Child Value Sets: Explained

The Manage Product Child Value Sets task uses the same page as the Manage Product Value Set task.

A child value set is used to define variants for stock-keeping units or SKUs. A SKU contains the common properties for an item. For example, a shirt can be produced with colors; white, red, yellow, and blue. The variant is used to represent the colors of the shirt.

You define child value sets as follows:

- Create a value set with validation type of independent, for example All Colors.
- Select the new value set in the Manage Product Value Sets results table, for example All Colors.
- Click Manage Values, create several values, for example Blue, Red, Green, Yellow, and Black.
- Create a value set with validation type of Subset and enter the first value set you created for the independent value set, for example: Summer Colors.
- Select the value set Summer Colors in the Manage Product Value Set result table.
- Click **Manage Values** and then click the **Add** icon. The dialog will show a list of values based on the value set named Summer colors. Select two of them. The value set Summer Colors is a child of All Colors.

The value set Summer Colors is a child of All Colors.

Default Item Class: Explained

For non-Product Hub customers, the Manage Default Item Class task (in the Setup and Maintenance work area under the Product Management offering) is used, since these customers cannot create additional item classes nor can they create user defined attributes such as EFFs. The Manage Default Item Class task launches an edit page for the Root Item Class.

The Manage Default Item Class task has three tabs:

- Basic: Item Class descriptive flexfields and attachment categories are defined on this tab.
- Item Management: Item number generation method is defined using this tab.
- Lifecycle Phases: The lifecycle phases that the items assigned to this item class will use are defined on this tab.
- Item Templates: The item templates that are used to create items are defined on this tab.



Item Profile Options: Explained

Profile options manage configuration data centrally and influence the behavior of applications.

The profile options have a default value, which can be used for initial installations. These profile options should be evaluated to determine if additional values should be set:

- EGP DISPLAY IMAGES: Specify if images should be displayed in the search results table in the Manage Items task.
- EGP_ITEM_IMPORT_ITEMS_PER_THREAD: During item import, multiple threads of operation are created to process the items being imported. This profile option controls how many items are processed per each thread. It is a technical option used to optimize item import performance. The default value is 100.
- EGP_ITEM_IMPORT_NUMBER_OF THREADS: This option works in conjunction with the EGP_ITEM_IMPORT_ITEMS_PER_THRESD option. It controls how many threads of operations are created during the item import process. The default is 4.
- EGP_UPDATEABLE_ITEM: By default, the item number can't be changed after the item has been created. It can be updated after creation only if this option is set to Yes.

Import Items: Explained

Item Management provides the ability to create and management item data through two methods: the Product Information Management work area and a process to import Items from files located in a specific folder in Oracle Universal Content Management system.

The objects listed below are supported through both methods:

- Items
- Item Revisions
- Item Category Assignments
- Item Associations*
- Item Relationships
- Item Extensible Flexfields *
- Item Translatable Extensible Flexfields*
- Item Revision Extensible Flexfields*
- Item Revision Translatable Extensible Flexfields*
- Item Supplier Extensible Flexfields*
- Item Translatable Supplier Extensible Flexfields*
- Item Style Variant Attribute Value Sets
- Trading Partner Items

Note: You must license Oracle Fusion Product Hub to use Extensible Flexfields.

The following is an overview of the item import process:

1. Download import template.



- 2. Enter data in tabs within the ItemImportTemplate.xsIm template file.
- 3. Generate CSV (zip file).
- 4. Upload to Oracle Universal Content Management.
- 5. Move the data into Item Management interface tables.
- 6. Import data to Item Management product tables.

Related Topics

- Generate the CSV File: Explained
- · Upload to the Universal Content Manager: Explained
- Import Data from the Item Management Interface Tables: Explained

Lifecycle Phases: Explained

Item Lifecycle Phases are used as an indicator of the stage for an item within the lifecycle process. Each phase represents a set of tasks and deliverables that are required before promoting an item to the next phase.

Each item must have a lifecycle phase associated with it.

Four lifecycle phase types are predefined in the application: Design, Preproduction or Prototype, Production and Obsolete. You can use the predefined phase types to create new values for the lifecycle phases.

Companies may use different terms to describe the same item lifecycle phase. For example, the phases named Production and In Manufacturing both refer to the lifecycle phase during which an item can be used to build and ship products.

Lifecycle phases are associated with item classes, and the items in an item class can be assigned to any of the lifecycle phases associated with that item class.

Before you can create or import items, you must create lifecycle phases and those must be assigned to the item class used to create the items or to a parent item class of the item class used to create the item. When an item is assigned to a lifecycle phase, that phase is visible as part of the item's attributes. In item structures, lifecycle phases are used to control specific processes.

Item Classes: Explained

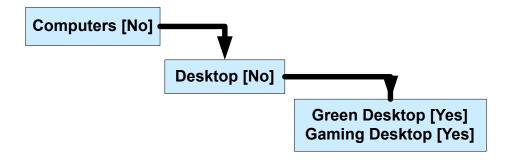
Item classes are created at the root item class or under the parent item class and inherit values based on selections made when defining the item class.

The Manage Item Classes task is used to create and manage item classes, user defined attributes and data security.

Item classes can be defined in a hierarchy where the child levels indicate sub levels or types of the parent item class. All items are created within an item class. The item class hierarchy can be used to control processes for some levels of the hierarchy.



Item classes can be used for classification purposes and in some case, item creation may not be allowed. By optionally setting the **Item Creation Allowed** attribute to No, item creation under an item class can be prevented. However, a child item class of such an item class may be allowed for item creation. For example:



This prevents items from being created in Computers and Desktops, but allows items to be created for Green Desktops and Gaming Desktops. Optionally, specify a date on which the item class will become inactive. You cannot specify an inactive date that is later than the inactive date of an item class parent, nor can you specify an inactive date that has already passed. Also, all children of a parent item class with an inactive date should be made inactive at the same time or earlier.

Note: Oracle Fusion Product Development does not support versioning of item classes.

When setting up definition steps for a new item request at the item class, you can identify various item details as mandatory, at each step. Definition of entire entity can be made mandatory or just certain attributes. This ensures that the item information required for a downstream step is defined and available for use.

Required attributes can be inherited from parent and assignee access is validated.

You can control item creation, viewing and update access by assigning a role on the item class to a principal or group of users. Security allows a person or a group to have privileges to an item of item class in each organization. This is inherited and hence a person who has a privilege in a parent item class will automatically have the same privilege in the child item classes.

Attachment Categories: Explained

The basic tab of the Manage Item Class task is used to associate attachment categories to specific item classes.

The Attachment Categories region allows for the creation and management of attachment categories for the items created within the item class. To classify item attachments you, associate attachment categories with item classes. Associated attachment categories are inherited down through the item class hierarchy.

Related Item Subtypes: Explained

A related item is an item relationship between two existing items. How the two items are related is defined by a subtype. Multiple subtypes for related items are seeded, and you can define additional subtypes using the Manage Related Item Subtypes task.



Seeded values are:

- Accessories
- Collateral
- Complimentary
- Conflict
- Cross-Sell
- Fulfillment
- Impact
- Mandatory Change
- Merge
- Migration
- Optional Change
- Option charge
- Prerequisite
- Promotional upgrade
- Repair to
- Service
- Split
- Substitute Supersede
- Upsell
- Warranty

Operational Attributes Groups: Explained

Operational attributes determine the behavior of the item with respect to various applications outside of Product Hub, such as Oracle Fusion Purchasing or Oracle Fusion Inventory.

You choose the control level for operational attributes on the Manage Operation Attribute task in the Setup and Maintenance work area. For each listed operational attribute group, you select the control level for each of the group's attributes. You can control the operational attributes at the master organization level or at the organization level. You can define operational attributes as part of a new item request.

Some operational attributes for items are defined as key flexfields. Key flexfields allow a structured value for attribute to be captured. Key flexfields can capture a key, such as a part number, a job code, or an account code.

Examples of operational attributes with the attribute groups they belong to:

- Inventory = Shelf Life Days
- Order Management = Shippable
- Purchasing = Negotiation Required
- Receiving = Allow Substitute Receipts



Operational attributes are stored in the Items data table.

Item Attribute Groups and Attributes: Explained

Attribute groups are a logical group of attributes that are displayed in their own subregion of the user interface page at run time. Attribute groups can be either single-row or multiple-row. The selected behavior determines how the attributes appear in the user interface, as well as how they are used. Each attribute group is associated with one or more item classes.

To create an attribute group and attributes, you must use **Manage Item Attribute Groups and Attributes** task (in the Setup and Maintenance work area under the Product Management offering). Choose either single-row or multiple-row:

- **Single-row attribute group**: Contains a collection of attributes that appear as separate fields in a region named for the attribute group. For example, a single-row attribute group named Processor contains the attributes appropriate for a processor. When these attribute groups are displayed in the user interface, the attribute fields for each group are arranged compactly within a region titled with the name of the attribute group. Attributes can be multiple data types.
- Multiple-row attribute group: Attributes appear as columns in a table that represents the attribute group. Each
 row in the table is considered an attributes group. The attributes is collection of values specified by the columns in
 the table. The table appears in the user interface within a region titled with the attribute group name, such as MSRP
 Price. No other fields appear in the table. For example, a multiple-row attribute group named MSRP Price contains
 the attributes Country, MSRP, and Currency. Each row of the table describes an MSRP price, and is a value of the
 MSRP Price attribute group.

Once saved, you cannot edit the behavior of the attribute group. You will have to discard it and begin the creation of new attribute group with the correct behavior type.

Deploy Item Extensible Flexfields: Explained

After you associate attribute groups and pages with an item class, you must deploy flexfields to view the pages or attribute groups at run time. The metadata that was created for the attribute group is not synchronized with the production data in Product Hub until the flexfield is deployed.

To deploy flexfields, select the Deploy Item Extensible Flexfields task in Functional Setup Manager. All extensible flexfields for Product Hub are created within flexfield code EGO_ITEM_EFF.

The deployment process is a CPU-intensive process, and is usually run at off-hour periods. You can choose from these deployment options:

- **Deploy Flexfield**: Online incremental deployment. The deployment process begins immediately. Only the extensible flexfield setup that changed is deployed.
- **Deploy Offline**: Allows the deployment to be scheduled. The flexfields are deployed, one at a time, in the order that you deploy them to the queue. Because all Product Hub extensible flexfields use the same flexfield code, the process deploys all of the attribute groups and attributes for all of the context usages at the same time. You cannot select individual attribute groups or item classes for deployment. You should choose to deploy offline if the flexfield changes impact 30 or more item classes.
- Refresh and Deploy Offline: Use this option only if the first two options result in errors. You must log out and log
 back in to view the extensible flexfield configuration on the item.



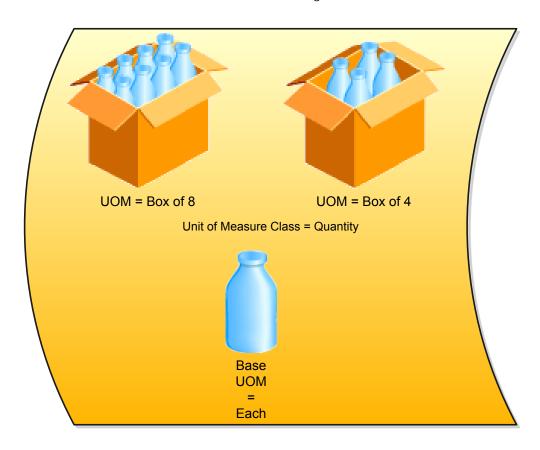


19 Define Units of Measure

Units of Measure, Unit of Measure Classes, and Base Units of Measure: How They Fit Together

Define units of measure, unit of measure classes, and base units of measure for tracking, moving, storing, and counting items.

The figure below shows that the unit of measure class named 'Quantity' contains the units of measure: Box of 8, Box of 4, and Each. The unit of measure named Each is assigned as the base unit of measure.



Unit of Measure Classes

Unit of measure classes represent groups of units of measure with similar characteristics such as area, weight, or volume.



Units of Measure

Units of measure are used by a variety of functions and transactions to express the quantity of items. Each unit of measure you define must belong to a unit of measure class.

Base Units of Measure

Each unit of measure class has a base unit of measure. The base unit of measure is used to perform conversions between units of measure in the class. The base unit of measure should be representative of the other units of measure in the class, and should generally be one of the smaller units. For example, you could use CU (cubic feet) as the base unit of measure for a unit of measure class called Volume.

Assigning Base Units of Measure to Unit of Measure Classes: Examples

Each unit of measure class must have a base unit of measure.

Scenario

This table lists examples of unit of measure classes, the units of measure in each unit of measure class, and base unit of measure. Note that each base unit of measure is the smallest unit of measure in its unit of measure class.

Unit of Measure Class	Units of Measure	Base Unit of Measure
Quantity	dozen	each
	box	
	each	
Weight	pound	gram
	kilogram	
	gram	
Time	hour	second
	minute	
	second	
Volume	cubic feet	cubic inches
	cubic centimeters	
	cubic inches	



Unit of Measure Class	Units of Measure	Base Unit of Measure

Defining Unit of Measure Standard Conversions: Examples

A unit of measure standard conversion specifies the conversion factor by which the unit of measure is equivalent to the base unit of measure.

Scenario

This table lists examples of unit of measure classes, one unit of measure included in each class, the base unit of measure for the unit of measure class, and the conversion factor defined for the unit of measure.

Unit of Measure Class	Unit of Measure	Base Unit of Measure	Conversion Factor
Quantity	dozen	each	12
			(1 dozen = 12 each)
Weight	pound	gram	454
			(1 pound = 454 grams)
Time	minute	second	60
			(1 minute = 60 seconds)

FAQs for Units of Measure

What's a unit of measure standard conversion?

A unit of measure standard conversion defines the conversion factor by which the unit of measure is equivalent to the base unit of measure that you defined for the unit of measure class. Defining a unit of measure standard conversion allows you to perform transactions in units other than the primary unit of measure of the item being transacted. The standard unit of measure conversion is used for an item if an item-specific unit of measure conversion has not been defined.



What's a UOM interclass conversion?

A UOM interclass conversion defines the conversion between the source base unit of measure ("From Base UOM") in one unit of measure class ("From Class") and the destination base unit of measure ("To Base UOM") in a different unit of measure class ("To Class").

For example, the item is gasoline. The From Base UOM (of the From Class called "volume") is liters. The To Base UOM (of the To Class called "quantity") is Barrels. The conversion is 158.76 liters (volume) to 1 barrel of oil (quantity).

What's a UOM intraclass conversion?

A UOM intraclass conversion specifies the conversion between a unit of measure (the "From UOM") and the base unit of measure of the same class.

For example, the item is soda pop. The unit of measure class is Quantity. The From UOM is Case (CS). The base unit of measure is Each (EA). The conversion is 24, to specify that 1 CS = 24 EA.



20 **Define Catalogs**

Catalogs: Overview

Before you can create catalogs and associate items with them you must complete several tasks in the Setup and Maintenance work area:

Task	Description
Manage Catalog Descriptive Flexfields (optional)	Descriptive flexfields can only have one context available at a single time.
Manage Category Descriptive Flexfields (optional)	Descriptive flexfields can only have one context available at a single time.
Create Catalog	Item catalogs provide a mechanism to classify or group a set of items together based on common meaning.
Manage Catalogs	Non-Fusion Product Hub customers use this task to manage their catalogs. Product Hub customers may use the Manage Catalogs task in the Product Information Management work area.
Manage Functional Area Catalogs	Each functional area can have a set of rules to define how a catalog should be configured to support the functional area. When a catalog is created and assigned to the functional area, it is validated against the functional area rules. For example, many of the Supply Chain Management applications participate in a process which automatically assigns an item being created to the default category in a functional catalog. Also if no catalog is assigned to the functional area, the functional area is skipped in the automatic assignment process. This task is only necessary if catalogs are to be used with other SCM products such as procurement or inventory.

Catalog Descriptive Flexfields: Explained

Descriptive flexfields are available at the catalog level to allow the user to define attributes for catalogs.

For example, a customer wants to add attributes to the catalog to identify the usage of the catalog in their business process. An attribute called Usage is created as a descriptive flexfield for the catalog. The values are defined indicating what processes the catalog data is used in, such as new product development.

You create descriptive flexfields using the Manage Catalog Descriptive Flexfields task in the Setup and Maintenance work area.



Category Descriptive Flexfields: Explained

Descriptive flexfields are available at the category level to allow the user to define attributes for category in all catalogs where it is used.

For example, a customer wants to add attributes to the category to identify the packaging types for the items assigned to the category. An attribute called Packaging Type is created as a descriptive flexfield for the catalog. The values are indicating what the packaging type is, such as box.

You create descriptive flexfields using the Manage Category Descriptive Flexfields task in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

Create Catalog: Explained

Item catalogs provide a mechanism to classify or group a set of items together based on common meaning. Catalogs can have a flat or single-level structure of categories or have a hierarchical structure categories.

For example, the item catalog Engine describes a group of categories that make up an engine such as engine block, carburetor, or ignition.

The items are assigned to the categories and represent components that make up the part of the engine. For example, spark plugs are a component of the ignition category.

Catalogs can be hierarchical and can contain a hierarchy where parent and child relationships between the category are used for classification, or a catalog can contain only one level, no hierarchy where the catalog is a list of categories.

For example, a category can be configured to be a browsing category by configuring the category to allow only allow categories to be added. In addition you can configure the category to allow both categories to be associated to it in a hierarchy and items can be assigned to it, as in the case where the category parent category in the hierarchy.

Item catalogs have two types: functional area catalogs that are created and maintained through the Manage Functional Area Catalogs task in the Setup and Maintenance work area and Product Hub catalogs that are created and maintained in the Production Information Management work area. Product Hub catalogs cannot be assigned to a functional area.

Functional area catalogs are primarily used to support other Fusion applications that require integration between the functional area catalog and the process within the application. For example the Purchasing functional area catalog is integrated with the Procurement processes to allow the items assigned to the categories in this catalog to be used to support the purchasing processes.

Product Hub catalogs are used to support additional processes and integration with external applications.

Create functional area catalogs using the Manage Functional Area Catalogs task in the Setup and Maintenance work area:

- 1. In the Navigator, click Setup and Maintenance.
- 2. On the Setup and Maintenance page, click the Manufacturing and Supply Chain Materials Management offering, and then click Setup.
- 3. On the Setup: Manufacturing and Supply Chain Materials Management page, click the Catalogs functional area, and then click the Manage Functional Catalogs task.
- 4. Click the Create icon.



Create product hub catalogs using the Manage Catalogs task in the Product Information Management work area.

- 1. Launch the Manage Catalogs task in the Product Information Management work area.
- 2. Create the catalog using the Create icon.

Manage Catalogs: Explained

You can edit a catalog after it has been created, using the Manage Catalogs task in the Setup and Maintenance work area. You can also access this task from the Product Information Management work area, if you have Oracle Fusion Product Hub installed.

To edit functional area catalogs using the Manage Functional Area Catalogs task in the Setup and Maintenance work area:

- 1. In the Navigator, click Setup and Maintenance.
- 2. On the Setup and Maintenance page, click the Manufacturing and Supply Chain Materials Management offering, and then click Setup.
- 3. On the Setup: Manufacturing and Supply Chain Materials Management page, click the Catalogs functional area, and then click the Manage Functional Catalogs task.
- 4. Search for the catalog.
- 5. Click the link in the Catalog Name column or select the row and click the Edit icon.

Edit Product Hub catalogs using the Manage Catalogs task in the Product Information Management work area.

- 1. Launch the Manage Catalogs task in the Product Information Management work area.
- 2. Create the catalog using the Create icon.
- 1. Search for the catalog on the Manage Catalogs search page.
- 2. Click the link in the Catalog Name column or select the row and click the edit icon.

Catalog Header Region

This region contains the catalog name and description, an image, the selection of the default category and the start and end date for the catalog.

The default category is used by the automatic item assignment process that is run when:

- Category is assigned to the default category field in the catalog header. During automatic assignment process the
 item is assigned to the default category that is referenced by this field, for the catalog assigned to the functional area.
- · Attribute values specified in the rules are met.

The start and end date allow the catalog life cycle to be controlled.

Category Hierarchy Tab

This contains the category hierarchy region in which the category hierarchy can be created and maintained. In addition, items can be assigned, the usage of the category in other catalog can be viewed, and the attributes for the category and catalog category association can be edited.

This tab also provides an action to allow the category hierarchy to be edited in a spreadsheet or a complete hierarchy to be edited. For example, a customer may be using a UNSPC classification. They can download the spreadsheet to their desktop and cut and paste the UNSPC classification hierarchy into the spreadsheet and upload the spreadsheet to the system.



Selecting a category will open the category detail region. This regions contains three additional tabs for the item category assignments, category details and category attachments.

Catalog Detail Tab

The Detail tab contains contains the catalog name and description, an image, the selection of the default category, the start and end date for the catalog and the catalog descriptive flexfields.

The default category is used by the automatic item assignment process that is run when:

- Category is assigned to the default category field in the catalog header. During automatic assignment process the
 item is assigned to the default category that is referenced by this field, for the catalog assigned to the functional area.
- Attribute values specified in the rules are met.

The start and end date allow the catalog life cycle to be controlled.

The Public Catalog check box is used to enable data security for catalogs and categories.

Catalog Attachments Tab

The Attachments tab is used to add attachments related to the catalog such as related documents or images.

Functional Area Catalogs: Explained

Functional areas represents products or functionality of the product.

Each functional area can have a set of rules to define how a catalog should be configured to support the functional area. When a catalog is created and assigned to the functional area, it is validated against the functional area rules. For example, many of the Supply Chain Management applications participate in a new item process which automatically assigns an item being created to the default category in a functional catalog. Also if no catalog is assigned to the functional area, the functional area is skipped in the automatic assignment process.

Automatic Assignment Catalogs: Explained

The automatic assignment catalog feature It is a simple way to create a non-hierarchical catalog because you do not have to add categories manually to the catalog. This feature adds the categories at the root level, so it works with both flat and hierarchical catalogs.

All categories that have the same category structure value as the catalog are automatically assigned and associated to the catalog when you create a catalog category association for each category.

Automatic Assignments

The automatic assignment feature is enabled during catalog creation when you select the **Enable automatic assignment of category** check box. The categories displayed for auto assignment catalogs are refreshed only at startup and after you save.



Note that if you create a category in another catalog with the same structure value as the automatic assignment catalog, the category is added to your catalog. The categories displayed for auto assignment catalogs are refreshed only at startup and after you save.

When you open a new catalog, any categories that have the same category structure value as the catalog structure value for the catalog are automatically assigned to the catalog.

For example, Purchasing may maintain a master catalog containing all categories that represent commodities. Each commodity team can create categories for their commodity in their own catalog.

The master catalog for purchasing is named Purchasing and is configured during creation to support the automatic assignment of categories. Because you enabled automatic assignments for the Purchasing catalog, any categories created by the commodity teams are added to the catalog automatically. The purchasing managers can view the collection of all commodities represented as categories in the Purchasing catalog.

Catalog Publishing: Explained

Other applications can use catalog data if you export the catalog content. For example, you may want to export catalog content to use as a monthly report of all items assigned to a specific catalog. You can use the default publish template provided in hyper text markup language (HTML). You can specify the content and layout of the catalog information. When the catalog is published, you select the format and initiate the creation of the content in the file.

Publish a Catalog

Search for a catalog from the Manage Catalogs page, select the row corresponding to the catalog that you want to publish and select the Publish action. The application generates the report based on the default template in HTML format. You can select a new template or format from the report window. The content displayed for items, categories, catalog categories, and catalog is based on the publish template. The seeded template is called Catalog Listing. The template controls what data is in the report and how it is formatted.

Type of Catalog Content That Can Be Published

The default catalog publish template allows the publication of the catalog header details, category hierarchy, category details, and category item assignments. The order of a published report begins with the catalog header and the catalog category details. If the category has a child relationship, then the catalog category association details for the child category follows. If the child category has a hierarchy, then the complete hierarchy under the category is published with the catalog category association details and categories details.





21 Other Common Setup and Maintenance Tasks

Define Custom Enterprise Scheduler Jobs

How can I see which applications a Manage Custom Enterprise Scheduler Jobs task includes?

In the Setup and Maintenance work area, see the task's description in the help window for the task, if any. To open the help window, click the help icon next to the task name, on pages such as the Manage Task Lists and Tasks page.

Tip:

- Click Show Help in the global area if you don't see help icons at all on the page.
- Make sure to show the Help column in the table.

You can also:

- 1. Open the work area landing page, the Offerings page.
- 2. Select an offering that contains the specific Manage Custom Enterprise Scheduler Jobs task.
- 3. Open the Setup Task Lists and Tasks file for the offering, in PDF, HTML, or Excel.

Managing Job Definitions: Highlights

Users run scheduled processes based on Oracle Enterprise Scheduler jobs to process data and, in some cases, to provide report output. A job definition contains the metadata that determines what the job does and what options are available to users. You can create and edit job definitions in the Setup and Maintenance work area, using the Manage Custom Enterprise Scheduler Jobs task for your application.

Viewing Job Definitions

- Use the Manage Job Definitions tab to access predefined and custom job definitions.
- The Name column shows an asterisk for predefined job definitions.

Creating Job Definitions

- You or a technical administrator can create jobs based on Oracle Business Intelligence Publisher reports, Java, PL/SQL, or any other supported technology.
- Every predefined or custom job must have a job definition.
- For Oracle Cloud implementations, you can create custom job definitions only for custom jobs based on reports.
- The Enable submission from Enterprise Manager check box is not applicable to Oracle Cloud implementations.
 - If you don't select this check box, then the job can't be run from Enterprise Manager.



If you select this check box, then you can define parameters for your job definition only in Enterprise Manager.
 Save the rest of your work on the job definition, and then go to Enterprise Manager if you need to define parameters.

Editing Job Definitions

- You can edit all aspects of custom job definitions.
- For predefined job definitions, you can:
 - o Determine if user properties are read-only or not.
 - Edit what are described as job properties in the Oracle Fusion Applications Extensibility Guide for Developers.

See: Customizing Existing Oracle Enterprise Scheduler Job Properties

Related Topics

- Managing List of Values Sources: Highlights
- Managing Job Sets: Highlights
- How can I see which applications a Manage Custom Enterprise Scheduler Jobs task includes?

Managing List of Values Sources: Highlights

A list of values source for Oracle Enterprise Scheduler job definitions determines where a list of values comes from and what the specific values are. Use these lists for parameters and application defined properties, for example a list of countries that users can choose from for a Country parameter.

Note: Since you can't edit parameters for predefined job definitions, list of values sources are only for parameters in custom job definitions.

Accessing List of Values Sources

- Access list of values sources in the Setup and Maintenance work area, using the Manage Custom Enterprise Scheduler Jobs task for your application.
- Open the Manage List of Values Sources tab.

Creating and Editing List of Values Sources

- Search for list of values sources to edit or delete, or to make sure a particular source doesn't already exist before
 you create it.
- Create list of values sources to register them for use in job definitions.

Related Topics

- · Managing Job Definitions: Highlights
- Managing Job Sets: Highlights
- How can I see which applications a Manage Custom Enterprise Scheduler Jobs task includes?



Managing Job Sets: Highlights

A job set identifies the Oracle Enterprise Scheduler jobs to include in a single process set that users can submit instead of running the jobs separately. The job set definition also determines if the jobs run in serial or parallel, or based on other predetermined logic.

Job Set Content

- A job set can contain any number of individual jobs as well as other job sets.
- There can also be multiple levels of nested job sets within a single job set. For example, a job set can include three jobs and two job sets, one of which contains another job set.

Creating and Editing Job Sets

- Access job set definitions in the Setup and Maintenance work area, using the Manage Custom Enterprise Scheduler
 Jobs task for your application.
- Open the Manage Job Sets tab.

Related Topics

- Managing Job Definitions: Highlights
- Managing List of Values Sources: Highlights
- How can I see which applications a Manage Custom Enterprise Scheduler Jobs task includes?

Setting Up for General Troubleshooting: Points to Consider

To help the help desk troubleshoot issues that users encounter in the application, users can record the issue while they reproduce it. Some advanced users might also need detailed information in the About This Page dialog box. Setting up for troubleshooting involves making sure that users have the right access, and determining how many users can record at the same time.

Access

Check with your security administrator that the appropriate users are assigned roles that inherit the following privileges:

- Record and View Issue (FND_RECORD_AND_VIEW_ISSUE_PRIV): To create a basic recording
- Set Issue Recording Advanced Options (FND_SET_ISSUE_RECORDING_ADVANCED_OPTIONS_PRIV): To set advanced options before starting the recording
- View Version Information (FND_VIEW_VERSION_INFORMATION_PRIV): To see the versions that technical
 components of the application are on

Number of Users

Recordings are stored on servers, and by default, up to five users can record at the same time on each server. For performance reasons, you can set the Maximum Number of Users Allowed to Record Issues (ORA_FND_RECORD_ISSUE_MAX_USERS) profile option to a number lower than five.



Related Topics

- Recording Issues to Troubleshoot: Procedure
- How can I view the version information of an application?
- Setting Profile Option Values: Procedure



22 External Integration

Web Services

Web Services: Overview

Use web services to integrate web-based applications into your Oracle Applications Cloud. Web services expose business objects and processes to other applications through the use of open standards-based technologies.

The web services support development environments and clients that comply with the following open standards:

- Extensible Markup Language (XML)
- Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP)
- Business Process Execution Language (BPEL)
- Web Services Description Language (WSDL)
- XML schema definitions (XSD)

Oracle Applications Cloud includes two types of web services:

- Application Development Framework (ADF) services
- Composite services

The following table describes the two types.

Web Service Type	Description
ADF services	ADF services usually represent business objects, such as employees or purchase orders. ADF services typically expose standard operations, such as create, update, and delete. However, for locally-persisted objects, ADF services are not limited to these operations.
	Examples of ADF services include:
	 Worker.changeHireDate - a service that updates the hire date of the worker business object.
	 ProjectTask.createTask - a service that adds a task to the project task business object.
Composite services	Composite services usually represent end-to-end business process flows that act on business events produced by the ADF services. Composite services orchestrate multiple object-based services, rules services, and human workflows. Examples of composite services include:
	 ProjectStatusChangeApproval.process - a service that accepts the change in project status.
	 ScheduleOrchestrationOrderFulfillmentLineService.scheduleOrders - a service that schedules resources used to fulfill an order.

For more information about web services, see the SOAP Web Services guide for your cloud services.



Section: Developer Connect

Developer Connect: Overview

The Developer Connect portal provides information about the web services deployed to your Oracle Applications Cloud instance. You can use this information to integrate with or extend Oracle Applications Cloud and develop customized business solutions.

To open the Developer Connect portal, from the **Navigator** menu, select **Tools** - **Developer Connect**. This portal displays dynamic information of the web services, and the customization done to web services to integrate with Oracle Applications Cloud. You can synchronize the Developer Connect portal with your cloud instance to retrieve the latest web service information such as service attributes, operations, business objects, security policies, and WSDL files.

Use the Developer Connect portal to:

- View the summary of the web service information such as the business object that the service defines, life cycle status, and security policy.
- Discover the operations available for the selected web service, and the request and response payloads for each operation.
- View the hierarchy of the service data objects and know information such as the data type and whether it's a required field about custom attributes.
- Review the sample payload XMLs for the operations of the web service. You can add or edit sample payloads, and also delete custom sample payloads.

Web Service Life Cycle: Explained

A web service goes through three phases in a life cycle:

- Active: A service is active when it's delivered the first time, until it's deprecated.
- Deprecated: A service is deprecated when it's superseded by a newer version, or if there is a planned obsolescence in a future release. A service in this state is still supported and becomes obsolete in a later release.
 - Note: You must use the active version of the service. If you were previously using a service that has been deprecated, then migrate to the new, active version.
- Obsolete: A service is obsolete when it's no longer shipped or supported.

Message Patterns: Explained

All operations exposed on a business object service have both synchronous and asynchronous message patterns defined. For conciseness, the service documentation includes the definition for the synchronous message pattern only. Both synchronous and asynchronous operations have the same functional behavior, and request and response payloads. Custom object services don't have corresponding asynchronous operations.

Naming Conventions and Examples

The naming convention for the asynchronous operation is:

- Operation name: Synchronous operation name appended with Async
- Callback name: Synchronous operation name appended with AsyncResponse



Using Help Topic Abstract Service as an example, if the name of the synchronous operation is getEntityList, the asynchronous operation name and callback name would be getEntityListAsync and getEntityListAsyncResponse.

Managing Web Service Sample Payloads: Worked Example

This example demonstrates how to add and edit a sample payload XML for a web service operation. It also describes how to delete a custom sample payload XML.

Adding a Sample Payload XML

Follow these steps to add a sample payload XML for the getEntityList operation of Help Topic Abstract Service:

- 1. From the Navigator menu, select Tools Developer Connect.
- 2. On the **Web Service** overview page, search for Help Topic Abstract Service, and click the service display name.
- 3. On the Summary page, click the Sample Payloads tab, and then click Add Sample Payload.
- **4.** Select **getEntityList** operation from the list, and enter a brief description.
- 5. Enter the payload XML, and click **OK**.

Editing a Sample Payload XML

The Developer Connect portal displays predefined and custom payloads of the web services. You can edit only the custom payloads. Follow these steps to edit a custom sample payload of the <code>getEntityList</code> operation of <code>Help Topic Abstract</code> Service:

- 1. On the **Web Service** overview page, select Help Topic Abstract Service.
- 2. On the Summary page of the web service, click the Sample Payloads tab and select getEntityList operation.
- 3. In the Edit Sample Payload dialog box, edit the payload XML and click OK.

Deleting a Sample Payload XML

You can delete only custom payloads, and not predefined payloads. Follow these steps to delete a custom sample payload of the getEntityList Operation of Help Topic Abstract Service:

- 1. On the **Web Service** overview page, select Help Topic Abstract Service.
- 2. On the **Summary** page of the web service, click the **Sample Payloads** tab and select getEntityList operation.
- 3. Click the delete icon for the selected operation and click **OK**.

Importing Value Set Values to Oracle Applications Cloud: Worked Example

This example demonstrates how to use the information in the Developer Connect portal to import value set values to Oracle Applications Cloud.

Suppose a fictional partner application wants to extend it with certain functionality available in another application. Instead of creating the required business objects and attributes in this application, you can import them using a web service. Before you proceed with the import process, enable the access permissions for the web service and review the information in the Developer Connect portal:

- Synchronize the web services information
- · Review the web service details
- Update the request payload

Synchronizing Web Services Information

You must synchronize the Developer Connect portal with your Oracle Applications Cloud instance to get the latest web service information. Follow these steps:

1. From the Navigator menu, select **Tools - Developer Connect**.



2. Click Synchronize.

Note: The Last Refreshed date indicates when the Developer Connect portal was last synchronized with your cloud instance.

Searching And Reviewing Web Service Information

On the Web Services overview page, you can enter Manage File Import and Export in the Find field. You can also use Advanced Search option to find web service names that contain import, and select the relevant service from the search results.

To review the information:

- 1. On the Web Services overview page, select Manage File Import and Export Service. The Summary panel shows information such as the display name, business object that the service defines, life cycle status, QName, security policy used, and a brief overview of the service.
- 2. Click the Operations tab to view the operations supported by the web service.
- 3. Click the uploadFiletoucm operation and review the result parameter in the response payload. This parameter holds the file ID in the WebCenter Content repository from which the value set values are imported.
- **4.** Click the **valueSetValuesDataLoader** operation and review the **fileIdAtRepository** parameter in the request payload. This parameter holds the file ID in the WebCenter Content repository.
- 5. Click **WSDL File** link of the service to download the web service information.

Updating Request Payload

<soap:Body>

<ns1:uploadFiletoUCM

To add a sample payload to import the value set values:

- 1. Click the Sample Payloads tab and then click **Add Sample Payload**.
- 2. Select uploadFiletoUCM from the operation name list.
- 3. Enter a brief description of the payload in the description text box.
- **4.** Add the payload to get the file ID from the WebCenter Content repository:

<soap:Envelope xmlns:soap="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/">

xmlns:ns1="http://xmlns.oracle.com/oracle/apps/fnd/applcore/webservices/types/"

```
ns2="http://xmlns.oracle.com/oracle/apps/fnd/applcore/webservices/"
xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">

<ns1:document xsi:type="ns2:DocumentDetails">
<ns2:fileName>V$123.txt</ns2:fileName>
<ns2:contentType>plain/text</ns2:contentType> <ns2:content>

VmFsdWVTZXRDb2RlfEluZGVwZW5kZW50VmFsdWV8SW5kZXBlbmRlbnRWYWx1ZU51bWJlcnxJbmRlcGVuZGVudFZhbHVlRGF0ZXxJbmRlcGVuZGVuQX R0cmlidXRlNH
xDdXN0b2lWYwx1ZUF0dHJpYnV0ZTV8Q3VzdG9tVmFsdWVBdHRyaWJldGU2fEN1c3RvbVZhbHVlQXR0cmlidXRlN3xDdXN0b21WYwx1ZUF0dHJpY
Hx 8fHx8fHx8fHw K
UkVMN19CN19WU19CVU1fSU5EfHx8fHwyMDAwfHx8fHxUZXN0aW5nIGZvciBCdWcgMTczNzU2ODR8WXwyMDExLTEwLTAxfDIwMTItMTAtMzB8Mnx
8f Hx8fHx8fHx8fHx8fApSRUw3X012X1ZTXORBVEVfSU5EfHx8fHx8fDIwMzAtMDEtMDJ8fHxUZXN0aW5nIGZvciBCdWcgMTczNzU2ODQtMXxzf
UV fREVQfDIwMzE t
MDMtMDEgMDE6MDA6MDAuMDB8fHwyMDMxLTAzLTAxIDAxOjAwOjAwLjAwfDIwMzEtMDMtMDEgMDE6MDE6MDAuMDB8fHwyMDMxLTAzLTAxIDAxOjA
</ns1:content>
<ns2:documentAccount>fin$/tax$/import$</ns2:documentAccount>
<ns2:documentTitle>VS</ns2:documentTitle>
```

5. Click OK.

</ns2:document>
</ns1:uploadFiletoUCM>

</soap:Body>
</soap:Envelope>

6. Select valueSetValuesDataLoader from the operation name list.



- 7. Enter a brief description of the payload in the description text box.
- 8. Add the payload to read the contents from the file and import the value set values:

```
<soap:Envelope xmlns:soap="http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/">
  <soap:Body>
  <ns1:valueSetValuesDataLoader

xmlns:ns1="http://xmlns.oracle.com/oracle/apps/fnd/applcore/webservices/types/">
  <ns1:fileIdAtRepository>1234</ns1:fileIdAtRepository>
  </ns1:valueSetValuesDataLoader>
  </soap:Body>
  </soap:Envelope>
```

Cross-Origin Resource Sharing

CORS: Explained

Cross-Origin Resource Sharing (CORS) enables secure cross domain communication from a browser. You can configure CORS headers to enable a client application running in one domain to retrieve resources from another domain, using HTTP requests. By default, browser-based programming languages, such as JavaScript, can access content only from the same domain. CORS provides a mechanism to overcome this limitation and access resources from different domains.

To enable CORS in Oracle Applications Cloud, you must set profile option values for the CORS headers in the Setup and Maintenance work area. This table lists the supported CORS headers.

CORS Header	Purpose
Access-Control-Allow-Origin	Contains a comma-separated list of trusted origins that a client application can access resources from.
Access-Control-Max-Age	Specifies the duration of storing the results of a request in the preflight result cache.
Access-Control-Allow-Methods	Contains a comma-separated list of permitted HTTP methods in a request.
Access-Control-Allow-Headers	Contains a comma-separated list of permitted HTTP headers in a request.
Access-Control-Allow-Credentials	Specifies whether a client application can send user credentials with a request.

Example

A client application retrieves resource X from server A, which runs the application logic. The client application then makes an HTTP request to retrieve resource Y from server B. To allow this cross-server request from the client application, you must configure the *Access-Control-Allow-Origin* header in server A. Otherwise, the request fails and displays an error message.

Related Topics

- Managing Profile Option Values for CORS Headers: Points to Consider
- Setting Profile Option Values: Procedure



Managing Profile Option Values for CORS Headers: Points to Consider

You can set profile option values for the CORS headers using the Manage Administrator Profile Values task in the Setup and Maintenance work area.

CORS Headers

This table lists the CORS headers that you can set profile option values for.

CORS Header	Profile Option Name (Profile Option Code)	Profile Option Values
Access-Control-Allow-Origin	Allowed Domains (ORACLE. ADF. VIEW. ALLOWEDORIGINS)	 Valid values for allowed origins: URL of the specific origin, for example, http://www.mydomain.com Comma-separated list of origins, for example, http://www.mydomain.com, http://adc6160507.us.oracle.com, http://software.dzhuvinov.com * to allow access to resources from all origins Empty (no value set) to prevent access to resources from any origin Note: You must set a value for this header to enable CORS.
Access-Control-Max-Age	CORS: Access-Control-Max-Age (CORS_ACCESS_CONTROL_MAX_AGE)	Default value for caching preflight request is 3600 seconds.
Access-Control-Allow-Methods	CORS: Access-Control-Allow-Methods (CORS_ ACCESS_ CONTROL_ ALLOW_ METHODS)	Default values for allowed methods are OPTIONS, HEAD, GET, POST, PUT, PATCH, DELETE.
Access-Control-Allow-Headers	CORS: Access-Control-Allow-Headers (CORS_ ACCESS_ CONTROL_ ALLOW_ HEADERS)	Default values for allowed headers are Accept, Accept-Encoding, Cache-Control, Content-MD5, Content-Type, If-Match, If-None-Match, Origin, User-Agent, X-HTTP-Method-Override, X-Requested-By.
		Note: You must include Authorization, with a comma as the delimiter, to the list of allowed headers. For example: Accept, Accept- Encoding, Cache-Control, Authorization
Access-Control-Allow-Credentials	CORS: Access-Control-Allow-Credentials (CORS_ ACCESS_ CONTROL_ ALLOW_ CREDENTIALS)	True to enable sending credentials with the request



CORS Header	Profile Option Name (Profile Option Code)	Profile Option Values
		 False, which is the default value, to disable sending credentials with the request

Related Topics

• Setting Profile Option Values: Procedure

Viewing Details About Predefined Scheduled Processes: Procedure

To use web services to run predefined scheduled processes, you need details about the processes. View job definitions that the processes are based on, for example to get information about parameters. You might also need to find security requirements for running the scheduled process.

Job Definitions

A job definition contains the metadata that determines how a scheduled process works and what options are available during submission.

To view job definitions:

- 1. Go to the Setup and Maintenance work area.
- 2. Run a search with **Manage Custom Enterprise Scheduler Jobs** as the search term.
- 3. In the search results, open the Manage Custom Enterprise Scheduler Jobs task for the application that contains the job definition. Tasks with names that end in **and Related Applications** include multiple applications.
- 4. In the Manage Job Definitions tab, select your job definition and click **Edit**.
 - Note: Predefined job definitions are marked with an asterisk.
- **5.** Cancel after you get the information you need.

Security

Privileges provide the access needed to run specific scheduled processes. Privileges are granted to duty roles, which are granted to job roles. To see which job roles inherit the needed privileges, use the Security Console or the security reference manuals for the appropriate product family.

Related Topics

How can I see which applications a Manage Custom Enterprise Scheduler Jobs task includes?

Files for Import and Export

Files for Import and Export: Explained

You can import data into or export data out of the applications. A repository stores the content and the import and export processes handle the data movement into and out of the repository. Integration specialists stage data for import and export.



Application administrators run processes to import data in repositories of content to application transaction tables, or retrieve data exported from applications.

Aspects of managing files for import and export involve the following:

- Using the File Import and Export page
- Interacting with content management
- Uploading to facilitate import
- Downloading to facilitate export
- Determining the file size

The File Import and Export Page

Use the File Import and Export page to upload content to or download content from the document repository of Oracle WebCenter Content. Search criteria on the page are limited to the minimum metadata of content management records needed for file import and export. To open the page, from the **Navigator** menu in the global area, select **Tools - File Import and Export**.

Contact the WebCenter Content Administrator for the following additional requirements:

- Information or assistance regarding general access to content management (including all metadata)
- Creating and managing accounts
- Programmatically uploading and downloading content

Interacting with Content Management

Each user with access to the File Import and Export page is assigned to one or more accounts in Oracle WebCenter Content. Accounts organize and secure access to the content items.

Uploading to Facilitate Import

Uploading a file creates a record in Oracle WebCenter Content. When you upload a file, you must also specify an account to which you upload the file. The account you specify determines which import process picks up that file to import it. You can upload any compatible file format, such as MIME, which the content repository can parse. However, the uploaded format must conform to the requirements of the import process. For example, the comma-separated values (CSV) file for the Load Interface File for Import process.

Downloading to Facilitate Export

Records in the search results table of the File Import and Export page provide download links to the files.

File Size

Upload and download don't apply the following by default:

- Data compression
- File splitting

The upload_max_disk_space parameter in the web.xml file determines the maximum allowable file size in content management. The default maximum size is 10240000 (10MB).



Files for Import and Export: Points to Consider

Interaction between the File Import and Export page and Oracle WebCenter Content requires securing content in an account. You can use the predefined accounts that are available in Oracle WebCenter Content.

Areas of file import and export involve the following:

- Defining security
- · Searching records
- · Accessing content in a new account
- Naming the account
- Deleting files

Defining Security

You require the File Import and Export Management duty role for accessing the File Import and Export page. This duty role is included in the predefined role hierarchy for integration specialist roles and product family administrator roles. Files in Oracle WebCenter Content are associated with an account so that only users having access to that account can work with those files. Account names are unique and each account is treated as discrete by access control. You can only upload and download files to and from content repositories that are linked to the accounts you can access. The underlying integrated content management handles security tasks such as virus scanning.

Searching Records

A record in Oracle WebCenter Content contains the metadata used for accessing the file. When a scheduled process is run on a file, the record for the file is assigned a process ID.

Accessing Content in a New Account

After you create a new account in Oracle WebCenter Content, restart the content server. Otherwise, when you use the File Import and Export page to access content in the new account, you may experience a delay. That's because the policy store is being updated with the new account information.

Naming the Account

If you create custom accounts for importing or exporting data, use the following conventions for naming the account:

- Don't include a forward slash (/) at the beginning or end.
- End the name with a dollar symbol (\$) to avoid partial string matching.
- Use (\$/) as a separator in the hierarchical structure.

For example: fin\$/journal\$/import\$ The File Import and Export page transforms account names by removing the \$ separators. For example fin\$/journal\$/import\$ appears as fin/journal/import. The Remote Introdoc Client (RIDC) HTTP command-line interface (CLI) transforms the account name you specify without the \$ symbol to one that includes the symbol. For example, fin/journal/import becomes fin\$/journal\$/import\$ in WebCenter Content.

Deleting Files

You can delete one file at a time when you use the File Import and Export page. To delete multiple files simultaneously from the content repository, use the standard service page in Oracle WebCenter Content.



External Data Integration Services for Oracle Cloud

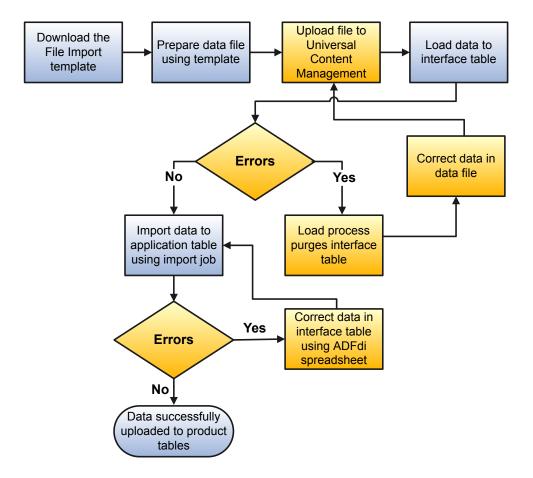
External Data Integration Services for Oracle Cloud: Overview

Use External Data Integration Services for Oracle Cloud to load data into Oracle Fusion Applications from external sources, such as legacy systems and third-party applications.

External Data Integration Services for Oracle Cloud include the following components:

- Templates to structure, format, and generate the data file according to the requirements of the target application tables.
- File-based load process to load the data files into the interface tables.
- Application-specific data import processes to transfer data from interface tables to the application tables in your Oracle Fusion Applications.

The following flow diagram outlines the steps involved in the process:



For further information, see Using External Data Integration Services for Oracle ERP Cloud (2102800.1) on My Oracle Support at https://support.oracle.com.



Related Topics

Using External Data Integration Services for Oracle ERP Cloud

Locating File Import Templates: Explained

The File Based Data Import guides in the Oracle Help Center (http://docs.oracle.com) include integration templates to help you prepare external data for loading and importing. Each template includes table-specific instructions, guidelines, formatted spreadsheets, and best practices for preparing the data file for upload. Use the templates to ensure that your data conforms to the structure and format of the target application tables.

Preparing external data using templates involve the following tasks:

- Downloading templates
- Preparing data using the XLS template

Downloading Templates

To download the templates:

- 1. Open the File Based Data Import guide for your cloud service.
- 2. Locate the import process.
- 3. View the list of files.
 - o Control files describe the logical flow of the data load process.
 - XLSM templates include the worksheets and macros for structuring, formatting, and generating your data file.
 - Note: You can use XML templates to import data into Oracle Data Integrator.
- 4. Click the template link in the File Links table to download the file. For example, click **JournalImportTemplate.xlsm** in the Journal Import topic.

Preparing Data Using the XLS Template

To prepare your data in a spreadsheet format:

- 1. Open the XLS template. The first worksheet in each file provides instructions for using the template.
 - Note: If you don't follow the instructions, you'll get data load errors and data import failures.
- 2. Save the file.
- 3. Click the **Generate CSV File** button.

The macro generates a comma-separated values (CSV) file and compresses the file into a ZIP file. You must transfer the ZIP file to the content management server.

Opening the XML Template

To prepare your data in Oracle Data Integrator, download the XML templates using the following steps:

1. Import the family-level template as a model folder.



- 2. Import the product-level template as a model folder within the family-level model folder.
- 3. Import the product template as a model within the product-level model folder.
- 4. Create the integration project.
- Create the package.
- 6. Add and configure these elements:
 - Integration projects
 - Content management document transfer utility
- 7. Execute the package. The package generates the CSV file and compresses it into a ZIP file.

Using Excel Integration Templates to Generate Data Files: Points to Consider

The File Based Data Import guides in the Oracle Help Center (http://docs.oracle.com) include integration templates to help you prepare external data for loading and importing. Each template includes table-specific instructions, guidelines, formatted spreadsheets, and best practices for preparing the data file for upload. Use the templates to ensure that your data conforms to the structure and format of the target application tables.

Template Structure

The integration templates include the following characteristics:

- Each interface table is represented by a separate worksheet.
- Each interface table field is represented by a worksheet column with a header in the first row.
- Each column header contains bubble text or comments that include details about the column, such as the expected data type, length, and, in some cases, other instructional text.
- Columns are formatted, where applicable, to match the target field data type to eliminate data entry errors.

The worksheet columns appear in the order that the control file processes the data file.

For more information on the template structure, see the Instructions and CSV Generation worksheet in the template.

Template Requirements

To minimize the risks of an unsuccessful data load, ensure the following:

- Unused columns can be hidden, but not reordered or deleted.
 - ▲ Caution: Deleting or reordering columns causes the load process to fail and results in an unsuccessful data load.
- External data must conform to the data type accepted by the control file and process for the associated database column.
- Date column values must appear in the YYYY/MM/DD format.
- Amount column values can't have separators other than a period (.) as the decimal separator.
- Negative values must be preceded by the minus (-) sign.
- Column values that require whole numbers include data validation to allow whole numbers only.



• For columns that require internal ID values, refer to the bubble text for additional guidance about finding these values.

After you finish preparing the data in the sheet, click the **Generate CSV File** button to generate a ZIP file containing one or more CSV files.

Using XML Templates to Generate Data Files for Integration: Explained

The File Based Data Import guides in the Oracle Help Center (https://docs.oracle.com) include XML integration templates that you use with Oracle Data Integrator to generate import files from your external data. Oracle Data Integrator provides a solution for integrating complex data from a variety of sources into your Oracle Fusion applications.

To use the XML templates and generate the import files, you must:

- Install and set up Oracle Data Integrator
- Create source and target models
- Create integration projects
- Note: For Oracle Cloud implementations, you must upload the ZIP file to the content management repository in Oracle Cloud. For non-Cloud implementations, you can streamline the data integration process by installing the content management document transfer utility, which uses Oracle Data Integrator to transfer the ZIP file.

Using XML Integration Templates to Generate Data Files: Points to Consider

Use XML templates in Oracle Data Integrator to prepare your external data for the load and import process.

The File Based Data Import guides in the Oracle Help Center (https://docs.oracle.com) include three types of XML templates that you import as target models in your Oracle Data Integrator repository:

- Family level
- Product level
- Product

Family-Level XML Files

A family-level XML file is common to a group of product-level model folders and product models.

Consider the following points when you use family-level XML files:

- Use the family-level XML file to support assets in the family, for example, Oracle Fusion Financials or Human Capital Management.
- Import the family-level XML file into your Oracle Data Integrator repository prior to importing the other XML files.
- Import one family-level XML file as a model folder for each family of products.
- Import each family-level XML file as a top-level model folder.
- Import the family-level XML file one time; it supports all subsumed product-level model folders.



Select Synonym Mode Insert Update as the import type.

Product-Level XML Files

A product-level XML file is common to a group of product models.

Consider the following points when you use product-level XML files:

- Use the product-level XML file to support assets in the product line, for example, Fixed Assets, General Ledger, or Payables.
- Import one product-level XML file as a model folder for each line of products.
- Import the product-level XML file as a model folder into your Oracle Data Integrator repository.
- Import the family-level XML file before you import product XML files.
- Import each product-level XML file as a mid-level model folder within the appropriate family-level model folder.
- Import the product-level XML file one time; it supports all subsumed product models.
- Select Synonym Mode Insert Update as the import type.

Product XML Files

A product XML file represents a specific interface table asset.

Consider the following points when you use product XML files:

- Import one product XML file as a model for each interface table or set of tables, for example, Mass Additions.
- Import the product XML file as a model into your Oracle Data Integrator repository after you import the product-level XML file.
- Import each product XML file as a model within the appropriate product-level model folder.
- Import each product XML file one time. The model is based on File technology.
- Select Synonym Mode Insert Update as the import type.
- After you import the product model, connect the model to the correct logical schema.

Creating Integration Projects That Generate Data Files for Import: Points to Consider

When you use Oracle Data Integrator (ODI) to generate the import data files from external data sources, you must configure an integration project. Integration projects are collections of ODI components that provide the procedural details of an integration from a source to a target. The source is your external data and the target is the import data file that you load and import into your Oracle Fusion Applications.

To create your integration project, you configure the following components:

- Knowledge modules
- Integration interfaces

Knowledge Modules

Knowledge modules contain the information that Oracle Data Integrator requires to perform a specific set of tasks against a specific technology or set of technologies. For example, check knowledge modules ensure that constraints on the sources and targets are not violated, and integration knowledge modules load data to the target tables.



Consider the following points about knowledge modules:

- Knowledge modules that you import into your integration project depend on the source and target technologies, as well as other integration-specific rules and processes.
- Multiple types of knowledge modules exist in ODI.
- Use the SQL File to Append module to create the import data file.

Integration Interfaces

Integration interfaces contain the sets of rules that define the loading of data from one or more sources to the target.

Consider the following points about integration interfaces:

- The source is the data store from your external data model.
- The target is the interface table data store, which is the CSV file from your interface table model.
- After you set up the source and target data stores, map the target fields to the source fields, or map source field values to target fields or constants.

Transferring Data Files to Oracle WebCenter Content Using Manual Flow: Explained

After you generate the ZIP file that contains the CSV data import file, transfer the ZIP file to the content repository.

Use any of the following methods to transfer file:

- · File Import and Export page in Oracle Fusion Applications: Manual flow
- Oracle Fusion ERP Integration web service: Automated flow

Aspects of transferring data files to content management involve the following:

- Target accounts
- Accessing transferred content

Predefined Target UCM Accounts

You can transfer data files to predefined accounts in the Universal Content Management server that correspond to the interface table or assets.

To find the UCM account:

- 1. Open the File Based Data Import guide for your cloud service.
- 2. Locate your respective import process. For example, **Journal Import**.
- 3. View the UCM account in the Details section.

For more information, see the following guides in the Oracle Help Center (https://docs.oracle.com):

- SOAP Web Services guide for your cloud services
- File Based Data Import guide for your cloud services



Document Transfer Utility: Explained

The WebCenter Content Document Transfer Utility for Oracle Fusion Applications is a feature-set Java library that provides programmatic access to the content repository. Use the utility to import and export documents, such as import files that contain external data that you want to load into interface and application tables.

The library includes:

- Oracle WebCenter Content client command line tool
- Oracle Data Integrator (ODI) upload and download tools
- Oracle WebCenter Content remote intradoc client (RIDC)
- Oracle HTTPClient
- Oracle Fusion Applications branding and defaults

Options for the WebCenter Content Document Transfer Utility for Oracle Fusion Applications fall into these categories:

- DownloadTool program options
- UploadTool program options
- Debugging and silent invocation options

DownloadTool Program Options

This table describes the download tool program options:

Option	Description
url	Protocol-specific connection URL of content server
username	Username to leverage
password	Password, supplied in command line
passwordFile	Password, supplied in text file on the first line of the file
dID	ID of document revision to download
	dID is unique across repository
	dID changes with each revision
	Note: Alternatively, specify the dDocName and RevisionSelectionMethod to identify the dID to leverage.
dDocName	Content name
	Multiple revisions of a document can share the same dDocName value, otherwise it is unique.



Option	Description	
	Note: You should also provide RevisionSelectionMethod value.	
RevisionSelectionMethod	Revision to download	
	Valid values: Latest, LatestReleased	
	Default value: Latest	
outputFile	Path and name of local file to write	

Here you see a sample download invocation command:

java -classpath "oracle.ucm.fa_client_11.1.1.jar" oracle.ucm.client.DownloadTool
url=http://ucmserver.com:16200/cs/idcplg username=weblogic password=welcom3i
dID=21537 outputFile="/tmp/output.doc"

Here you see sample output:

Oracle WebCenter Content Document Transfer Utility Oracle Fusion Applications
Copyright (c) 2013, Oracle. All rights reserved.
Performing download (GET_FILE) ...
Download successful.

UploadTool Program Options

This table describes the upload tool program options:

Option	Description
url	Protocol-specific connection URL of content server
username	Username to leverage
password	Password, supplied in command-line
passwordFile	Password, supplied in text file on the first line of the file
primaryFile	Fully-qualified path of local primary file to upload
dDocAccount	Destination account
dDocTitle	Document title
checkout	If uploading a document revision, check out the document from the repository before uploading the revision
	Valid values: true, false
	Default value: false



Option	Description	
ignoreCheckoutErrorNeg22	Ignore error -22 (user has already checked-out the document) when checking-out the document.	
	Valid values: true, false	
	Default value: true	

Here you see a sample upload invocation command:

```
java -classpath "oracle.ucm.fa_client_11.1.1.jar" oracle.ucm.client.UploadTool
url=http://ucmserver.com:16200/cs/idcplg username=weblogic password=welcom3i
primaryFile="/tmp/resume.doc" dDocTitle="Resume of MSMITH" -dDocAccount=/acme/sales
```

Here you see sample output:

```
Oracle WebCenter Content Document Transfer Utility
Oracle Fusion Applications
Copyright (c) 2013, Oracle. All rights reserved.
Performing upload (CHECKIN_UNIVERSAL) ...
Upload successful.
[dID=21537 | dDocName=UCMFA021487]
```

Debugging and Silent Invocation Options

This table describes the usable options which are common to all tools.

Description	
Verbose output	
Log filled with Request/ Response DataBinders	
Minimal output	
Print tool revision or version	
Send program output to specified log file instead of the System.out log file	
Append log to existing log file rather than overwrite it	
Valid values: true, false	
Default value: false	
Override time out of socket	
Specify override time in seconds	

You can use the tools to test the connection. Provide only the url, username, and password as you see in this sample test:

java -classpath "oracle.ucm.fa_client_11.1.1.jar" oracle.ucm.client.DownloadTool
url=http://ucmserver.com:16200/cs/idcplg username=weblogic password=welcom3i

Here you see the sample output:



Oracle WebCenter Content Document Transfer Utility Oracle Fusion Applications
Copyright (c) 2013, Oracle. All rights reserved.
Performing connection test (PING_SERVER) ...
Connection test successful.

Load Interface File for Import Process

Use to load external setup or transaction data from a data file in the content repository to interface tables. The process prepares the data for import into application tables.

You run this process from the Scheduled Processes page. You can run it on a recurring basis.

Before running this process, you must:

- 1. Prepare your data file.
- 2. Transfer the data file to the content repository.

Parameters **Parameters**

Import Process

Select the target import process.

Data file

Enter the relative path and the file name of the *.zip data file in the content repository.

Importing Data into Application Tables: Procedure

The final destination for your external data is the application data tables of your Oracle Fusion application.

Importing data into application tables involves the following:

- Loading data into interface tables
- Finding and submitting the import process

Loading Data into Interface Tables

Interface tables are intermediary tables that store your data temporarily while the application validates format and structure. Run the Load Interface File for Import scheduled process to load data from the data file into the interface table that corresponds to the template that you use to prepare the data.

To load your data into interface tables, submit the Load Interface File for Import scheduled process using the following steps:

- 1. From the Navigator, click **Tools**.
- Click Scheduled Processes.
- 3. Click the Schedule New Process button.
- 4. Search and select the Load Interface File for Import job.
- 5. On the Process Details page:
 - a. Select the target import process.
 - **b.** Enter the data file name.



6. Submit the process.

If the process is successful, the status is SUCCEEDED and the process populates the interface tables. If the process isn't successful, the status is ERROR.

Note: The data file remains in the content repository after the process ends.

Finding and Submitting the Import Process

Run the appropriate import process to import the data into the interface tables of your Oracle Fusion application.

To import your data into the application tables:

- 1. From the Navigator, click **Tools**.
- 2. Click Scheduled Processes.
- 3. Click the Schedule New Process button.
- 4. Search and select the import process for the target application tables.
- 5. On the Process Details page, select the process that corresponds to the data that you're importing. For example, **Journal Import**.

If you prepared your data using the spreadsheet template, select the process shown in the Overview section of the spreadsheet.

6. Submit the process.

If the process is successful, the status is SUCCEEDED. The data in the interface tables is validated and the successful records are imported into the Oracle Fusion application tables. If the process isn't successful, the status is ERROR.

Note: For more information on the process used for data prepared using the spreadsheet template, see the Instructions and CSV Generation tab of the spreadsheet template.

Correcting Import Load Process Errors: Explained

The Load Interface File for Import process ends in error if the load of the data file fails on any row. The Load File to Interface child process ends as an error or warning. All rows that were loaded by the process are deleted and the entire batch of records is rejected.

Correcting Data Upload Errors

To correct errors:

- 1. Review the error logs.
- 2. Change any structural or formatting anomalies in the data.
- 3. Generate the ZIP file containing the CSV files using the template.
- 4. Upload the file to the UCM server and resubmit the Load Interface File for Import process.
- 5. Repeat these steps until the process successfully loads all the data.

Correcting Import Process Errors

If the import process fails with errors:

- 1. Review the errors in the import log.
- 2. Correct the error records using the ADFdi correction spreadsheets.



23 Importing and Exporting Setup Data

Configuration Packages: Explained

A Configuration Package contains the setup import and export definition. The setup import and export definition is the list of setup tasks and their associated business objects that identifies the setup data for export as well as the data itself. When you create a configuration package only the setup export and import definition exists. Once you submit export, a snapshot of the appropriate setup data is added to the configuration package using the definition. You can continue making modifications to the setup data in the environment and create a new configuration package any time you need it.

You can generate the setup export and import definition implicitly or explicitly:

- A configuration package is created implicitly when you export setup data for an entire offering or any functional area from the Applications Administration page.
- A configuration package is created explicitly when you export setup data based on an implementation project. This
 method enables further customization of the configuration packages.

You generate the setup export and import definition by selecting an implementation project and creating a configuration package. The tasks and their associated business objects in the selected implementation project define the setup export and import definition for the configuration package. In addition, the sequence of the tasks in the implementation project determines the export and import sequence.

The tasks and their associated business objects in the selected configuration (offering, functional area or implementation project) define the setup export and import definition for the configuration package. In addition, the sequence of the tasks in the implementation project determines the export and import sequence.

Once a configuration package is exported, the setup export and import definition is locked and cannot be changed; that is, you cannot change the selection (add or remove) of tasks and their associated business objects, change their export and import sequence, nor the scope value selection. However, you can create a new configuration package with such modifications at any time.

Implementation Project Based Export and Import: Explained

Use an implementation project as the source for exporting setup data when you are required to customize the list of tasks or of objects you want to export setup data for.

You must explicitly create a configuration package from the Manage Configuration Packages page to export setup data for an implementation project. You generate the setup export and import definition by selecting an implementation project and creating a configuration package. The tasks and their associated business objects in the selected implementation project define the setup export and import definition for the configuration package. Depending on your needs, when you create a configuration package based on an implementation project, you can also customize some additional aspects, as explained here.

Exclude some of the business objects from the configuration you selected to export setup data for.



You should limit to use this option when the corresponding setup data is already available in the target instance and therefore no data dependency issues appear during import.

Change the default import sequence of the business objects

Change the default import sequence of the business objects. It's strongly recommended that you limit using this option when you need to correct a data dependency issue and you fully understand the data relationships between the business objects of your configuration.

Filter the setup data to export

Export

During export, appropriate setup data is identified based on the tasks in the implementation project used as source for the configuration package. The setup data in the configuration package is a snapshot of the data in the source application instance at the time of export. Once export completes, you can download the configuration package file as a zipped archive of multiple XML files, move it to the target application instance, and upload and import it. After exporting the setup data you may continue entering new or modifying existing setup data for your configuration. Since the configuration package is a snapshot of the setup data taken at the time export is initiated, you may need to take another snapshot of the same configuration or set of data later. Although you can always create a different configuration package, FSM provides you the ability to take another snapshot of the setup data using the same customized export and import definition by exporting the configuration package multiple times and creating multiple versions. While the export definition remains the same in each version, the setup data can be different if you modified the data in the time period between the different runs of the export process. Since each version of the configuration package has a snapshot of the data in the source instance, you can compare and analyze various versions of the configuration package to see how the setup data changed.

Import

During import, you first upload a configuration package created by the export process and then import the setup data. All setup data contained in the configuration package is imported into the environment you initiate the setup data import from. In the target application instance, the setup import process inserts all new data from the source configuration package that does not already exist, and update any existing data with changes from the source. Setup data that exists in the target instance but not in source will remain unchanged.

Moving Common Reference Objects

Moving Common Reference Objects: Overview

The common reference objects are used by several setup tasks in the Setup and Maintenance work area. The common reference objects become a part of the configuration package that is created for an implementation project. While moving the application content, for example, moving from test to the production phase of an implementation, attend to the nuances of these common reference objects.

Parameters

The common reference objects are represented as business objects. A single object can be referenced in multiple setup tasks with different parameters. In the configuration package created for the implementation project, parameters passed to



a setup task are also passed to the business objects being moved. As a result, the scope of the setup tasks is maintained intact during the movement.

Dependencies

Common reference objects may have internal references or dependencies among other common reference objects. Therefore, you must note all the dependencies before moving the objects so that there are no broken references among them.

Business Objects for Moving Common Reference Objects: Points to Consider

Common reference objects in Oracle Fusion Functional Setup Manager are used to move application setup content from one environment to another. For example, from a test environment to a production environment.

Choice of Parameters

The following table lists the business objects, the movement details, and the effect of the setup task parameter on the scope of the movement.

Note:

- You can move only the translations in the current user language.
- You can move the Oracle Social Network business objects and the Navigator menu customizations using the customization sets on the Customization Migration page.

Business Object Name	Moved Functional Item	Effect on the Scope of Movement
Application Message	Messages and associated tokens	No parameters: All messages are moved.
		Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only messages belonging to the specified module and its descendant modules in the taxonomy hierarchy are moved.
		Parameter messageName/ applicationId Only the specified message is moved.
Application Taxonomy	Application taxonomy modules and components	No parameters: All taxonomy modules and components are moved.
Application Attachment Entity	Attachment entities	No parameters: All attachment entities are moved.
		Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only attachment entities belonging to the specified module and its descendant modules in the taxonomy hierarchy are moved.
Application Attachment Category	Attachment categories and category-to-entity mappings	No parameters: All attachment categories and category-to-entity mappings are moved.



Business Object Name	Moved Functional Item	Effect on the Scope of Movement
		Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only attachment categories belonging to the specified module and its descendant modules in the taxonomy hierarchy along with the respective category-to-entity mappings are moved.
Application Document Sequence Category	Document sequence categories	No parameters: All categories are moved.
		Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only categories belonging to the specified module and its descendant modules in the taxonomy hierarchy are moved.
		Parameter code/ applicationId Only the specified document sequence category code is moved.
Application Document Sequence	Document sequences and their assignments	No parameters: All sequences are moved.
		Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only document sequences belonging to the specified module and its descendant modules in the taxonomy hierarchy are moved
		Parameter name: Only the specified document sequence is moved.
Application Descriptive Flexfield	Descriptive flexfield registration data and setup data	No parameters: All descriptive flexfields are moved.
		Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only descriptive flexfields belonging to the specified module and its descendant modules in the taxonomy hierarchy are moved.
		Parameter descriptiveFlexfieldCode/ applicationId Only the specified descriptive flexfield is moved. Importing the metadata of a flexfield can change its deployment status. Therefore, you must redeploy if there are any affected flexfields. The import process automatically submits affected flexfields for redeployment. Also only flexfields with a deployment status of Deployed or Deployed to Sandbox are eligible to be moved.
Application Extensible Flexfield	Extensible flexfield registration data and setup data, including categories	No parameters: All extensible flexfields are moved
		Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only extensible flexfields belonging to the specified module and its descendant modules in the taxonomy hierarchy are moved.
		Parameter extensibleFlexfieldCode/ applicationId Only the specified extensible flexfield is moved. Importing the metadata of



Business Object Name	Moved Functional Item	Effect on the Scope of Movement
		a flexfield can change its deployment status and therefore, the affected flexfields must be redeployed. The import process automatically submits affected flexfields for redeployment.
		Also, only flexfields with a deployment status of Deployed or Deployed to Sandbox are eligible to be moved.
Application Key Flexfield	Key flexfield registration data and setup data	No parameters: All key flexfields are moved.
		Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only key flexfields belonging to the specified module and its descendant modules in the taxonomy hierarchy are moved.
		Parameter keyFlexfieldCode/ applicationId Only the specified key flexfield is moved.
		Importing the metadata of a flexfield can change its deployment status and therefore, the affected flexfields must be redeployed. The import process automatically submits affected flexfields for redeployment. Only flexfields with a deployment status of Deployed or Deployed to Sandbox are eligible to be moved.
Application Flexfield Value Set	Value set setup data	No parameters: All value sets are moved.
		Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only value sets belonging to the specified module and its descendant modules in the taxonomy hierarchy are moved.
		Parameter valueSetCode: Only the specified value set is moved.
		Importing the metadata of a value set can change the deployment status of flexfields that use the value set. Therefore, you must redeploy if there are any affected flexfields. The import process automatically submits affected flexfields for redeployment.
Application Reference Currency	Currency data	No parameters: All currencies are moved.
Application Reference ISO Language	ISO language data	No parameters: All ISO languages are moved.
Application Reference Industry	Industry data including industries in territories data	No parameters: All industries are moved.
Application Reference Language	Language data	No parameters: All languages are moved.
Application Reference Natural Language	Natural language data	No parameters: All natural languages are moved.



Business Object Name	Moved Functional Item	Effect on the Scope of Movement
Application Reference Territory	Territory data	No parameters: All territories are moved.
Application Reference Time zone	Time zone data	No parameters: All time zones are moved.
Application Standard Lookup	Standard lookup types and their lookup codes	No parameters: All standard lookups are moved.
		Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only standard lookups belonging to the specified module and its descendant modules in the taxonomy hierarchy are moved.
		Parameter lookupType: Only the specified common lookup is moved.
Application Common Lookup	Common lookup types and their lookup codes	No parameters: All common lookups are moved.
		Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only common lookups belonging to the specified module and its descendant modules in the taxonomy hierarchy are moved.
		Parameter lookupType: Only the specified common lookup is moved.
Application Set-Enabled Lookup	Set-enabled lookup types and their lookup codes	No parameters: All set-enabled lookups are moved.
		Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only set-enabled lookups belonging to the specified module and its descendant modules in the taxonomy hierarchy are moved.
		Parameter lookupType: Only the specified set-enabled lookup is moved.
Application Profile Category	Profile categories	No parameters: All profile categories are moved.
		Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only categories belonging to the specified module and its descendant modules in the taxonomy hierarchy are moved.
		name/ applicationId Only the specified category is moved.
Application Profile Option	Profile options and their values	No parameters: All profile options and their values are moved.
		Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only profile options and their values belonging to the specified module are moved.



Business Object Name	Moved Functional Item	Effect on the Scope of Movement
		Parameter profileOptionName: Only the specified profile option and its values are moved.
Application Profile Value	Profile options and their values	No parameters: All profiles and their values are moved.
		Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only profiles and their values belonging to the specified module are moved.
		Parameter categoryName/ categoryApplicationId Only profiles and their values belonging to the specified category are moved.
		Parameter profileOptionName: Only the specified profile and its values are moved.
Application Reference Data Set	Reference data sets	No parameters: All sets are moved.
Application Reference Data Set Assignment	Reference data set assignments	Parameter determinantType: Only assignments for the specified determinant type are moved.
		Parameter determinantType/ referenceGroupName Only assignments for the specified determinant type and reference group are moved.
Application Tree Structure	Tree structures and any labels assigned to the tree structure	No parameters: All tree structures (and their labels) are moved.
		Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only tree structures (and their labels) belonging to the specified module are moved.
		Parameter treeStructureCode: Only the specified tree structure (with its labels) is moved.
Application Tree	Tree codes and versions	No parameters: All trees are moved.
		Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only trees belonging to the specified module are moved.
		Parameter treeStructureCode: Only trees belonging to the specified tree structure are moved.
		Parameter TreeStructureCode/ TreeCode Only trees belonging to the specified tree structure and tree code are moved.
Application Tree Label	Tree structures and any labels assigned to the tree structure	No parameters: All tree structures (and their labels) are moved.



Business Object Name	Moved Functional Item	Effect on the Scope of Movement Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only tree structures (and their labels) belonging to the specified module and its descendant modules in the taxonomy hierarchy are moved.
		Parameter treeStructureCode: Only the specified tree structure (with its labels) is moved.
Application Data Security Policy	Database resources, actions, conditions, and data security policies	No parameters: All database resources/actions/ conditions/ policies are moved. Parameter moduleType/ moduleKey Only database resources/ actions/ conditions/ policies belonging to the specified module and its descendant modules in the taxonomy hierarchy are moved. Parameter objName: Only the specified database resource along with its actions/ conditions/ policies is moved. If the policies being moved contain reference to newly created roles, move the roles before moving the policies. If the source and target systems use different LDAPs, manually perform the GUID reconciliation after moving the data security policies.

Moving Related Common Reference Objects: Points to Consider

Certain common reference objects may use other common reference objects creating dependencies among the objects. During the movement of common reference objects, ensure that these dependencies or references aren't broken or lost.

Dependencies

The dependencies among the common reference objects may be caused by any of the following conditions.

- Flexfield segments use value sets
- Value sets may make use of standard, common, or set-enabled lookups
- Key flexfields may have an associated tree structure and key flexfield segments may have an associated tree code
- Tree codes and versions may be defined over values of a value set
- Data security policies may be defined for value sets that have been enabled for data security

You may decide to move one, some, or all of the business objects by including the ones you want to move in your configuration package. For example, you may decide to move only value sets, or move both value sets and their lookups as part of the same package. Whatever be the combination, Oracle recommends that during the movement of objects, you follow an order that maintains the dependencies among the objects.

While moving the business objects, adhere to the following order:

1. Move created taxonomy modules before moving any objects that reference them, such as flexfields, lookups, profiles, messages, and so on.



- 2. Move created currencies before moving any objects that reference them, such as territories.
- 3. Move created territories before moving any objects that reference them, such as languages and natural languages.
- **4.** Move created ISO languages before moving any objects that reference them, such as languages, natural languages, and industries.
- 5. Move created tree structures before moving any objects that reference them, such as trees or tree labels.
- **6.** Move created profile options before moving any objects that reference them, such as profile categories or profile values.
- Move created attachment entities before moving any objects that reference them, such as attachment categories that reference them.
- Note: In scenarios where there may be dependencies on other objects, you must move the dependencies before moving the referencing object. For example, if data security policies have dependencies on newly created security roles, you must move the security roles before moving the security policies.

Using Seed Data Framework to Move Common Reference Objects: Points to Consider

To move the common reference objects, you can use the Seed Data Framework (SDF). You can also use the command line interface of SDF to move the object setup data. For more information about seed data loaders including common reference object loaders, see Oracle Fusion Applications Developer's Guide.

Movement Dependencies

The seed data interface moves only the setup metadata. For example, if you use SDF to import flexfield metadata, the flexfield setup metadata is imported into your database. However, you must initiate the flexfield deployment process separately after seed data import to regenerate the runtime flexfield artifacts in the target environment. Similarly, if you use SDF to import data security metadata, you must first move any new referenced roles and then manually run the GUID reconciliation where required.

To ensure that the reference data is not lost during the movement, certain guidelines are prescribed. It is recommended that you perform the movement of object data exactly in the order given below.

- Note: Only the translation in the current user language is moved.
- 1. Move created taxonomy modules before moving any objects that reference them, such as flexfields, lookups, profiles, attachments, reference data sets, document sequences, messages, and data security.
- 2. Move created currencies before moving any objects that reference them, such as territories.
- 3. Move created territories before moving any objects that reference them, such as languages and natural languages.
- **4.** Move created ISO languages before moving any objects that reference them, such as languages, natural languages, and industries.
- 5. Move created tree structures before moving any objects that reference them, such as trees or tree labels.
- 6. Move created profile options before moving any objects that reference them, such as profile categories or profile values.
- 7. Move created attachment entities before moving any objects that reference them, such as attachment categories that reference them.
- **8.** Move created reference data sets before moving any objects that reference them, such as reference data set assignments and set-enabled lookups.
- **9.** Move created document sequence categories before moving any objects that reference them, such as document sequences.



- **10.** Move created tree labels before moving any objects that reference them, such as trees.
- 11. Move created data security objects and policies before moving any objects that reference them, such as value sets.
- 12. Move created value sets before moving any objects that reference them, such as flexfields.
- 13. Move created trees before moving any objects that reference them, such as key flexfields.



Glossary

accounting flexfield

The structure that determines the chart of accounts, including the number and order of the individual segments, as well as assigning the value sets to the segments.

accounting method

A set of journal entry rules which determine how a subledger journal entry is created for each event class or event type.

action

The kind of access, such as view or edit, named in a security policy.

ADF

Acronym for Application Developer Framework. A set of programming principles and rules for developing software applications.

analytics

Business intelligence objects such as analyses and dashboards that provide meaningful data to help with decision making.

application feature

A standardized functionality that is available to implemented.

application identity

Predefined application level user with elevated privileges. An application identity authorizes jobs and transactions for which other users are not authorized, such as a payroll run authorized to access a taxpayer ID while the user who initiated the job is not authorized to access such personally identifiable information.

application partner

A B2B trading partner defined in Oracle Applications Cloud that engages in the collaboration messaging activity. For example, a supplier site, or a customer account.

automatic assignment catalog

A non-hierarchical catalog to which categories that match the catalog's Catalog Structure value are automatically added. Add categories and share categories actions are disabled for this catalog configuration.

autosuggest

Suggestions that automatically appear for a search field, even before you finish typing your search term. You can select any of the suggestions to run your search.



balancing segment

A chart of accounts segment used to automatically balance all journal entries for each value of this segment.

business function

A business process or an activity that can be performed by people working within a business unit. Describes how a business unit is used.

business intelligence catalog

The repository where all business intelligence objects, including analytics, reports, briefing books, and agents, are stored. The catalog contains separate folders for personal, shared, and custom objects.

business object

A resource in an enterprise database, such as an invoice or purchase order.

business unit

A unit of an enterprise that performs one or many business functions that can be rolled up in a management hierarchy.

calendar event

A period that signifies an event, such as a public holiday or a training course, that impacts worker availability.

catalog

A collection of categories used to classify items which can be organized into a hierarchy that represents a taxonomy.

chart of accounts

The account structure your organization uses to record transactions and maintain account balances.

condition

The part of a data security policy that specifies what portions of a database resource are secured.

context

A grouping of flexfield segments to store related information.

context segment

The flexfield segment used to store the context value. Each context value can be associated with a different set of context-sensitive segments.

context-sensitive segment

A flexfield segment that may or may not appear depending upon a context. Context-sensitive segments are custom attributes that apply to certain entity rows based on the value of the context segment.



corporate rate type

Rate you define to standardize rates used in conversion of one currency to another over a period of time. This rate is generally a standard market rate determined by senior financial management for use throughout the organization.

CORS

Acronym for Cross-Origin Resource Sharing. A web service standard to enable a client application running in one domain to retrieve resources from another domain, using HTTP requests.

cost center

A unit of activity or a group of employees used to assign costs for accounting purposes.

country holding company

A legal entity that acts on behalf of several divisions within an enterprise, and is the legal employer in a country.

data security

The control of access and action a user can take against which data.

data security policy

A grant of entitlement to a role on an object or attribute group for a given condition.

database resource

An applications data object at the instance, instance set, or global level, which is secured by data security policies.

department

A division of a business enterprise dealing with a particular area of activity.

descriptive flexfield

Customizable expansion space, such as fields used to capture additional descriptive information or attributes about an entity, such as a customer case. You may configure information collection and storage based on the context.

determinant

A value that specifies the use of a reference data set in a particular business context.

determinant type

An optional value that affects document sequencing in a transaction. The available determinant types are Business Unit, Ledger, Legal Entity, and Tax Registration.

determinant type

The value that affects sharing of reference data in a transaction across organizations, such as a business unit or a cost organization.



determinant value

A value specific to the selected determinant type of a document sequence. If Ledger is the determinant type for a document sequence, the determinant value is the specific ledger number whose documents are numbered by the document sequence. It is relevant in a document sequence assignment only if the document sequence has a determinant type.

division

A business-oriented subdivision within an enterprise. Each division is organized to deliver products and services or address different markets.

document sequence

A unique number that is automatically or manually assigned to a created and saved document.

enterprise

An organization with one or more legal entities under common control.

entitlement

Grant of access to functions and data. Oracle Fusion Middleware term for privilege.

extensible flexfield

Customizable expansion space used to capture multiple sets of information within a context or multiple contexts. Some extensible flexfields let you group contexts into categories.

external partner

A B2B partner engaging in the collaboration messaging activity but defined outside Oracle Applications Cloud.

external system or external application

A system or application that is external to and not part of Order Management. An order capture system that resides upstream of Order Management is an example of an external system. A fulfillment application that resides downstream of Order Management is an example of an external application.

feature choice

A selection you make when configuring offerings that modifies a setup task list, or a setup page, or both.

fixed rate type

Rate you set between two currencies that remains constant. For example, a rate set between the euro currency and each Economic and Monetary Union (EMU) currency during the conversion to the euro currency.

flexfield

A flexible data field that you can customize to contain one or more segments or store additional information. Each segment has a value and a meaning.



flexfield segment

An extensible data field that represents an attribute and captures a value corresponding to a predefined, single extension column in the database. A segment appears globally or based on a context of other captured information.

global area

The region at the very top of the user interface that remains the same no matter which page you're on.

global search

The search in the global area that lets you search across many business objects.

grade

A component of the employment model that defines the level of compensation for a worker.

import

In the context of data integration, the transfer of data from interface tables to **application tables**, where the data is available to application users.

interface table

A database table that stores data during data transfer between applications or from an external system or data file.

inventory organization

A logical or physical entity in the enterprise that tracks inventory transactions and balances, stores definitions of items, and manufactures or distributes products.

item master

A collection of data that describes items and their attributes recorded in a database file.

item organization

Item definition where inventory balances are not stored and movement of inventory is not tracked in the applications. Item attributes that carry financial and accounting information are hidden.

item subinventory

An association of an item with a subinventory that is created when you add an item to a subinventory.

Items

Entries within the Product master database. For example, items for a manufacturing company can include nuts, bolts, and screws.

job

A generic role that is independent of any single department or location. For example, the jobs Manager and Consultant can occur in many departments.



job definition

The metadata that determines what a job does and what options are available to users when they submit the scheduled process. A job is the executable for a scheduled process.

job role

A role, such as an accounts payable manager or application implementation consultant, that usually identifies and aggregates the duties or responsibilities that make up the job.

key flexfield

Configurable flexfield comprising multiple parts or segments, each of which has a meaning either individually or in combination with other segments. Examples of key flexfields are part numbers, asset category, and accounts in the chart of accounts.

key flexfield segment instance

A single occurrence of a key flexfield segment in a key flexfield structure instance.

key flexfield structure

The arrangement of segments in a key flexfield. In some cases, you can define multiple structures for a single key flexfield.

key flexfield structure instance

An occurrence of a key flexfield structure that shares the same order of segments as other instances of the key flexfield structure. However, each instance uses different value sets to validate the segments.

legal authority

A government or legal body that is charged with powers such as the power to make laws, levy and collect fees and taxes, and remit financial appropriations for a given jurisdiction.

legal employer

A legal entity that employs people.

legal entity

An entity identified and given rights and responsibilities under commercial law through the registration with country's appropriate authority.

legal jurisdiction

A physical territory, such as a group of countries, single country, state, county, parish, or city, which comes under the purview of a legal authority.

legal reporting unit

The lowest level component of a legal structure that requires registrations. Used to group workers for the purpose of tax and social insurance reporting or represent a part of your enterprise with a specific statutory or tax reporting obligation.



legislative data group

A means of partitioning payroll and related data. At least one legislative data group is required for each country where the enterprise operates. Each legislative data group is associated with one or more payroll statutory units.

line of business

Set of one or more highly related products which service a particular customer transaction or business need. Refers to an internal corporate business unit.

load

In the context of data integration, the transfer of external data from data files to the receiving **interface tables** in preparation for an import into application tables.

lookup code

An option available within a lookup type, such as the lookup code BLUE within the lookup type COLORS.

lookup type

The label for a static list that has lookup codes as its values.

mainline metadata

The primary branch of metadata that a sandbox is published to. Once published, changes made in the sandbox become available to all users.

manufacturing facilities

Employed in the making of goods for sale such as a factory or plant.

natural account

Categorizes account segment values by account type, asset, liability, expense, revenue, or equity, and sets posting, budgeting, and other options.

natural account segment

A chart of accounts segment used to categorize your accounting transactions by account type: asset, liability, owner's equity, revenue, or expense.

Navigator

The menu in the global area that you can use to open the work areas and dashboards that you have access to.

offering

A comprehensive grouping of business functions, such as Sales or Product Management, that is delivered as a unit to support one or more business processes.



OWLCS

Abbreviation for Oracle WebLogic Communication Services. Offers the TPCC service to Oracle Sales Cloud and sets up the calls using SIP integration with the telephony network.

payroll statutory unit

A legal entity registered to report payroll tax and social insurance. A legal employer can also be a payroll statutory unit, but a payroll statutory unit can represent multiple legal employers.

position

A specific occurrence of one job that is fixed within one department. It is also often restricted to one location. For example, the position Finance Manager is an instance of the job Manager in the Finance Department.

primary ledger

Main record-keeping ledger.

privilege

A grant of access to functions and data; a single, real world action on a single business object.

process set

A scheduled process that contains multiple individual processes or other process sets.

profile option

User preferences and system configuration options that users can configure to control application behavior at different levels of an enterprise.

profile option level

The category or layer that defines a profile option. Site, Product, and User are the predefined levels.

profile option value

The setting mapped to the level of a profile option. A profile option may have multiple values set at different levels, such as Site or User.

PSTN

Abbreviation for public switched telephone network which is the network of the world's public circuit-switched telephone networks.

Query By Example

The row of fields directly above table column headers, used for filtering the data in the table.

reference data

Data in application tables that is not transactional or high-volume, which an enterprise can share across multiple organizations. For example, sales methods, transaction types, or payment terms.



reference data set

Contains reference data that can be shared across a number of business units or other determinant types. A set supports common administration of that reference data.

reference group

A logical collection of reference data sets that correspond to logical entities, such as payment terms defined across multiple tables or views. Based on the common partitioning requirements across entities, the reference data sets are grouped to facilitate data sharing among them.

registration

The record of a party's identity related details with the appropriate government or legal authorities for the purpose of claiming and ensuring legal and or commercial rights and responsibilities.

report

An output of select data in a predefined format that's optimized for printing.

role

Controls access to application functions and data.

sandbox

A testing environment that isolates untested code changes from the mainline environment so that these changes don't affect the mainline metadata or other sandboxes.

scheduled process

A program that you run to process data and, in some cases, generate output as a report.

segment

A segment is a single field within a flexfield and maps to a single table column in your database. When customizing a flexfield, you define the appearance and meaning of individual segments.

service provider

An intermediary that facilitates exchange of messages between Oracle Applications Cloud and external partners.

set

Classified and grouped reference data that organizational entities share.

set enabled

A property that describes entities that an organization shares as reference data. For example, you can indicate a lookup, customer, location, or document attachment as set enabled.



spot rate type

Rate you enter to perform conversion based on this rate as of a specific date. This rate applies to the immediate delivery of a currency.

storage facilities

Commercial building for storage of goods such as a warehouse.

suggestion group

Category of suggestions that appear in the autosuggest for the global search.

territory

A legally distinct region used in the country field of an address.

tree

Information or data organized into a hierarchy with one or more root nodes connected to branches of nodes. A tree must have a structure where each node corresponds to data from one or more data sources.

tree structure

A set of guidelines or a framework applied to create a tree, include data, version a tree, or access a tree.

user rate type

Rate you enter at journal entry time to convert foreign currency transactions to your ledger currency.

value set

A set of valid values against which values entered by an end user are validated. The set may be tree structured (hierarchical).

work area

A set of pages containing the tasks, searches, and other content you need to accomplish a business goal.

workflow

An automated process that passes a task from one user (or group of users) to another to view or act on. The task is routed in a logical sequence to achieve an end result.

